Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893

Aamir Ahmad
Shirish Gadgeel *Editors*

Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine

Current Knowledge and Therapies

Springer

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/5584

Aamir Ahmad • Shirish Gadgeel
Editors

Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine

Current Knowledge and Therapies

Springer

Editors
Aamir Ahmad
Karmanos Cancer Institute
Wayne State University
Detroit, MI, USA

Shirish Gadgeel
Karmanos Cancer Institute
Wayne State University
Detroit, MI, USA

ISSN 0065-2598 ISSN 2214-8019 (electronic)
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology
ISBN 978-3-319-24221-7 ISBN 978-3-319-24223-1 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1

Library of Congress Control Number: 2015959573

Springer Cham Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer International Publishing AG Switzerland is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Preface

Lung cancer is one of the most common causes of cancer-related deaths in the world, affecting millions of individuals. This volume, *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine: Current Updates and Therapies*, comprehensively reviews lung cancer as a disease, details the current state of our knowledge, and showcases the promising novel strategies being pursued. With a greater understanding of lung cancer, we can better appreciate the heterogeneity among lung cancer patients. It is now more evident than ever before that a "one-size-fits-all" approach is not an effective means of clinical management of patients. It is critical to understand every lung cancer patient as an individual, the unique genomic make up an individual patient possesses, and the unique opportunities that such understandings present in developing a treatment plan to which an individual is most likely to respond—that is, "personalized management," the focus of this volume. Chapter 1 provides a commentary on lung cancer statistics. It is important that we remind ourselves of the threats posed by lung cancer. It is the leading cause of cancer-related mortality in men in the USA and throughout the world. In women, it is the leading cause of cancer-related deaths in the USA, but ranks second worldwide. This chapter provides a detailed overview of variations in lung cancer rates and trends in the USA as well as globally. Chapter 2, which addresses the epidemiology of lung cancer, touches upon the various risk factors that may predispose an individual to the disease. Availability of putative risk prediction models will, undoubtedly, change the personalized care of lung cancer patients. Cigarette smoking has always been considered a major factor contributing to lung cancer. However, a substantial number of lung cancer patients never smoked. As a separate entity, lung cancer among nonsmokers will rank as the seventh leading cause of cancer-related deaths, which is discussed in Chapter 3.

Chapter 4, on immune therapy, addresses the recent advances in immune responses in lung cancer patients—previously believed to be irrelevant to lung cancer treatment. This chapter discusses the various immunotherapeutic approaches for treatment of lung cancer patients, including those in clinical trials. With the realization that angiogenesis is frequently upregulated in lung cancer patients, the focus on antiangiogenic agents is of relevance to personalized therapy of lung cancer patients—which is discussed in Chapter 5, which outlines the progress as well as

challenges associated with the antiangiogenic therapy in non-small cell vs. small cell lung cancers. Chapter 6 discusses the targets of personalized therapy in lung cancer, namely, the tyrosine kinases, with a focus on epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutational status. With such important role of tyrosine kinases in lung cancer progression, tyrosine kinase inhibitors have been studied in considerable detail, but acquired resistance to these inhibitors remains a major clinical challenge. These challenges and the mechanisms of resistance to EGFR-targeted therapies are discussed in Chapter 7, which also touches upon the novel strategies to overcome the resistance. Chapter 8 focuses on KRAS-mutant lung cancers that make up approximately a quarter of all lung cancers. KRAS mutations have also been linked to EGFR-resistance, and their importance in lung cancer progression is increasingly being realized. Chapter 9 focuses on anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK), another tyrosine kinase whose chromosomal rearrangement results in aggressive lung cancers. The evolving knowledge on ALK-rearranged lung cancers is of relevance to the personalized management of patients. Rounding up our knowledge on the resistance to current therapies, Chapter 10 summarizes the various chemotherapy options available for lung cancer patients and the associated resistance pathways. Finally, Chapter 11 summarizes the chemistry of metal-based drugs, particularly those based on platinum, ruthenium, gadolinium, and iron compounds. A better understanding of metal-based compounds promises to deliver novel targeted drugs that can potentially be personalized for individual patients.

Part II of this volume, available as a separate volume, addresses the many novel and emerging therapies that can potentially change the way individual lung cancer patients are treated in clinics. Combined, the two volumes provide a detailed overview of topics that are critical to the personalized management of lung cancer.

Detroit, MI, USA

Aamir Ahmad
Shirish Gadgeel

Acknowledgments

We, the editors, thank all the authors who worked hard and contributed their knowledge to this volume. Our special thanks to Springer for entrusting us with this exciting project. Our contacts at Springer Publishers—Fiona Sarne at the start of project and Joy Bramble at the end of the project—made sure that we stayed on course; their enormous help is highly appreciated.

Contents

Contributors

Joachim Aerts Department of Pulmonary Medicine, Erasmus MC Cancer Institute, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Aarif Ahsan Department of Radiation Oncology, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

Bioconjugate Drug Discovery, Oncology Research Unit, Pfizer Inc., Pearl River, NY, USA

Dutly Andrè Unit of Thoracic Surgery, Chefarzt der neuen Klinik für Thoraxchirurgie am Kantonsspital St. Gallen, Switzerland

Bernhard Biersack Organic Chemistry Laboratory, University of Bayreuth, Bayreuth, Germany

Stefano Cafarotti Unit of Thoracic Surgery, EOC-ORBV, Bellinzona, Switzerland

Michele L. Cote Department of Oncology, Karmanos Cancer Institute, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Alexander Drilon Department of Medicine, Thoracic Oncology Service, Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center, New York, NY, USA

Peter M. Ellis Department of Oncology, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Juravinski Cancer Centre, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Patrizia Froesh Unit of Oncology, IOSI, Bellinzona, Switzerland

Joost Hegmans Department of Pulmonary Medicine, Erasmus MC Cancer Institute, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Ahmedin Jemal Surveillance and Health Services Research, Intramural Research Department, American Cancer Society, Atlanta, GA, USA

Eric S. Kim Department of Medicine, James P. Wilmot Cancer Center, University of Rochester, Rochester, NY, USA

Lysanne Lievense Department of Pulmonary Medicine, Erasmus MC Cancer Institute, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Filippo Lococo Unit of Thoracic Surgery, IRCCS-Arcispedale Santa Maria Nuova, Reggio Emilia, Italy

Jarushka Naidoo Department of Medicine, Thoracic Oncology Service, Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center, New York, NY, USA

Sai-Hong Ignatius Ou Chao Family Comprehensive Cancer Center, Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology-Oncology, University of California Irvine School of Medicine, Orange, CA, USA

Gabriel Alberto Rivera Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA

Rainer Schobert Organic Chemistry Laboratory, University of Bayreuth, Bayreuth, Germany

Ann G. Schwartz Department of Oncology, Karmanos Cancer Institute, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Keisuke Shirai MUSC Hollings Cancer Center, Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology-Oncology, Medical University of South Carolina College of Medicine, Charleston, SC, USA

Rebecca L. Siegel Surveillance and Health Services Research, Intramural Research Department, American Cancer Society, Atlanta, GA, USA

Lindsey A. Torre Surveillance and Health Services Research, Intramural Research Department, American Cancer Society, Atlanta, GA, USA

Heather Wakelee Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA

Francesco Zappa Unit of Oncology, Clinica Luganese Moncucco, Lugano, Switzerland

About the Author

Aamir Ahmad, Ph.D., is a Research Scientist at the Wayne State University School of Medicine Department of Pathology and the Karmanos Cancer Institute, with over 125 published scientific articles in peer-reviewed journals and over 20 book chapters. He has been a member of leading cancer organizations such as American Association for Cancer Research and International Union against Cancer. He is currently Section Editor for the journal *PLoS ONE* and editor-in-chief of journal *Non-Coding RNA Research* and the book series *Cancer Metastasis*, Elsevier Publishers. In addition to the current volume, Dr. Ahmad has worked with Springer Publishers to edit two more volumes, one of which on breast cancer was published in the year 2013 and the other one on cancer chemoprevention published early this year.

Shirish Gadgeel is a professor in the Department of Oncology at Karmanos Cancer Institute/Wayne State University in Detroit. He is the co-leader of the Molecular Therapeutics Program of Karmanos Cancer Institute and the leader of the Multidisciplinary Thoracic Oncology team. Dr. Gadgeel is a member of several professional societies, including the American Society of Clinical Oncology and the International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer. He currently serves on the Editorial Board of the journals *Cancer* and *Clinical Lung Cancer*. Dr. Gadgeel is a principal investigator of several trials focused on the treatment of lung cancer and has published more than 80 scientific papers.

Lung Cancer Statistics

Lindsey A. Torre, Rebecca L. Siegel, and Ahmedin Jemal

Abstract Lung cancer is the leading cause of cancer death among both men and women in the United States. It is also the leading cause of cancer death among men and the second leading cause of cancer death among women worldwide. Lung cancer rates and trends vary substantially by sex, age, race/ethnicity, socioeconomic status, and geography because of differences in historical smoking patterns. Lung cancer mortality rates in the United States are highest among males, blacks, people of lower socioeconomic status, and in the mid-South (e.g., Kentucky, Mississippi, Arkansas, and Tennessee). Globally, rates are highest in countries where smoking uptake began earliest, such as those in North America and Europe. Although rates are now decreasing in most of these countries (e.g., United States, United Kingdom, Australia), especially in men, they are increasing in countries where smoking uptake occurred later. Low- and middle-income countries now account for more than 50 % of lung cancer deaths each year. This chapter reviews lung cancer incidence and mortality patterns in the United States and globally.

Keywords Lung cancer • Cancer incidence • Age-standardized rate (ASR) • Cancer mortality • Five-year relative survival • Cancer statistics • Age • Race/ethnicity • Socioeconomic status (SES) geographic variation • Trends • United States • Global • International • Global patterns • Cancer burden

Introduction

Lung cancer was rare before the twentieth century, [1] but is now the leading cause of cancer death in both men and women in the United States, accounting for 27 % of cancer deaths in 2014 [2]. Lung cancer is also the leading cause of cancer death in men and the second leading cause of cancer death (after breast cancer) in women worldwide [3]. It was estimated that 1.8 million new lung cancer cases and 1.6 million

L.A. Torre • R.L. Siegel • A. Jemal (✉)
Surveillance and Health Services Research, Intramural Research Department, American Cancer Society, 250 Williams Street, 30303 Atlanta, Georgia, USA
e-mail: Ahmedin.Jemal@cancer.org

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_1

lung cancer deaths occurred in 2012 worldwide, accounting for about 19 % of all cancer deaths [3]. Worldwide variation in the lung cancer burden and trends are primarily driven by historical differences in the uptake and reduction in tobacco use [4].

Common Indicators in Cancer Statistics

Incidence

Cancer incidence is the number of newly diagnosed cancer cases in a population during a specific time period, usually expressed as a rate per 100,000 persons. The numerator includes only cases diagnosed during the given time period, and only primary sites (i.e., metastatic cancers are not counted). The denominator includes only the population at risk for that type of cancer. For example, males would not be included in the denominator for cervical cancer incidence rates, because they are not at risk for cervical cancer.

Age-standardized rates (ASR) are used to compare cancer occurrence between two or more populations with different age structures. It is necessary to account for differences in population age distributions because the frequency of cancer generally increases with age (except for some types of cancers in children). For instance, crude (unstandardized) lung cancer incidence rates are much lower for men in Alaska (a young population) compared to men in Florida (an older population); however, once they are age adjusted, the rates are virtually the same. Age-standardized rates are constructed by taking a weighted average of the rates in each 5 year age group, where the weights are the proportion of persons in that age group in a defined "standard population."

Mortality

Cancer mortality is the number of cancer deaths in a population during a given time period, usually expressed as a rate per 100,000 persons. The numerator includes only deaths which occurred during the given time period, and the denominator includes only the population at risk for that type of cancer. Cancer mortality rates reflect both incidence and survival. For cancers with universally high case fatality, such as lung and pancreatic cancers, mortality rates may sometimes be used as a proxy for incidence rates.

Survival

Cancer survival is the length of time a person lives following cancer diagnosis. Relative survival represents the percentage of cancer patients who are living after a specified time period since cancer diagnosis compared to the expected survival of a cancer-free population of the same age, race, and sex.

Data Sources

Incidence and Mortality in the United States

Incidence rates for 2006–2010 were obtained from the North American Association of Central Cancer Registries (NAACCR)'s Incidence-CiNa Analytic File [5]. The file contains incidence data from the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute and the National Program of Cancer Registries (NPCR) of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Together, SEER and the NPCR collect cancer incidence data for the entire United States population [6]. Incidence trends for whites and blacks were based on data from SEER (9 registries), covering 1975–2010; for other racial/ethnic groups, SEER (13 registries) data covering 1992–2010 were used. Five-year survival rates were based on cases diagnosed from 2003 to 2009 and followed through 2010 in SEER areas (18 registries).

Mortality data for the United States are obtained from the CDC's National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS) through the SEER Program's SEER*Stat database [7]. The accuracy of recording lung cancer as an underlying cause of death is high in the United States, with death certificates capturing about 89 % of lung cancer deaths in one study [8]. All incidence and mortality rates are age-standardized to the 2000 United States standard population.

Global Incidence and Mortality

Incidence and mortality rates for 2012 were obtained from GLOBOCAN 2012, published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC). GLOBOCAN estimates cancer incidence and mortality rates in each country of the world using different methods depending on the accuracy and availability of data [9]. Coverage of population-based cancer registries ranges from 1 % in Africa, 6 % in Asia, and 8 % in Latin America to 42 % in Europe, 78 % in Oceania, and 95 % in North America [10]. Mortality data are available for about one third of the world population, and are generally of higher quality in high-income countries [11]. IARC also makes available historic incidence and mortality data in its Cancer Incidence in Five Continents database [10] and World Health Organization Cancer Mortality Database [12]. Global incidence and mortality rates were age-standardized to the 1960 world standard population, and therefore cannot be compared to the United States rates which are generally age-standardized to the 2000 United States standard population.

Lung Cancer Patterns in the United States

Lung cancer rates and trends in the United States vary dramatically by demographic and geographic characteristics such as sex, age, race/ethnicity, state, and socioeconomic status, with incidence and mortality showing generally similar patterns because of

the low survival rate [13]. Most of these differences reflect differences in smoking patterns, [4] with lung cancer death rates beginning to increase at the population level two to three decades after widespread smoking has begun and peaking three to four decades after peak smoking in the population [14]. Cigarette smoking is by far the most important risk factor for lung cancer; 82 % of lung cancer deaths in the US are due to smoking [15].

Age

Lung cancer takes decades to develop after smoking initiation, and is thus rare before age 30 and peaks in the elderly (Fig. 1). Lung cancer rates tend to drop off after around 80 years, likely due to competing mortality from other causes or diminished accuracy of classification [16].

During 2006–2010, the average annual lung cancer incidence rate among United States men ranged from 1.3 cases per 100,000 in age 30–34 years to 585.9 in age 85–89 years. Among women, incidence ranged from 1.4 in age 30–34 years to

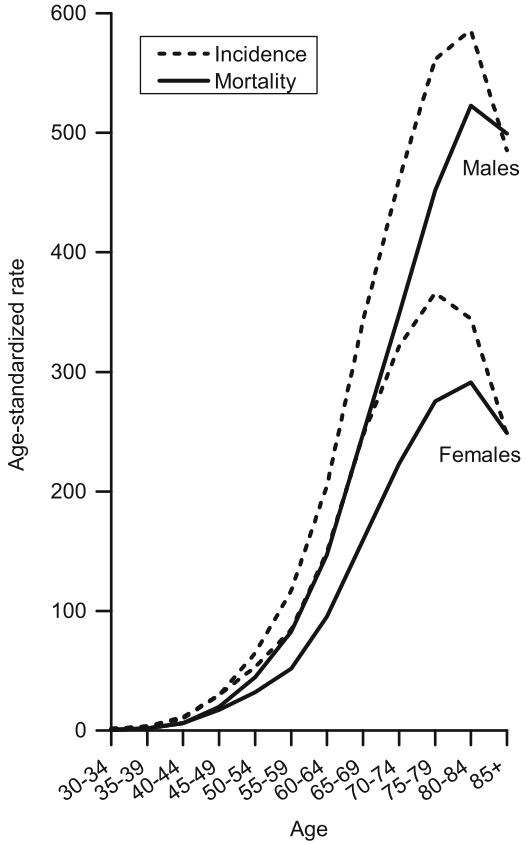


Fig. 1 Lung cancer incidence and mortality rates by sex and age, United States, 2006–2010. Rates are per 100,000 and age-adjusted to the 2000 U.S. standard population

365.8 in age 75–79 years. The median age at diagnosis of lung cancer of men and women combined was about 70 years, with approximately 10 % of cases occurring in those younger than 55 years, 53 % in those 55–74 years, and 37 % in those 75 years and older [17].

Mortality patterns by age closely follow incidence patterns. In 2006–2010, mortality rates among men ranged from 0.6 per 100,000 among those 30–34 years to 522.8 among those 80–84 years. Mortality rates among women ranged from 0.5 per 100,000 among those 30–34 years to 291.2 among those 80–84 years. The median age at death from lung cancer for men and women combined was about 72 years, with about 9 % of deaths occurring among those younger than 55 years, 50 % in those 55–74 years, and 41 % in those 75 years and over [17].

Race/Ethnicity

During 2006–2010, male lung cancer incidence rates were highest among blacks (94.7 per 100,000), followed by non-Hispanic whites (82.9 per 100,000), American Indians/Alaska Natives (70.2 per 100,000), Asians/Pacific Islanders (48.8 per 100,000), and Hispanics (45.9 per 100,000) (Fig. 2). Among women, incidence rates were highest among non-Hispanic Whites (59.9 per 100,000), followed by American Indians/Alaska Natives (52.1 per 100,000), Blacks (50.4 per 100,000), Asians/Pacific Islanders (28.0 per 100,000), and Hispanics (26.6 per 100,000) (Fig. 2). These differences primarily reflect historical smoking patterns. Historically, black men smoked

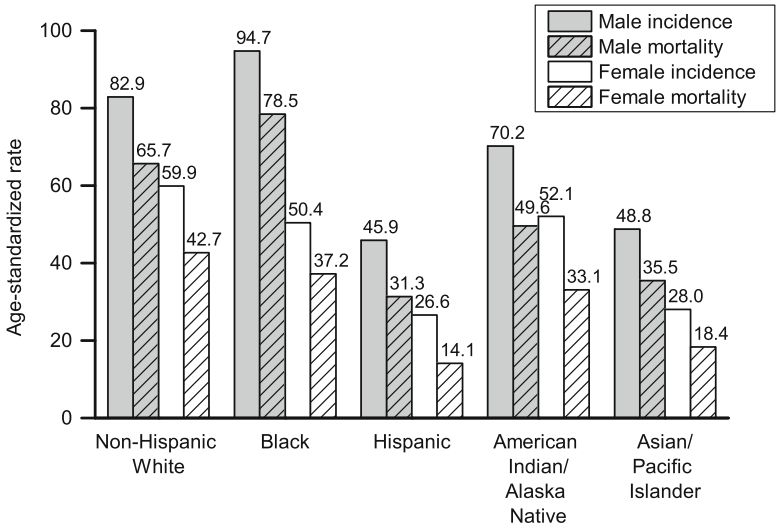


Fig. 2 Lung cancer incidence and mortality rates by sex and race/ethnicity, United States, 2006–2010. Rates are per 100,000 and age-adjusted to the 2000 U.S. standard population. Nonwhite race categories are not mutually exclusive of Hispanic origin (Source: Siegel et al. [2])

at higher rates than white men and men of other racial/ethnic groups. In contrast, black and white women historically smoked at similar rates. However, in the past few decades, black teenagers initiated smoking at lower rates than white teenagers.

Among males, Blacks have the highest mortality rates, followed by non-Hispanic Whites; among females, non-Hispanic Whites have the highest mortality rates, followed by Blacks. Among both males and females, these are followed by American Indians/Alaska Natives, Asians/Pacific Islanders, and Hispanics (Fig. 2). However, it is worth noting that significant heterogeneity in lung cancer rates exist within these broad racial/ethnic groups according to geography and subpopulation. For instance, lung cancer incidence rates in 1999–2004 among American Indian/Alaska Native men range from 22.1 per 100,000 in the Southwest to 116.5 in Alaska. Among women, incidence rates in 1999–2004 range from 10.3 per 100,000 in the Southwest to 97.4 in the Northern Plains [18]. Among Asian Americans, lung cancer incidence rates in 2004–2008 ranged from 30.1 per 100,000 among Asian Indian and Pakistani men to 73.4 among Vietnamese men, while they ranged from 12.1 per 100,000 among Asian Indian and Pakistani women to 31.8 among Vietnamese women [19].

In men, lung cancer mortality rates have been decreasing in all racial/ethnic groups except American Indians/Alaska Natives during the most recent time period (Fig. 4). However, the magnitude of the decreases vary by race/ethnicity. From 2001 to 2010, rates decreased annually by an average of 3.3 % in Black males, 2.8 % in Hispanics, 2.4 % in Whites, and 1.6 % in Asians/Pacific Islanders, while rates were stable in American Indians/Alaska Natives [20]. Among females, lung cancer mortality rates are decreasing among all racial/ethnic groups except American Indians/Alaska Natives and Asians/Pacific Islanders (Fig. 4). From 2001 to 2010, rates decreased annually by an average of −1.1 % in Hispanic females, −1.0 % in Black females, and −0.9 % in Whites, while rates remained stable in American Indians/Alaska Natives and Asians/Pacific Islanders [20].

Sex

Lung cancer mortality rates among females have historically been lower than males, peaking at about 40 deaths per 100,000, or about half of the peak rate of 90 deaths per 100,000 among males (Fig. 3). These patterns are similar when broken down by racial/ethnic group (Fig. 4).

Lung cancer incidence and mortality among males began to increase around the 1920s following the uptake of smoking among men around the turn of the twentieth century [1]. Lung cancer mortality has been decreasing among men since the early 1990s, reflecting widespread smoking cessation that began around 1964 with the release of the United States Surgeon General's report, which concluded that smoking was causally related to lung cancer [21]. Lung cancer incidence and mortality rates among women began to increase in the 1960s (Fig. 3), reflecting the later uptake of smoking among women around the 1930s and 1940s [22]. Smoking cessation among women in the United States began around the 1980s, [22] and mortality rates have been decreasing among women since the 2000s [17].

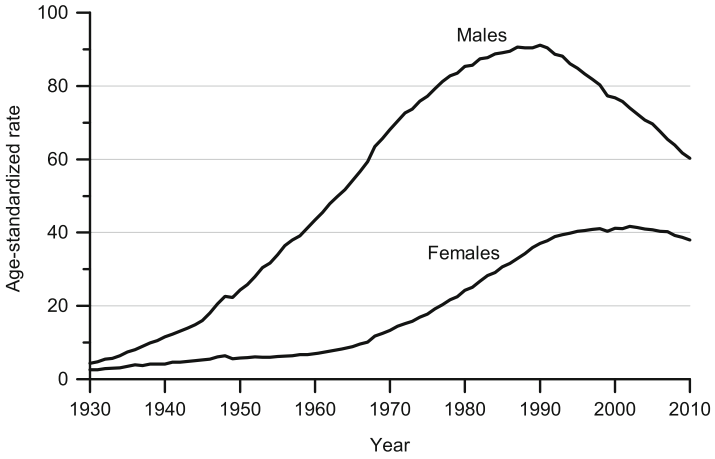


Fig. 3 Lung cancer mortality rates by sex, United States, 1930–2010. Rates are per 100,000 and age-adjusted to the 2000 U.S. standard population. Due to changes in ICD coding, numerator information has changed over time; rates include deaths from lung, bronchus, pleura, trachea, mediastinum, and other respiratory organs (Source: US Mortality Volumes 1930–1959, US Mortality Data 1960–2010, National Center for Health Statistics, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention)

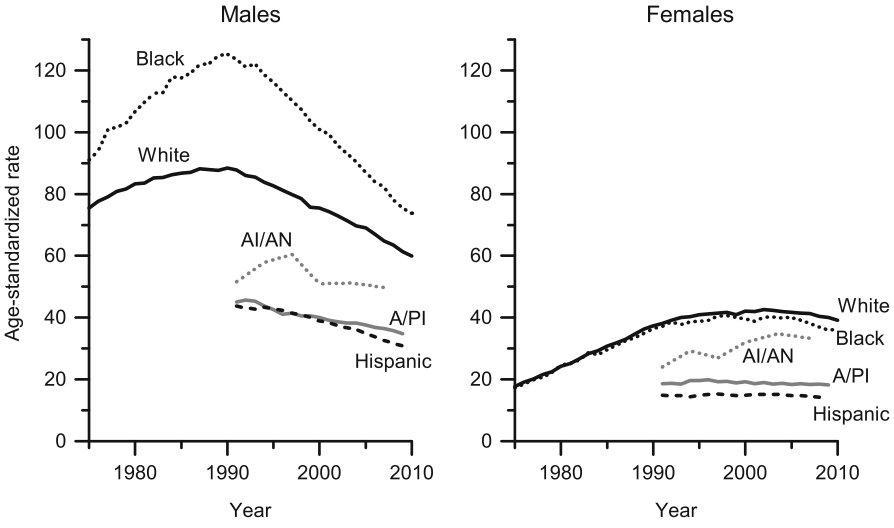


Fig. 4 Lung cancer mortality rates by sex and race/ethnicity, United States, 1975–2010. Rates are per 100,000 and age-adjusted to the 2000 U.S. standard population. Rates for American Indians/Alaska Natives are based on the Contract Health Service Delivery Area counties. Hispanic is not mutually exclusive from whites, blacks, Asian/Pacific Islanders, and American Indians/Alaska Natives. Data for whites rather than non-Hispanic whites is presented because ethnicity data was not available prior to 1990. Mortality data for Hispanics exclude cases from Connecticut, the District of Columbia, Louisiana, Maine, Maryland, Minnesota, Mississippi, New Hampshire, New York, North Dakota, Oklahoma, South Carolina, Vermont, and Virginia. Abbreviations: AI/AN American Indian/Alaska Native; A/PI Asian/Pacific Islander

Socioeconomic Status

Lung cancer rates are primarily linked to socioeconomic status through smoking patterns. In the United States, those with more education and resources are more likely to quit or not initiate smoking [23, 24]. In 2012, smoking prevalence among adults was 32.1 % among those with a 9–11th grade education, 23.1 % among those with a high school education, and 9.1 % among college graduates [25]. The smoking prevalence among those below the poverty threshold was 27.9 %, while the prevalence among those at or above the threshold was 17.0 % [25]. People with a high school diploma or an incomplete high school education are less likely than those with a partial or complete college education to attempt to quit smoking [26].

The higher smoking prevalence among individuals of lower socioeconomic status is reflected in higher lung cancer rates. Among a cohort of US cancer patients diagnosed between 1973 and 2001, the lung cancer incidence rate among men with less than a high school diploma was 166.6 per 100,000, while the rates among high school graduates and college graduates were 123.9 and 57.6, respectively. The relationship was similar among women, with an incidence rate of 71.6 among those with less than a high school diploma, followed by rates of 59.1 among high school graduates and 35.9 among college graduates [27]. In the same cohort, rates also demonstrated a similar trend by family income, ranging from 91.0 per 100,000 among men in the highest income group to 150.9 among men in the lowest income group; rates among women were 45.9 in the highest income group and 81.4 in the lowest income group [27].

Geographic Variation

There is significant regional and state variation in lung cancer rates (Table 1) [13]. Among males, lung cancer mortality rates during 2006–2010 ranged from 27.5 in Utah to 97.1 in Kentucky. Rates were also high in Mississippi (95.4), Arkansas (90.1), Tennessee (89.5), and Alabama (87.4). The lung cancer burden is generally highest in states where tobacco has historically been grown and processed [13]. In addition to Utah, mortality rates were low in New Mexico (43.4), Colorado (44.2), California (47.2), and Hawaii (48.8). Among females, mortality rates during 2006–2010 ranged from 16.8 in Utah to 55.8 in Kentucky. The low rates in Utah can be attributed to the cultural prohibition against smoking among the large Mormon population [13]. Other states with low rates include Hawaii (25.9), New Mexico (28.6), Colorado (31.3), and North Dakota (32.2). Other states with high rates in women were West Virginia (50.9), Delaware (47.7), Indiana (46.7), Oklahoma (46.6), and Tennessee (46.6).

There is substantial variation in lung cancer mortality trends by state relative to the national trends. While the lung cancer death rate has been decreasing among men in the United States, the trends vary by state. For instance, the rates of decrease

Table 1 Lung cancer incidence and mortality rates (per 100,000 population, age-adjusted to the 2000 Standard US population) by sex, race, and state, United States, 2006–2010

	All races						White						Black					
	Both sexes		Males		Females		Both sexes		Males		Females		Both sexes		Males		Females	
State	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality
Alabama	74.9	60.3	103.2	87.4	54	40.8	77.5	62.1	103	86.9	58.2	43.6	65.1	54	105	90.9	39	30.6
Alaska	70.8	52.8	83.8	61.8	60.4	45.8	68.6	50.9	78.3	58.1	60.6	45.2	62.8	51	^	^	^	^
Arizona	54	40.6	61.8	49.8	47.9	33.2	55.3	41.8	63	51	49.1	34.3	53.3	42	59.7	55.2	49.2	32.8
Arkansas†‡	81.1	64.6	108.4	90.1	60.4	45.4	81.6	64.9	107.5	89.1	61.8	46.5	77.8	65.6	117.6	104.8	50.3	39.1
California	51.2	38.7	60.4	47.2	44.4	32.3	52.9	40	60.8	47.6	47	34.4	63.8	50.9	81.1	67.2	51.7	39.3
Colorado	49.2	36.7	56.1	44.2	44.2	31.3	49.4	36.9	56.1	44.1	44.7	31.7	54.9	43.8	65.8	56.5	47.1	34.7
Connecticut	66.1	44.2	75.5	52.7	59.5	38.2	66.9	44.8	75.2	52.7	61.3	39.3	60.3	42	80.5	58.6	46.3	31
Delaware	74.9	56.4	87.1	68.2	65.8	47.7	76.6	57.5	87.9	68.6	68.1	49.2	67.9	53.1	84.4	68.9	56.1	41.6
Washington DC	60.3	46.1	77.5	61.9	48.1	35	39.4	31.4	46.6	37.6	32.8	25.8	71.5	55.3	97	78.6	55.1	40.6
Florida	66.8	48.8	79.4	61.4	56.7	38.8	68.4	50	79.7	61.8	59.3	40.5	53.6	41.1	78.6	63.7	35.8	25.4
Georgia	71	52.9	93.3	73.1	55	38.7	74.6	55.2	94.2	73.7	60.1	41.7	62.5	48.1	94.5	75	42.6	31.8
Hawaii	50	36	64.3	48.8	38.7	25.9	55.1	42.8	62.6	50	48.5	36.4	46.3	39.8	^	^	^	^
Idaho	53.5	41	61.5	49.2	47.2	34.5	53.5	41.3	61.7	49.6	47.2	34.7	^	^	^	^	^	^
Illinois	71.5	51.8	86.7	65.8	60.9	41.9	71.4	51.4	85.4	64.6	61.5	42	81.7	63.2	106.6	86.3	65.5	48.6
Indiana	77.4	60.5	96.4	79.4	63.5	46.7	77.1	60.4	95.6	79	63.7	46.9	84.4	68.1	111.5	94.7	65.6	50.4
Iowa	67.6	49.3	84.7	64.1	54.9	38.3	67.4	49.3	84.4	63.9	54.7	38.4	101.3	71.9	128.4	97.2	82.1	52
Kansas	65.7	51.2	80.2	66.8	54.5	39.4	65.2	50.7	79.4	65.9	54.3	39.1	76.5	64	95.6	86.5	62.8	48.9
Kentucky	99.6	73.2	125.9	97.1	80.3	55.8	99.8	73.2	125.6	96.7	80.7	56	106.8	80.7	144.2	114.1	82.9	59.1
Louisiana	75.7	59.4	99.6	80.9	57.7	43.6	74.9	58.4	94.5	76.1	60	45.3	79.5	63.7	118.4	98.4	53	40.3
Maine	77.5	56.1	91.5	69.9	67.3	46	77.8	56.3	91.9	70.1	67.5	46.2	^	^	^	^	^	^
Maryland	63.5	49.6	74.4	61.7	55.8	40.8	65.7	50.9	74.6	61.3	59.3	43.2	61.1	50.3	78.5	69.6	50.1	37.9
Massachusetts	69.7	49.7	78.3	60.6	64.1	42.1	71.6	51.2	79.4	61.8	66.7	44	49.6	35.3	68.6	52.5	37.2	23.9
Michigan	71.9	54.1	86.1	68.2	61.6	43.9	70.4	53.4	83.3	66.7	61	43.8	82.8	62.4	109.1	85.3	64.8	47

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

	All races						White						Black					
	Both sexes		Males		Females		Both sexes		Males		Females		Both sexes		Males		Females	
State	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality	Incidence	Mortality
Minnesota§	–	43.9	–	53.3	–	37	–	43.9	–	53.1	–	37.3	–	45.6	–	59	–	35.2
Mississippi	80.1	64.3	112.7	95.4	56.2	42	81.3	64.5	109.6	91.7	60.2	44.6	76.7	63.5	120.6	105.3	47	35.8
Missouri	77.5	59	95.6	76.5	64.3	46.2	77	59.1	94.7	76.3	64	46.4	86.6	63.1	108.5	85.6	71.9	48.4
Montana	61.8	45.1	68.9	52.1	56.3	39.6	60.1	44.5	66.9	51.3	54.9	39.1	^	^	^	^	^	^
Nebraska	61.3	46.2	74.6	60.3	51.2	35.5	60.7	46	73.8	60	50.8	35.4	80.2	60.8	97.4	79.4	66.2	46.5
Nevada†¶	69.5	52.4	75.7	59.7	64.7	46.5	73.2	55.5	77.6	61.7	69.9	50.5	54.9	44.1	65.4	51.8	46.2	37.1
New Hampshire	69.8	49.8	80.1	59	62.2	43.3	69.6	50.3	79.6	59.5	62.1	43.7	^	^	^	^	^	^
New Jersey	62.4	44.8	72.8	55.8	55.3	37.2	64.3	46.3	73.8	56.7	58	39.1	62.4	46.3	81.8	65.5	50	34.5
New Mexico	44.7	35.1	52.9	43.4	38.1	28.6	46.5	36.6	54.4	44.8	40.1	30.1	61.5	48.2	89.6	74	35.7	^
New York	64.3	43.5	76.3	54.3	56	36.1	68	46.2	78.5	56.2	60.8	39.1	52.8	36.4	71.3	51	41.5	27.6
North Carolina	73.9	55.7	96.7	76.6	57.2	40.7	74.9	56.4	95	74.7	60	42.9	70.7	54	107.8	89.1	46.5	32.1
North Dakota	53.8	41.5	68.1	54.1	43.3	32.2	52.4	40.4	66.9	53.4	41.5	30.7	^	^	^	^	^	^
Ohio†¶	74.2	57.1	92.6	74.8	60.7	44.2	73.4	56.6	91.1	73.7	60.3	44	84	66.4	111.3	92.8	66.1	49.2
Oklahoma	77.1	60.8	96.1	79.6	62.7	46.6	75.2	61.4	93.4	79.8	61.5	47.4	76.7	59.1	106.2	82.2	54.8	42
Oregon	63.2	49.5	70.6	58.4	57.6	42.7	62.9	50	69.8	58.9	57.7	43.3	72.2	59.9	93.2	79.8	53.2	42.7
Pennsylvania	68.9	50.5	84.4	65.8	57.9	39.6	67.9	49.9	83.1	65	56.9	39.1	85.7	63.3	107.2	84.9	72.5	50.2
Rhode Island	72.1	51.4	84.1	64.9	64.5	42.6	73.2	52.2	85.5	65.8	65.3	43.4	60.7	43.9	59.7	52.9	62.9	37.3
South Carolina	71	55.6	94.1	77.1	53.9	39.9	73.4	56.9	93.3	75.7	58.3	42.8	62.7	51.3	96.5	83.2	40.1	30.6
South Dakota	59.1	46	73.8	61.9	48	34.1	57.9	45.3	72.6	60.8	46.7	33.8	^	^	^	^	^	^
Tennessee	79.1	64.5	103.4	89.5	61.3	46.6	79.8	64.7	103.3	88.7	62.5	47.3	75.5	65.9	105.5	100.8	55.7	44

Texas	61.6	46.2	78.2	60.7	49	35.4	61.1	45.8	76.6	59.2	49.4	35.7	73.6	58.2	106.4	88.7	51.5	37.9
Utah	28.1	21.6	34.1	27.5	23.3	16.8	28	21.4	34	27.3	23.1	16.7	55.5	53.4	^	^	^	^
Vermont	72.2	52.5	81.2	62.3	65.6	45.1	72.5	52.8	81.5	62.9	65.9	45.2	^	^	^	^	^	^
Virginia†	65.9	51.4	82.2	67.1	53.9	40	66.7	51.7	81	65.7	56	41.4	68.6	55.8	97.6	83.2	49.5	38.4
Washington	63.5	48.5	72.1	57	57.3	42.1	64.4	49.5	72.1	57.6	58.7	43.5	71	53.2	87.1	65.7	57.8	42.7
West Virginia	85.7	65.2	106.4	84.3	70	50.9	86.1	65.6	106.7	84.7	70.6	51.4	78.3	61.2	109.4	85.4	54.1	42.7
Wisconsin	62	46.9	73.6	58.4	53.4	38.4	59.3	46	69.9	57	51.6	38	90.4	70.4	123.9	103.4	67.2	47.7
Wyoming	51.1	42.4	57.3	49.9	46	36.4	51	42.6	57.3	50.4	45.8	36.3	^	^	^	^	^	^

Sources

Incidence: NAACCR, 2013. Data are collected by cancer registries participating in the National Cancer Institute's SEER program and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's National Program of Cancer Registries

Mortality: US Mortality Data, National Center for Health Statistics, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

^ Statistic not displayed due to fewer than 25 cases

† This state's data are not included in US combined rates because they did not meet high-quality standards for one or more years during 2006–2010 according to the North American Association of Central Cancer Registries (NAACCR)

‡ Rates are based on incidence data for 2006–2008

§ This state's registry did not submit 2006–2010 cancer incidence data to NAACCR

¶ Rates are based on incidence data for 2006–2009

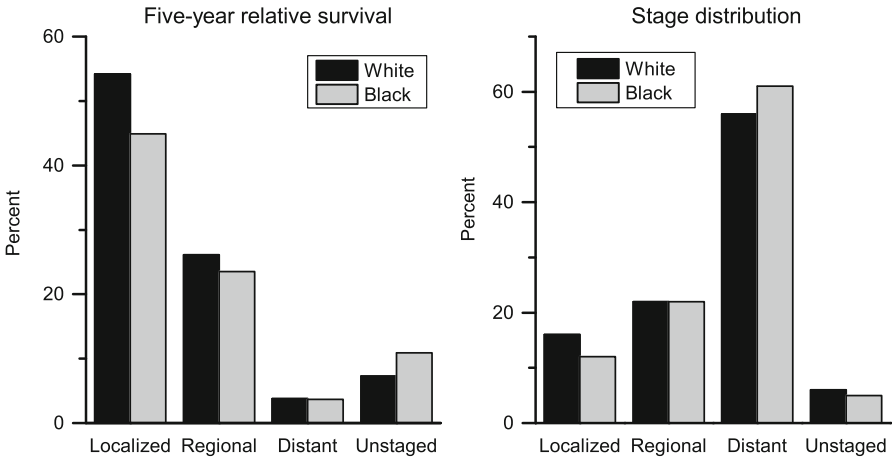


Fig. 5 Lung cancer 5 year relative survival and stage distribution, United States, 2003–2009 (Source: Howlader [17])

in California, which was the first state to enact comprehensive tobacco control measures, are nearly twice that of many states in the Midwest and South [13]. Among females, while overall national lung cancer death rates have leveled off and begun to decrease, rates in several states in the Midwest and South continue to increase [13, 28]. These states are characterized by low excise taxes on cigarettes and lack of other tobacco control policies [28].

Survival

Lung cancer survival is low and has seen only marginal increases since the mid-1970s [17]. Based on data from the nine oldest SEER registries, the 5 year relative survival rate increased from 12 % for patients diagnosed during 1975–1977 to 18 % for those diagnosed during 2003–2009 [17].

Cancer survival depends largely on stage at diagnosis (Fig. 5). For lung cancer patients diagnosed in 2003–2009, the 5 year relative survival rate was 54 % for localized stage disease, 26 % for regional stage, and 4 % for distant stage [17]. However, only 15 % of cases were diagnosed at the localized stage, while 22 % were diagnosed at the regional stage and 57 % were diagnosed at the distant stage [17].

Survival is lower in blacks (14 %) than in whites (18 %) [17] because blacks are less likely to receive standard treatment and are more likely to be diagnosed at an advanced stage (Fig. 5). Survival also declines with age. The 5 year relative survival rate for those diagnosed before the age of 45 is 27 %, compared to 19 % among those diagnosed at ages 55–64 and 12 % among those diagnosed at age 75 or greater [17].

Global Lung Cancer Patterns

Worldwide, lung cancer is the leading cause of cancer death in men and the second leading cause of cancer death in women, with approximately 1.8 million new cases and 1.6 million deaths annually [3]. Across the world, the lung cancer burden varies substantially across countries and regions.

Global Variations in Incidence and Mortality

The significant worldwide variation in lung cancer rates largely reflects differences in the stage and degree of the tobacco epidemic, though differences in air pollution are also a factor. Among males, the highest incidence and mortality rates occur in Central, Eastern, Southern, and Western Europe, Northern America, Micronesia/Polynesia, and Eastern Asia (Figs. 6 and 7), whereas the lowest rates occur in Middle, Western, and Eastern Africa. Overall, incidence rates range from 1.7 per 100,000 in Western Africa to 53.5 in Central and Eastern Europe, while mortality rates range from 1.5 in Western Africa to 47.6 in Central and Eastern Europe [3].

In men, lung cancer incidence rates are about 50 % higher in more-developed regions (44.7 cases per 100,000) compared to less-developed regions (30.0 per 100,000) [3]. However, due to their larger populations, less-developed regions accounted for about 60 % (1.1 million out of 1.8 million) of all lung cancer cases in 2012 [3]. The lung cancer burden among males is predominantly shaped by smoking

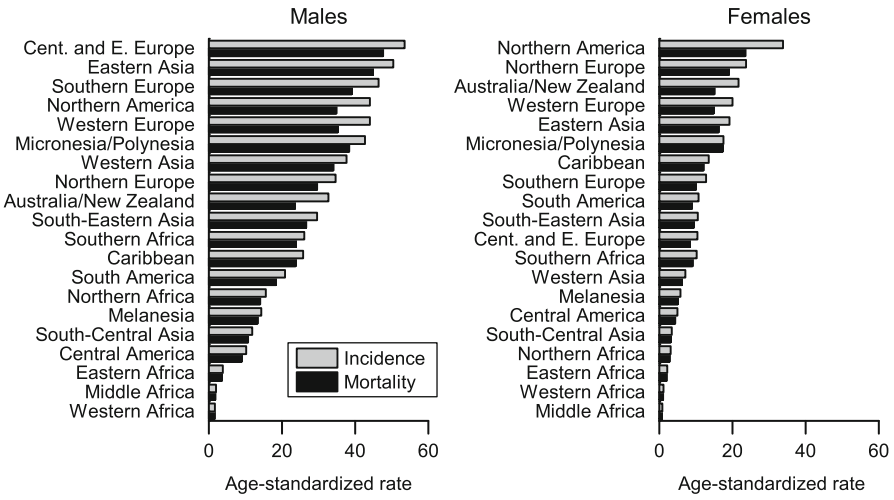


Fig. 6 Lung cancer incidence and mortality rates by sex and world region, 2012. Rates are per 100,000 and age-adjusted to the 1960 world standard population (Source: Ferlay [3]. Accessed on 12/13/2013)

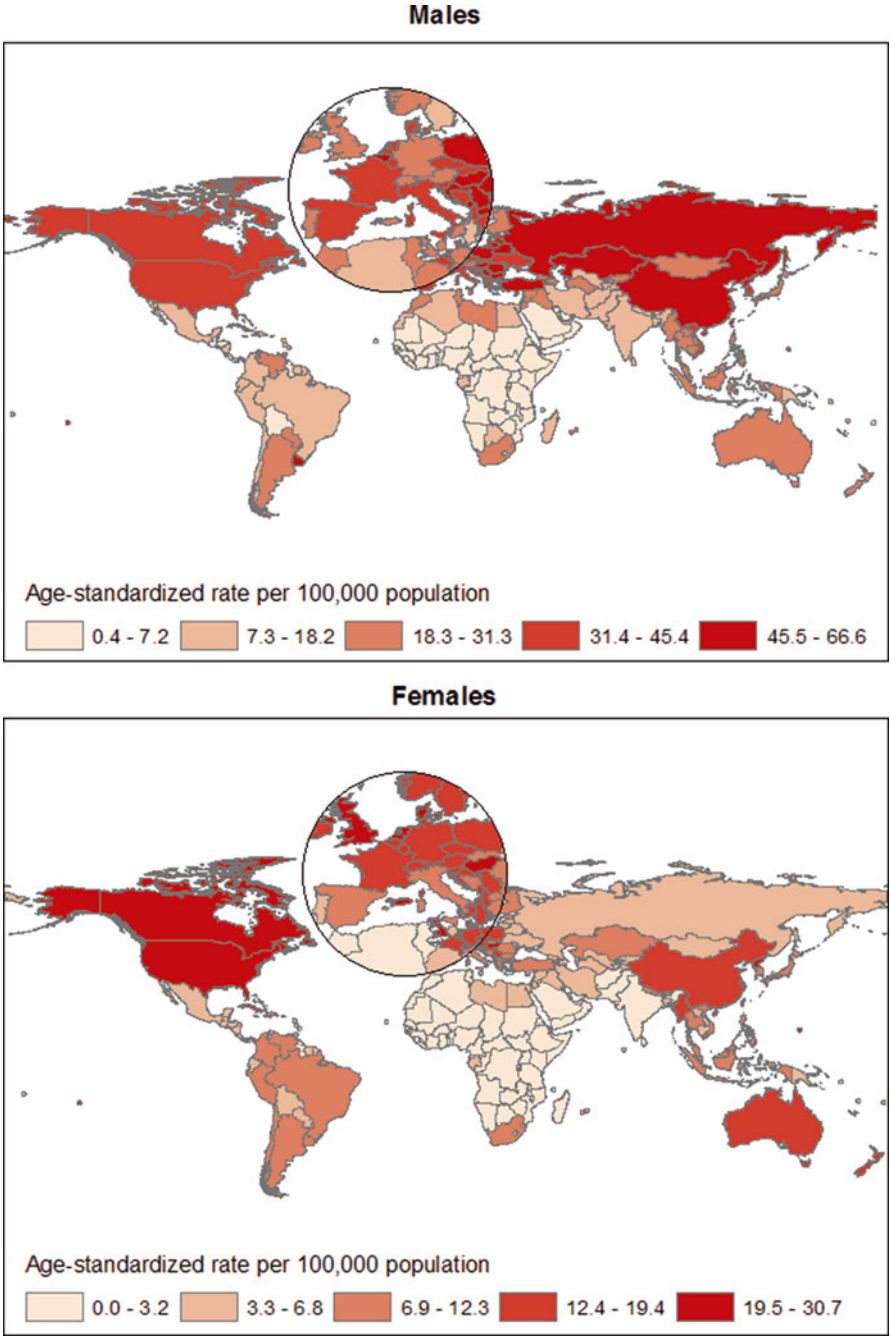


Fig. 7 International variation in lung cancer mortality by sex, 2012. Rates are per 100,000 and age-adjusted to the 1960 world standard population (Source: Ferlay [3]. Accessed on 3/5/2014)

patterns, although other factors, such as air pollution and occupational exposures, also play a role [29].

Among females, the highest incidence and mortality rates occur in Northern America, Northern and Western Europe, Australia/New Zealand, and Eastern Asia (Figs. 6 and 7). The lowest rates occur in Middle, Western, Eastern, and Northern Africa. Overall, incidence rates among females range from 0.8 per 100,000 in Middle Africa to 33.8 in Northern America, while mortality rates range from 0.7 in Middle Africa to 23.5 in Northern America [3]. By country, mortality rates vary from 0.0 in Comoros, Samoa, and Niger to 30.7 in North Korea [3]. The lung cancer burden among females, while largely linked to smoking patterns, is also related to other risk factors including air pollution and occupational exposures [29]. In Eastern Asia in particular, where smoking among women remains uncommon, indoor air pollution from cooking and heating plays a significant role [29, 30].

Variation in the lung cancer burden exists not only across regions, but also across countries and even within each country. For example, in Africa, male lung cancer incidence rates range from 0.4 per 100,000 in Niger to 32.3 in La Reunion. In many countries, there is also wide variation in lung cancer rates within the country [3]. For instance, in Singapore among men, lung cancer rates for the Indian population are 17.4 per 100,000, compared to 34.0 in the Malay population and 44.7 in the Chinese population [10]. In females, variation within regions and within countries is also notable. For example, in Eastern Europe, incidence rates range from 6.1 per 100,000 in Ukraine to 33.2 in Hungary [3]. In New Zealand, lung cancer incidence is 25.0 per 100,000 among Pacific Islanders and 79.0 among the Maori population [10].

Survival

Survival for lung cancer is poor and does not vary a great deal between high-income and low- and middle-income countries, although high-income countries may have slightly better survival rates due to improved detection and access to treatment. For example, 5 year relative survival for lung cancer is 7 % in India and 9 % in Thailand, compared to 17 % in Australia and 18 % in Canada [31].

Global Trends in Incidence and Mortality

In countries where smoking uptake began earliest, such as Canada, the United States, United Kingdom, and Australia, lung cancer incidence and mortality rates among males have been declining since the 1970s–1990s [12]. Rates among males are now also declining in most countries of Europe and North America, as well as select countries in South America (Argentina, Chile, Costa Rica, Mexico) and high-income populations of Asia, such as Hong Kong, Singapore, Japan, and South Korea [12]. In contrast, in countries where the smoking epidemic began more

recently, including low- and middle-income countries of South America and Asia, lung cancer mortality rates continue to rise [12]. Little incidence and mortality data exists for Africa, but evidence suggests that smoking is becoming more prevalent among males in many countries in Sub-Saharan Africa, [32] which could lead to increasing lung cancer rates in the future.

Lung cancer trends among women differ from those among men due to a different progression of smoking uptake. In countries where smoking uptake among women began earlier, lung cancer incidence and mortality rates are approaching a peak or have peaked in recent years. For instance, lung cancer mortality rates among adult women aged 30–74 in Denmark and the United States have been decreasing since 1995 and 1992 respectively, and rates in Canada have been stable since 1996 [33]. In other countries where the tobacco epidemic began later, especially in Western and Southern Europe and most countries of Eastern Europe and South America, rates continue to increase [33]. In many low- and middle-income countries where the tobacco epidemic has not yet begun, limited evidence indicates that lung cancer rates have remained low. For these countries, however, data is scarce, and detecting lung cancer trends may be difficult. Smoking among women is on the rise in many countries where it was previously rare, such as Russia and Ukraine, which will likely lead to increasing lung cancer rates in the future [34, 35].

Summary

Lung cancer is the leading cause of cancer death in the United States in both men and women. Patterns are primarily driven by smoking. Rates are highest in males, people of lower socioeconomic status, and in certain states of the South and Midwest. Lung cancer incidence and mortality rates at the national level are decreasing among both males and females, although trends are not equal across demographic or geographic groups. For instance, lung cancer mortality rates continue to rise among females in select states of the South and Midwest. As people of higher socioeconomic status are now less likely to initiate smoking and are more likely to quit, the burden of lung cancer in the United States also falls increasingly to those of lower socioeconomic status.

Worldwide, lung cancer is the leading cause of death among men and the second leading cause of death among women, after breast cancer. Lung cancer incidence and mortality rates are highest in high-income countries such as those in Europe, North America, and Oceania where smoking uptake occurred earliest, although rates are now decreasing in many of these countries. Rates are also high in Eastern Asia, driven by a rapid uptake of smoking among males and exposure to indoor air pollution among females. Rates continue to increase in many low- and middle-income countries where smoking uptake occurred later. Lung cancer deaths can be averted through tobacco control measures aimed at prevention of smoking initiation as well as smoking cessation.

References

1. Proctor RN (2001) Tobacco and the global lung cancer epidemic. Nat Rev Cancer 1(1):82–86. doi:10.1038/35094091
2. Siegel R, Ma J, Zou Z, Jemal A (2014) Cancer statistics, 2014. CA Cancer J Clin 64(1):9–29. doi:10.3322/caac.21208
3. Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Ervik M, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, Parkin D, Forman D, Bray F (2013) GLOBOCAN 2012 v1.0, cancer incidence and mortality worldwide: IARC cancerbase No. 11 [Internet]. International Agency for Research on Cancer. http://globocan.iarc.fr. Accessed 12 Dec 2013
4. Thun M, Peto R, Boreham J, Lopez AD (2012) Stages of the cigarette epidemic on entering its second century. Tob Control 21(2):96–101. doi:10.1136/tobaccocontrol-2011-050294
5. Copeland G, Lake A, Firth R, Wohler B, Wu XC, Stroup A, Russell C, Zakaria D, Miladinovic Z, Schymura M, Hofferkamp J, Kohler B (eds) (2013) Cancer in north America: 2006–2010. Volume two: registry-specific cancer incidence in the United States and Canada. North American Association of Central Cancer Registries, Inc., Springfield
6. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2013) National Program of Cancer Registries (NPCR). http://www.cdc.gov/cancer/npcr/about.htm. Accessed 3 Dec 2013
7. Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) (2013) Program (www.seer.cancer.gov). SEER*stat database: mortality – all COD, aggregated with state, total U.S. (1969–2010) <Katrina/Rita Population Adjustment>, National Cancer Institute, DCCPS, Surveillance Research Program, Surveillance Systems Branch, released April 2013. Underlying mortality data provided by NCHS (www.cdc.gov/nchs)
8. Doria-Rose VP, Marcus PM (2009) Death certificates provide an adequate source of cause of death information when evaluating lung cancer mortality: an example from the Mayo Lung Project. Lung Cancer 63(2):295–300. doi:10.1016/j.lungcan.2008.05.019
9. Ferlay J, Shin HR, Bray F, Forman D, Mathers C, Parkin DM (2010) Estimates of worldwide burden of cancer in 2008: GLOBOCAN 2008. Int J Cancer 127(12):2893–2917. doi:10.1002/ijc.25516
10. Forman DBF, Brewster DH, Gombe Mbalawa C, Kohler B, Piñeros M, Steliarova-Foucher E, Swaminathan R, Ferlay J (eds) (2013) Cancer incidence in five continents, vol X (Electronic version). IARC. http://ci5.iarc.fr. Accessed 9 Dec 2013
11. Mathers CD, Fat DM, Inoue M, Rao C, Lopez AD (2005) Counting the dead and what they died from: an assessment of the global status of cause of death data. Bull World Health Organ 3(3):171–177. doi:10.1590/S0042-96862005000300009
12. World Health Organization International Agency for Research on Cancer (2013) Cancer mortality database. http://www-dep.iarc.fr/WHOdb/WHOdb.htm. Accessed 13 Dec 2013
13. Jemal A, Thun MJ, Ries LA, Howe HL, Weir HK, Center MM, Ward E, Wu XC, Eheman C, Anderson R, Ajani UA, Kohler B, Edwards BK (2008) Annual report to the nation on the status of cancer, 1975–2005, featuring trends in lung cancer, tobacco use, and tobacco control. J Natl Cancer Inst 100(23):1672–1694. doi:10.1093/jnci/djn389
14. Lopez AD, Collishaw N, Piha T (1994) A descriptive model of the cigarette epidemic in developed countries. Tob Control 3(3):242–247
15. National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion Office on Smoking and Health (2014) The health consequences of smoking – 50 years of progress: a report of the surgeon general. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (US), Atlanta
16. Spitz MR, Wu X, Wilkinson A, Wei Q (2006) Cancer of the lung. In: Schottenfeld D, Fraumeni J Jr (eds) Cancer epidemiology and prevention, 3rd edn. Oxford University Press, New York, pp 638–658
17. Howlader N, Noone AM, Krapcho M, Garshell J, Neyman N, Altekruse SF, Kosary CL, Yu M, Ruhl J, Tatalovich Z, Cho H, Mariotto A, Lewis DR, Chen HS, Feuer EJ, Cronin KA (eds) (2013) SEER cancer statistics review, 1975–2010, National Cancer Institute. Bethesda. http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2010/, based on November 2012 SEER data submission, posted to the SEER web site, April 2013

18. Espey DK, Wu XC, Swan J, Wiggins C, Jim MA, Ward E, Wingo PA, Howe HL, Ries LA, Miller BA, Jemal A, Ahmed F, Cobb N, Kaur JS, Edwards BK (2007) Annual report to the nation on the status of cancer, 1975–2004, featuring cancer in American Indians and Alaska Natives. Cancer 110(10):2119–2152. doi:10.1002/cncr.23044
19. Gomez SL, Noone AM, Lichtensztajn DY, Scoppa S, Gibson JT, Liu L, Morris C, Kwong S, Fish K, Wilkens LR, Goodman MT, Deapen D, Miller BA (2013) Cancer incidence trends among Asian American populations in the United States, 1990 to 2008. J Natl Cancer Inst. doi:10.1093/jnci/djt157
20. Edwards BK, Noone AM, Mariotto AB, Simard EP, Boscoe FP, Henley SJ, Jemal A, Cho H, Anderson RN, Kohler BA, Eheman CR, Ward EM (2013) Annual report to the nation on the status of cancer, 1975–2010, featuring prevalence of comorbidity and impact on survival among persons with lung, colorectal, breast, or prostate cancer. Cancer. doi:10.1002/cncr.28509
21. Warner KE, Mendez D (2010) Tobacco control policy in developed countries: yesterday, today, and tomorrow. Nicotine Tob Res 12(9):876–887. doi:10.1093/ntr/ntq125
22. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2001) Women and smoking: a report of the surgeon general. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health, Rockville
23. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (2009) Cigarette smoking among adults and trends in smoking cessation – United States, 2008. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 58 (44):1227–1232
24. Caraballo RS Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (2013) Cigarette smoking-United States, 2006–2008 and 2009–2010. MMWR 62 (Suppl 3):81–84
25. Agaku IT, King BA, Dube SR (2014) Current cigarette smoking among adults – United States, 2005–2012. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 63(2):29–34
26. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (2011) Quitting smoking among adults – United States, 2001–2010. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 60 (44):1513–1519
27. Clegg LX, Reichman ME, Miller BA, Hankey BF, Singh GK, Lin YD, Goodman MT, Lynch CF, Schwartz SM, Chen VW, Bernstein L, Gomez SL, Graff JJ, Lin CC, Johnson NJ, Edwards BK (2009) Impact of socioeconomic status on cancer incidence and stage at diagnosis: selected findings from the surveillance, epidemiology, and end results: National Longitudinal Mortality Study. Cancer Causes Control 20(4):417–435. doi:10.1007/s10552-008-9256-0
28. Jemal A, Ma J, Rosenberg PS, Siegel R, Anderson WF (2012) Increasing lung cancer death rates among young women in southern and midwestern States. J Clin Oncol. doi:10.1200/jco.2012.42.6098
29. Ezzati M, Henley SJ, Lopez AD, Thun MJ (2005) Role of smoking in global and regional cancer epidemiology: current patterns and data needs. Int J Cancer 116(6):963–971. doi:10.1002/ijc.21100
30. IARC working group on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to human (2010) Household Use of Solid Fuels and High-temperature Frying. IARC monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans, vol 95. Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer
31. Coleman MP, Forman D, Bryant H, Butler J, Rachet B, Maringe C, Nur U, Tracey E, Coory M, Hatcher J, McGahan CE, Turner D, Marrett L, Gjerstorff ML, Johannesen TB, Adolfsson J, Lambe M, Lawrence G, Meechan D, Morris EJ, Middleton R, Steward J, Richards MA (2011) Cancer survival in Australia, Canada, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, and the UK, 1995–2007 (the International Cancer Benchmarking Partnership): an analysis of population-based cancer registry data. Lancet 377(9760):127–138. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(10)62231-3
32. Pampel F (2008) Tobacco use in sub-Sahara Africa: estimates from the demographic health surveys. Soc Sci Med 66(8):1772–1783. doi:10.1016/j.socscimed.2007.12.003
33. Torre LA, Siegel RL, Ward EM, Jemal A (2014) International variation in lung cancer mortality rates and trends among women. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 23(6):1025–1036

34. Giovino GA, Mirza SA, Samet JM, Gupta PC, Jarvis MJ, Bhala N, Peto R, Zatonski W, Hsia J, Morton J, Palipudi KM, Asma S (2012) Tobacco use in 3 billion individuals from 16 countries: an analysis of nationally representative cross-sectional household surveys. Lancet 380(9842):668–679. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(12)61085-x
35. Perlman F, Bobak M, Gilmore A, McKee M (2007) Trends in the prevalence of smoking in Russia during the transition to a market economy. Tob Control 16(5):299–305. doi:10.1136/tc.2006.019455

Epidemiology of Lung Cancer

Ann G. Schwartz and Michele L. Cote

Abstract Lung cancer continues to be one of the most common causes of cancer death despite understanding the major cause of the disease: cigarette smoking. Smoking increases lung cancer risk 5- to 10-fold with a clear dose–response relationship. Exposure to environmental tobacco smoke among nonsmokers increases lung cancer risk about 20 %. Risks for marijuana and hookah use, and the new e-cigarettes, are yet to be consistently defined and will be important areas for continued research as use of these products increases. Other known environmental risk factors include exposures to radon, asbestos, diesel, and ionizing radiation. Host factors have also been associated with lung cancer risk, including family history of lung cancer, history of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and infections. Studies to identify genes associated with lung cancer susceptibility have consistently identified chromosomal regions on 15q25, 6p21 and 5p15 associated with lung cancer risk. Risk prediction models for lung cancer typically include age, sex, cigarette smoking intensity and/or duration, medical history, and occupational exposures, however there is not yet a risk prediction model currently recommended for general use. As lung cancer screening becomes more widespread, a validated model will be needed to better define risk groups to inform screening guidelines.

Keywords Lung cancer • Epidemiology • Smoking • Genetics • Susceptibility • Risk models

As discussed in chapter "Lung Cancer Statistics", lung cancer is the most common cause of cancer death in the United States, is the second most frequent cancer diagnosed, behind breast cancer in women and prostate cancer in men, and is one of the few cancers with a strong environmental exposure definitively linked to risk. It is also a cancer for which little progress has been made in terms of early detection and survival. Eighty to ninety percent of all lung cancers are attributable to cigarette smoking and could be prevented. While both lung cancer incidence and mortality

A.G. Schwartz (✉) • M.L. Cote
Department of Oncology, Karmanos Cancer Institute, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA
e-mail: schwarta@karmanos.org; cotem@karmanos.org

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_2

rates have fallen with the reduction in tobacco smoking, lung cancer continues to be the cause of significant morbidity and mortality. This chapter will present the epidemiology of lung cancer, including both well studied risk factors, such as cigarette smoking, and other risk factors such as family history and genetic susceptibility, that are often overlooked because of the strength of the association with smoking.

Smoking

In 1964, the landmark report on smoking and health was released by the Surgeon General of the U.S. Public Health Service. The report detailed the association between lung cancer and cigarette smoking, noting that men who were average smokers had a 9 to 10-fold greater risk of lung cancer than nonsmoking men, and that risk estimates were even higher for heavy smokers [1]. In the decades prior to the report, smoking was prevalent in the U.S., with two thirds of adult men and one third of adult women reporting current smoking in 1955. 2014 was the 50th anniversary of the report, and as a whole the U.S. has made great strides in reducing cigarette smoking.

In 2010, 19.3 % of U.S. adults reported current smoking, although the declines have not been equal across population subgroups [2]. Current smoking is more prevalent among men (21.2 %) compared to women (17.5 %). Race and ethnicity also influences cigarette smoking, with highest rates among American Indian or Alaska Natives (26.6 %) and lowest rates among Asians (9.3 %). Current smoking prevalence by race/ethnicity and gender is shown in Fig. 1 for the most common race/ethnic groups in the U.S. Age is also associated with current smoking status,

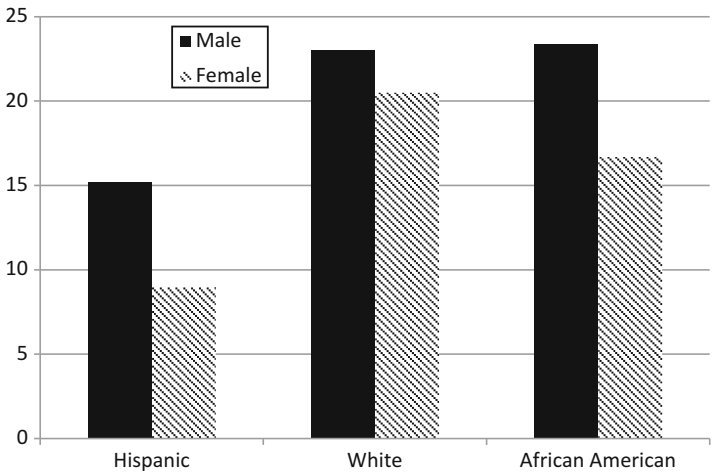


Fig. 1 Prevalence of current cigarette smoking, by race/ethnicity and sex, 2010, National Health Interview Survey, United States [2]

with only 5.1 % of individuals ages 75 and older reporting smoking, compared to 21.5 % of those ages 18–44 years. Smoking is more prevalent among those who live below the poverty level (28.4 %) and those without a high school diploma (27.1 %). There are regional differences as well, with those living in the Midwest and South more likely to smoke (21.8 % and 21.0 %, respectively) compared to those living in the Northeast (17.4 %) or West (15.9 %). These data are from the 2010 U.S. National Health Interview Survey, a household survey conducted annually by interviewers of the U.S. Census Bureau for the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) [2].

While personal cigarette smoking has been causally linked with lung cancer, second-hand cigarette smoking, also called involuntary smoking or environmental tobacco smoke (ETS), has been associated with lung cancer risk in exposed nonsmoking individuals. In 1986, the Surgeon General released a report detailing the chemical composition of sidestream smoke, noting it is qualitatively similar to the mainstream smoke inhaled by the smoker and that both mainstream and sidestream smoke act as carcinogens [3]. This report also concluded ETS exposure is associated with lung cancer in nonsmoking individuals. Various epidemiologic studies have confirmed the association with lung cancer, although the findings for ETS are neither as strong nor as consistent as the risk estimates reported for current smoking. This is not unexpected, as measuring ETS exposure is less standardized than estimating years smoked, or number of cigarettes used per day. Despite difficulties with assessing ETS exposure, most epidemiologic evidence supports a modest association between ETS exposure and lung cancer. A meta-analysis of 35 case–control and 5 cohort studies suggested nonsmoking women exposed to ETS from their spouse's smoking had a 1.2-fold increase in risk compared to women who were not exposed (OR = 1.20, 95 % CI: 1.10–1.29) [4]. Since personal smoking is more prevalent among men, similar studies estimating risk of lung cancer among men from exposure to ETS through their smoking spouse are not available. For workplace ETS, another meta-analysis of 22 workplace studies found a 24 % increase in risk of lung cancer among workers exposed to ETS (RR = 1.24, 95 % CI: 1.18, 1.29) [5]. Longer durations of exposure, whether in the workplace or at home, have been associated with even greater increases in risk.

Other methods to smoke tobacco, such as pipe and cigar smoking, are also associated with increased risk of lung cancer. Two studies from the American Cancer Society's Cancer Prevention Study cohort provide estimates of risk for men; however, data for women are not available because of low usage of these products among women. Men who reported current or former exclusive pipe smoking (i.e., did not also smoke cigarettes) had a 5-fold increased risk of death from lung cancer compared to men who reported never using tobacco (including cigarettes) (RR = 5.00, 95 % CI 4.16, 6.01) [6]. In this same cohort, men who reported current exclusive cigar smoking at baseline had an nearly identical risk of dying from lung cancer compared to those who never used tobacco (RR = 5.1, 95 % CI: 4.0–6.6) [7]. A cohort study from Europe of 102,395 men reported slightly lower estimates for exclusive users of pipes (HR = 3.0, 95 % CI: 2.1, 4.5) or cigars (HR = 2.2, 95 % CI: 1.3, 3.8) compared to men who did not use any tobacco [8]. While these estimates are lower than for cigarette smoking, it should be noted that pipe or cigar smoking

is not a safer alternative to cigarette smoking, but the lower risk is likely explained by lower smoking intensity and perhaps lesser degrees of inhalation of these products.

Other products are also potential risk factors for lung cancer that will likely generate more research in the upcoming decades. First, marijuana (cannabis) use is reported to be the most widely consumed illicit drug worldwide, and the smoke contains many of the same carcinogens found in tobacco. In the U.S., marijuana use has been decriminalized for medical purposes in some regions and to a lesser extent, for personal use. The long-term effects of marijuana use on lung cancer are largely unknown. A 40-year cohort study of 49,321 Swedish men enrolled between the ages of 18 and 20 suggests that "heavy" use of marijuana smoking (defined as having used more than 50 times prior to enrollment) was associated with a 2-fold increase in risk of lung cancer (HR = 2.12, 95 % CI: 1.08, 4.14) after adjustment for tobacco use at baseline and other potential confounders [9]. Unfortunately, these data were only collected at baseline, so updated exposure status could not be incorporated into the models. Marijuana use is prevalent among youth in the U.S., with data from 2011 suggesting that 39.9 % of high school students (9th–12th grades) had tried marijuana at least once, and 23.1 % had used in the 30 days prior to the survey [10]. Thus, marijuana is poised to become an increasingly important risk factor for lung cancer.

Another potential factor for lung cancer is hookah use (water pipe tobacco smoking). Research suggests that a single session of hookah use results in similar mean peak plasma nicotine concentration levels compared to smoking a cigarette, but has 3.75-fold greater carboxyhemoglobin (COHb) levels, and 56-fold greater inhaled smoke volume [11]. The tobacco products used in hookah pipes are often enhanced with various flavorings, and the potential health effects of these chemicals have not been studied. The Monitoring the Future survey found that in 2011, 18.5 % of 12th grade students in the United States had used hookahs in the past year [12]. Other studies indicate that hookah smoking is more prevalent among university students in the United States, with past-year use ranging from 22 % to 40 %, and note that hookah users are more likely to use cigarettes and marijuana [13, 14]. Lastly, electronic cigarettes (e-cigs) or "vapors" are also emerging as an alternative way to inhale nicotine, although little research has been done on these products. It will be necessary for future studies of lung cancer risk to include comprehensive exposure questionnaires to account for various routes of inhaled nicotine, tobacco, and marijuana exposure.

Environmental Exposures

Compared to cigarette smoking, the proportion of lung cancers associated with environmental or occupational exposures is relatively low in the United States, but of significant concern to the 10–15 % of never smokers who develop lung cancer, and also because many environmental exposures may act synergistically with cigarette

smoking. Many agents have been examined as potential risk factors associated with lung cancer but are often difficult to quantify and thus the evidence is unclear. Below we describe exposures which have been linked to lung cancer and are of particular interest due to their ubiquitous nature: radon, air pollution, asbestos, diesel exhaust, and ionizing radiation.

Radon is widely accepted as the first identified environmental cause of lung cancer in studies of underground miners (1920s). An inert gas, it is naturally produced from radium in the decay series of uranium (found in rocks and soil) and is a ubiquitous contaminant of indoor air. A meta-analysis of 13 European case–control studies suggests risk of lung cancer is increased by 8.4 % (95 % CI: 3.0–15.8) per 100 Becquerels/m^3 increase in measured radon (p-value = 0.0007) and they noted a linear dose–response relationship. There was a synergistic effect with current cigarette smoking, with absolute risk at least 25 times greater for smokers [15, 16]. A pooled analysis of over 4000 cases and 5000 controls from 7 North American case–control studies of lung cancer reported similar findings [17]. Estimates suggest that 20,000 lung cancers diagnosed annually in the United States are attributed to radon exposure [18]. As radon is odorless and colorless, most people are unaware of this potential household hazard. Thus, in 2011, 10 United States federal agencies, led by the Environmental Protection Agency, developed a plan to increase awareness and to reduce the risk from radon exposure [19].

Radon can be considered indoor air pollution, as can ETS, but there are additional indoor contaminates that may increase lung cancer risk. In particular, the use of soft coal for cooking and heating has been associated with lung cancer. A meta-analysis of 25 case–control studies with over 10,000 cases and 13,000 controls noted that household coal use was associated with lung cancer in all studies (meta-OR = 2.15, 95 % CI: 1.61–2.89), and stronger associations were seen in studies from China [20]. Several studies of Chinese nonsmoking women report that heating cooking oils to high temperatures is associated with increased risk of lung cancer [21, 22]. The combination of burning coal, cooking fumes, and ETS exposure play an important role in the development of lung cancer for this population. Outdoors, long-term ambient fine particulate matter ($PM_{2.5}$) air pollution has been studied as a potential risk factor for lung cancer, usually through cohort studies that link with air monitoring networks. These studies have shown increased risk of lung cancer mortality as $PM_{2.5}$ levels rise, among individuals living in these areas longer-term [23, 24]. These associations are small, and may be confounded by other exposures, such as cigarette smoking. Regardless of the source, air pollution is a source of concern and continual study for lung cancer and other pulmonary conditions is needed.

A well-established occupational risk factor for lung cancer is asbestos. Asbestos refers to naturally occurring silicate mineral fibers, which have been widely used in industry. Asbestos exposure is related to both mesothelioma and lung cancer, responsible for a combined 10,000 deaths annually in the United States [25]. Asbestos-induced effects in the lungs appear to be dose-dependent and related to the size and composition of the fiber inhaled, with effect sizes ranging from OR = 2.0 to 6.0, depending on the fiber type [25, 26]. There also appears to be a synergistic relationship between cigarette smoking and asbestos exposure, highlighting the need for smoking prevention and cessation for workers in this industry [27].

Evidence supporting increased lung cancer risk with occupational diesel exposure is less established, but a pooled analysis of 11 case–control studies suggested about a 30 % increase in risk among the exposed (OR = 1.3, 95 % CI: 1.2, 1.4) and a significant dose–response trend [28]. A recent review of various studies and exposure assessment methods argues that evidence is still insufficient to make this claim, although the particles found in diesel exhaust contain known carcinogens [29]. In addition, millions of people living in urban areas are exposed to various levels of diesel across their lifespans, and little is known about lung cancer risk associated with low level, chronic exposure.

Lastly, another common exposure that may increase risk of lung cancer is ionizing radiation. Studies of the Hiroshima and Nagasaki atomic bomb survivors suggest increased lung cancer incidence (as well as other solid tumors) among those exposed, with risk increasing in a linear dose response pattern [30]. This single, high dose exposure differs from the smaller doses the general population may receive during X-ray or computed tomography (CT) screenings [31]. Risks associated with repeated CT screenings, while relatively low for an individual, have been considered when making recommendations for implementing population-based lung cancer screening, so that the increased risk of screening does not outweigh the potential benefit [32].

Family History of Lung Cancer

Epidemiologic evidence demonstrates familial aggregation of lung cancer after adjusting for familial clustering of cigarette smoking and other risk factors. Familial aggregation of lung cancer was first noted 50 years ago by Tokuhata and Lilienfeld [33, 34]. In a study of 270 lung cancer patients and 270 matched controls, and their relatives, they found 2.0 to 2.5-fold increased lung cancer mortality in smoking relatives of cases as compared with smoking relatives of controls. A similar finding was noted in nonsmoking relatives. There was an interaction between family history and smoking, with smoking relatives of lung cancer patients having a higher risk of lung cancer than either nonsmoking relatives of lung cancer patients or smoking relatives of controls. This was the first study to account for age and smoking status in a study of familial aggregation of lung cancer, however, smoking intensity or duration was not available.

Several other studies have since reported familial aggregation of lung cancer [35, 36], with the best studies taking into account the number of relatives in the families and the risk factor profiles for each relative to ensure that clustering of smoking habits is not driving aggregation of lung cancer. Studies in southern Louisiana, Houston, Detroit and Iceland reported an increased familial risk of lung cancer among relatives of lung cancer probands (the index case leading the family to be studied) after accounting for the effects of age, sex, and smoking history, and occupation or history of COPD [37–41]. These studies suggested a 2 to 4-fold increased risk associated with having a first degree relative with lung cancer after accounting

for risk factors, including smoking amount and duration, among the relatives, with variation in risk estimates by age of the proband, smoking status and race.

While the studies described above included risk factor data among relatives, pooled and meta-analyses have been conducted that include a broader range of studies. A meta-analysis of 28 case–control studies and 17 cohort studies demonstrated fairly consistent findings of an approximately 2-fold increased risk of lung cancer associated with family history [35]. Risk was generally higher in relatives of cases diagnosed at a young age and when multiple family members were affected. The International Lung Cancer Consortium study included data from approximately 24,000 lung cancer cases and 23,000 controls and reported a significant 1.5-fold increased risk of lung cancer associated with family history after adjustment for smoking and other potential confounders in cases and controls, and a significant 1.3-fold increased risk for lung cancer among never smokers [36]. Risk estimates were similar when evaluating only those studies with risk factor data for each family member; relative risks for lung cancer among relatives with a family history were 1.6 overall, 1.5 for white, 2.1 for African American, and 2.0 for early-onset (<age 50) case relatives. These studies provide substantial evidence for familial aggregation of lung cancer that remains after adjustment for clustering of cigarette smoking within family members.

Genetic Susceptibility

Evidence of familial aggregation of lung cancer suggests that there is a genetic contribution to lung cancer susceptibility, and typically suggests a rare, highly penetrant inherited mutation. In addition, smokers have differential susceptibility to lung carcinogens; only 15 % of smokers develop lung cancer and 10–15 % of lung cancers develop in never smokers. It is possible that variation in genetic profiles contributes to this differential susceptibility, most likely in the form of a more common, low penetrant genetic alteration.

Rare, High Penetrance Genes Only one large, family-based lung cancer study has been conducted providing the first evidence of a lung cancer susceptibility locus on chromosome 6 [42]. In this consortium study, multipoint parametric linkage under the simple dominant low-penetrance affected only model yielded a maximum heterogeneity LOD (HLOD) score of 2.79 at 155 cM (marker D6S2436) on chromosome 6q23-25, with 67 % of the families estimated to be linked. Higher HLODs at this location were reported for more highly affected families: families with four affected relatives gave an HLOD of 3.47, families with five or more affected members in two or more generations, gave an HLOD was 4.26, with 94 % of the families estimated to be linked to this region. In expanded analyses with additional families, the region on 6q was again identified [43]. In addition, lung cancer risk among putative carriers was estimated and found to be higher than among noncarriers, even among never smokers. The usual dose response curves of increasing lung cancer

risk with increasing amount smoked was demonstrated among smoking noncarriers. Among smoking carriers, risk was higher than among noncarriers, but a dose response relationship was not apparent suggesting that any level of tobacco exposure increases risk among those with inherited lung cancer susceptibility. Additional evidence suggestive for linkage was also found for regions on chromosomes 1q, 8q, 9p, 12q, 5q, 14q and 16q [43, 44].

Common, Low Penetrance Genes Initial studies designed to identify more common, low penetrance genes with more moderate effects evaluated small numbers of genetic polymorphisms in biologically plausible pathways including metabolic genes, growth factors, growth factor receptors, DNA damage and repair genes, oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes [45, 46]. More recently, genome-wide association studies (GWAS) have been conducted that rely on very large samples and more than 300,000 markers across the genome. Unlike the candidate gene studies, the GWAS have provided highly significant and reproducible results.

The first three publications of lung cancer GWAS findings identified the same region of chromosome 15q as significantly associated with lung cancer risk [47–49]. This region includes a neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor gene cluster comprising *CHRNA3, CHRNA5* and *CHRNA4* subunits. Genetic variation in this 15q25 region was associated with an approximately 1.3-fold increased risk of lung cancer among individuals carrying a heterozygous mutation (44.2 % of controls for marker rs8034191) and about a 1.8-fold increase for individuals homozygous for the mutation (10.7 % of controls). This region has also been associated with smoking behavior. One study suggested that the region affected smoking behavior [48], another found stronger effects on lung cancer risk that remained after adjusting for smoking behavior [49], while the third study did not find any association with smoking behaviors [47]. A meta-analysis of smokers, lung cancer cases and lung cancer-free controls, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) cases and COPD-free controls reported that multiple loci within this region are associated with cigarettes smoked per day and at least one locus associated with lung cancer independent of amount smoked [50].

Two other regions, on chromosomes 6p21 and 5p15, identified from GWAS have been consistently associated with lung cancer risk [47–49, 51, 52]. *BAT3* and *MSH5* are located in the 6p21 region, while *TERT* and *CLPTM1L* are located in the 5p15 region. In a large meta-analysis of 14,900 lung cancer cases and 29,485 controls from 16 GWAS, all of European ancestry (as were the initial GWAS), additional support was provided for loci associated with increased lung cancer risk at 5p15, 6p21, and 15q25 [53]. Lung cancer GWAS have also been conducted in the Han Chinese population where evidence was found for lung cancer risk associations at 5p15, 3q28 (*TP63*), 13q12 (*MIPEP-TNFRSF19*), and 22q12 (*MTMR3-HORMAD2-LIF*) [54], and at 10p14, 5q32 and 20q13 [55]. In the Japanese population, the findings on 5p15, 3q28, and 6p21 were replicated [56].

Genetic susceptibility for lung cancer in never smokers is less well studied due to the smaller number of never smokers with lung cancer. In a GWAS of never smoking women in Asia, the 6p21, 5p15 and 3q28 findings were replicated and new

regions on 10q25 and 6q22 were identified as being associated with lung cancer [57]. A large GWAS in European American never smokers is underway. In addition, a lung cancer GWAS in African Americans is being conducted. While the findings from the GWAS in African Americans have yet to be published, associations between lung cancer risk and SNPs on 15q25, 5p15 and 6p21 have been replicated in African Americans [58, 59]. A GWAS in lung cancer cases with a strong family history of lung cancer has also been conducted, but results have yet to be published. GWAS in various population subsets who have different genetic backgrounds and smoking behaviors will provide important information for the eventual identification of lung cancer susceptibility genes.

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)

COPD and lung cancer share a common risk factor, cigarette smoking, but studies also suggest that COPD itself is a risk factor for lung cancer independent of smoking habits. A COPD diagnosis has been consistently reported to be associated with a 2- to 3-fold risk of developing lung cancer [60–66], even among never smokers [67]. Lung cancer risk varies with specific COPD phenotypes, i.e., emphysema and chronic bronchitis [62, 66, 68–72]. In a meta-analysis, lung cancer was associated with a previous history of COPD (OR = 2.2, 95 % CI 1.7–3.0), chronic bronchitis (OR = 1.5, 95 % CI 1.3–1.8), and emphysema (OR = 2.0, 95 % CI 1.7–2.4) [65]. In a large, population-based case–control study in women in Detroit, non-small cell lung cancer cases with a joint chronic obstructive lung disease phenotype were more likely to be white, heavy smokers, be exposed to environmental tobacco smoke, have childhood asthma, and have a history of asbestos exposure than lung cancer cases without a history of COPD [64]. Most epidemiologic studies of COPD, however, rely on self-report of COPD phenotype and are subject to both recall bias and misclassification.

Prospective studies have evaluated the association between computed tomography (CT) evidence of emphysema and/or spirometry-defined measures of airflow obstruction and risk of lung cancer, reducing the potential for disease misclassification. These studies report a 2- to 4-fold increased risk of lung cancer in the presence of CT evidence of emphysema, with no or lower risks associated with airflow obstruction [64, 73–75]. In studies using quantitative image analysis of CTs, no increased lung cancer risk among patients with emphysema was reported [76, 77]. Risk of lung cancer has also been shown to increase with decreasing forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1) even in smokers with only minimal declines in FEV_1 [72]. For these studies to move forward, consistently defined COPD will need to be evaluated in individuals with the joint COPD-lung cancer phenotype.

The lung cancer-COPD connection also is evidenced in family and genetic studies. First degree relatives of lung cancer patients show impaired FEV_1 [78] and a family history of COPD increases risk of lung cancer development [79], suggesting a common underlying genetic contribution to these diseases. In family-based genetic studies

for COPD, a region on 6q, just beyond the lung cancer linkage region and extending to the end of the chromosome, was linked to FEV_1 [80, 81]. There was also evidence for linkage of lung function to moderate obstructive lung disease in smokers on chromosome 12p [82, 83]. These data provide some regions of potential overlap in areas linked to lung function, COPD and lung cancer on chromosomes 6q and 12p.

Candidate gene studies in COPD and lung cancer have focused on inflammation, extracellular matrix proteolysis, and oxidative stress pathways [84–86], with some consistent findings for SNPs in epoxide hydrolase 1 (EPHX1), matrix metalloproteinases, and interleukin 1β (IL1B) [87–91]. Inflammatory pathway genes have been targeted for study because of the chronic inflammation caused by cigarette smoke. Van Dyke et al. showed that SNPs in *IL7R*, *IL15*, *TNF*, *TNFRSF10A, IL1RN*, and *IL1A* were associated with lung cancer risk in women with self-reported COPD, but not among women without COPD [92]. SNPs in *IL1A* have also been reported to be more strongly associated with lung cancer risk in those with emphysema [89]. GWAS for COPD-related phenotypes have identified some of the same regions identified in studies of lung cancer, namely 15q25.1 [50, 93–96]. Few studies, however, have evaluated a joint lung cancer and COPD phenotype. Young et al. summarize findings and report that the 15q25 locus is associated with risk of both diseases, genetic variation on 4q31 and 4q22 are associated with reduced risk of both diseases, loci on 6p21 are most strongly associated with lung cancer risk in smokers with COPD, and variants on 5p15 and 1q23 alter lung cancer risk when COPD is not present [97]. Taken together, these findings suggest that lung cancer occurrence is linked to COPD and more detailed studies of the joint phenotype using clearly defined COPD traits are needed to better untangle the relationship [98].

Infectious Agents

The role of infectious agents in lung cancer risk has had a varied focus over time with the changes in prevalent exposures. An association between TB and lung cancer has been reported for many years. In a meta-analysis of 37 case–control studies and 4 cohort studies, Liang et al. report significant associations between TB and subsequent lung cancer diagnoses, with risk estimates of 1.7 (95 % CI 1.5–2.0) adjusting for smoking history [99]. Similar risk estimates were reported in never smokers and highest risk was seen within 5 years of the TB diagnosis. In a more recent, population-based cohort study in Taiwan, a 1.8-fold increased risk of lung cancer was reported after a diagnosis of TB [100]. Human papillomavirus (HPV) infections have also been studied with regard to lung cancer risk. The prevalence of HPV in lung tumor tissue ranges from 0 % to 100 %, with great heterogeneity of findings across geographic regions, histology type of the lung cancer, sex, and HPV type [101, 102]. This is an area which will require additional study in high risk populations.

Another focus of current research is on lung cancer risk among individuals with HIV infection. With more effective treatments, HIV-infected patients are living

longer and lung cancer now ranks as one of the most frequently diagnosed non-AIDS-defining malignancies. Studies comparing lung cancer incidence in HIV-infected individuals to the general population have shown a 1.5 to 5.0-fold increased risk in infected individuals. In the review by Hou et al., standardized incidence ratios (SIRs) and incidence rate ratios (IRRs) adjusted for age, gender, race/ethnicity, smoking and route of infection are presented for 65 publications [103]. Lung cancer risk in HIV-positive populations varied with geographic region; SIRs or IRRs were 1.5–3.4 in Europe, 0.7–6.9 in the United States and 5.0 in Africa. Risk estimates were 5.4 in Europe and 2.8–3.0 in the United States for individuals with AIDS. Most studies showed little difference in lung cancer risk among HIV-infected patients receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) and those not [104–106]. There are a number of limitations to the current body of literature, and continued follow-up of HIV-positive individuals will be needed to fully evaluate lung cancer risk that considers smoking more fully and focuses on race/ethnicity in populations at high risk of infection.

Risk Models

With the anticipated launch of population-based lung cancer screening on the horizon, identification of the group who would most benefit from early detection (i.e., those at highest risk of lung cancer) is critical to the success of a screening program. Over the last decade, various models have been proposed, as shown in Table 1. The eight proposed models are from both cohort (n = 4) [107–110] and case–control studies (n = 4) [111–114]. The majority of these studies are for current or former (usually defined as quit within one year of diagnosis or study entry) smokers, and use a combination of demographic characteristics (e.g., age and sex), intensity and/or duration of cigarette smoking, medical history, and occupational exposures as variables in the predictive model.

Discrimination was assessed by study authors using either concordance indices (c-statistic) or receiver operating curves (ROC), reported as area under the curve (AUC). Both provide an overall indication of the diagnostic accuracy of the model, with values closer to 1 indicating the model reliably distinguishes lung cancer cases from controls, whereas values at .50 indicate the predictor is no better than chance. It should be noted that while cross-validation (and the resulting concordance index) is useful to estimate the prediction capabilities of the proposed model, validation with an independent data set is preferred [115]. In addition, models presented discrimination measures for various time points (range, 1–10 years), so interpreting these values across models should be done with caution. Lastly, differences in the distribution of predictor variables included in the models that occur over time can affect model performance, as can cohort composition, case–control ascertainment and matching [116]. Thus, there is not one risk prediction model currently recommended for general use.

Table 1 Risk models for lung cancer in the general population

First author, (year)	Population type	Population details	Variables	Model discrimination	Other information
Bach et al. [107]	N = 18,172 Carotene and Retinol Efficacy Trial participants	All participants were either 20 pack year smokers (current or quit within 6 years) or asbestos-exposed men (current smokers or quit within 15 years)	-Age -Sex -Asbestos exposure -Duration of smoking -Cigarettes per day -Time since smoking cessation	One year risk: c-statistic = 0.72 Also presented a 10-year risk table	Within study validation and the Mayo Clinic CT study
Spitz et al. [112]	1851 lung cancer patients and 2001 control subjects (matched on age (±5 years), sex, ethnicity, and smoking status (never, former, or current))	Cases recruited from the Thoracic Center at The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center Controls recruited from Kelsey – Seybold Clinics in metropolitan Houston, TX	*Never smokers*: -ETS -Family history of any cancer *Former smokers*: -Emphysema -Dust exposure -Hay fever -Family history of any cancer -Age stopped smoking *Current smokers*: -Emphysema -Pack-years -Dust exposure -Hay fever -Asbestos exposure -Family history of smoking-related cancer	One year risk : c-statistic: -Never smokers: 0.59 -Former smokers: 0.63 -Current smokers: 0.65	25 % of population used for validation
Spitz et al. [114]	725 lung cancer patients and 615 control subjects, (matched on age (±5 years), sex, ethnicity, and smoking status (current or former smokers only))	Cases recruited from the Thoracic Center at The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center Controls recruited from Kelsey – Seybold Clinics in metropolitan Houston, TX	In addition to the variables listed above in Spitz (2007), data from two assays were included: a DNA repair capacity measure and a bleomycin sensitivity measure	Former smokers: AUC = 0.70 Current smokers: AUC = 0.73	Within study 3-fold cross-validation

Etzel et al. [113]	491 African American lung cancer patients and 497 African American control subjects (matched on age ±5 years), sex, ethnicity, and smoking status	Cases recruited from the Thoracic Center at The University of Texas M.D. Anderson Cancer Center Controls recruited from Kelsey – Seybold Clinics in metropolitan Houston, TX	-Smoking status -Pack years of smoking -Age at smoking cessation -Number of years since smoking cessation -COPD -Hay fever -Asbestos exposure -Wood dust exposure	AUC = 0.75 Five-year absolute risks also presented	Internal validation: 89 African American cases and 67 African American controls AUC = 0.75 External validation: Case–control studies of lung cancer in African Americans (172 cases and 153 controls) from metropolitan Detroit, Michigan AUC = 0.63
Cassidy et al. [111]	579 lung cancer cases and 1157 age- and sex-matched population-based controls	Residents of the Liverpool area	-Smoking duration -Pneumonia -Occupational asbestos exposure -Prior cancer -Family history of lung cancer	Five year risk: AUC = 0.71	No validation
Tammemagi et al. [109]	70,962 subjects in the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal, and Ovarian Cancer Screening Trial (PLCO) and a subcohort of ever-smokers (N = 38,254)	Ten-site randomized screening trial in the US, enrollment started in November 1993 and ended June 2001. Subjects at study entry were men and women aged 55–74 years	-Age -Education -Body mass index -Family history of lung cancer -Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease -Recent chest x-ray -Smoking status -Pack-years smoked -Smoking duration -Smoking quit years (in ever-smoker subcohort)	Median follow-up = 9.2 years AUC = 0.86 (all) AUC = 0.81 (ever smoker)	Validation was performed with 44,223 PLCO intervention arm participants

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

First author, (year)	Population type	Population details	Variables	Model discrimination	Other information
Hoggart et al. [108]	82,776 current smokers, 86,259 former smokers, 230,358 never smokers from the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC) cohort	Healthy participants from Italy, Spain, England, the Netherlands, Greece, Germany, and Norway between 40 and 65 years of age at study entry between 1993 and 1999	-Age -Average smoking intensity -Age started smoking -Duration of smoking (former smokers)	One year risk for smokers: Current: AUC = 0.82 Former: AUC = 0.83 Ever: AUC = 0.84 5 year risk: Current: AUC = 0.77 Former: AUC = 0.72 Ever: AUC = 0.79	Data split into test (10 %) and training (90 %) sets Examined various nonsmoking exposures but did not include in final model
Tammemagi et al. [110]	73,618 ever-smoking subjects in the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal, and Ovarian Cancer Screening Trial	Ten-site randomized screening trial in the US, enrollment started in November 1993 and ended June 2001. Subjects at study entry were men and women aged 55–74 years	-Updated to exclude chest X-ray and include race and prior cancer	Six-year risk: AUC = 0.80 (36,286 ever smokers)	Internal validation: 37,332 PLCO smokers AUC = 0.80 External validation: 51,033 National Lung Screen Trial participants (all ever smokers) AUC = 0.70

In addition to these published reports using risk factors based on demographic and exposure information, limited research has been published incorporating genetic information (e.g. SNPs) into risk prediction models. Overall, the addition of SNPs into currently available models does not significantly improve model performance [117–119]. Given that lung cancer is a complex, polygenic disease with a strong environmental component associated with risk, these findings are not unexpected. Theoretical studies in other types of cancer suggest that common SNPs are unlikely to be clinically useful to include in building models to help inform risk-based interventions, such as screening [120].

Summary

Cigarette smoking continues to be the overwhelming risk factor for lung cancer. While lung cancer incidence and mortality rates have declined with a decrease in cigarette use, lung cancer remains a disease that is diagnosed at later stages with very poor survival. Several risk factors, other than smoking, have been identified and include environmental exposures such as radon and asbestos, as well as, family history and genetic susceptibility. Further understanding of the roles of a previous diagnosis of COPD, marijuana, hookah and e-cigarette use, and infections are needed to better define the highest risk group. The advent of screening for lung cancer using low dose CT will result in decreased mortality and will be most cost-effective in a well-defined high risk population.

References

1. Reports of the Surgeon General (1964) Smoking and health, Report of the advisory committee to the surgeon general of the Public Health Service. Public Health Service publication no. 1103
2. Schiller JS, Lucas JW, Ward BW et al (2012) Summary health statistics for U.S. adults: national health interview survey. Vital Health Stat 10(265):1–218
3. Reports of the Surgeon General (1986) The health consequences of involuntary smoking: a report of the surgeon general. Edited by Service PH. DHHS publication PHS 87–8398, Rockville
4. Zhong L, Goldberg MS, Parent ME, Hanley JA (2000) Exposure to environmental tobacco smoke and the risk of lung cancer: a meta-analysis. Lung Cancer 27(1):3–18
5. Stayner L, Bena J, Sasco AJ, Smith R, Steenland K, Kreuzer M, Straif K (2007) Lung cancer risk and workplace exposure to environmental tobacco smoke. Am J Public Health 97(3):545–551
6. Henley SJ, Thun MJ, Chao A, Calle EE (2004) Association between exclusive pipe smoking and mortality from cancer and other diseases. J Natl Cancer Inst 96(11):853–861
7. Shapiro JA, Jacobs EJ, Thun MJ (2000) Cigar smoking in men and risk of death from tobacco-related cancers. J Natl Cancer Inst 92(4):333–337
8. McCormack VA, Agudo A, Dahm CC, Overvad K, Olsen A, Tjonneland A, Kaaks R, Boeing H, Manjer J, Almquist M et al (2010) Cigar and pipe smoking and cancer risk in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC). Int J Cancer 127(10):2402–2411

9. Callaghan RC, Allebeck P, Sidorchuk A (2013) Marijuana use and risk of lung cancer: a 40-year cohort study. Cancer Causes Control 24(10):1811–1820
10. Eaton DK, Kann L, Kinchen S et al (2012) Youth risk behavior – United States. Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 61(SS04):1–162
11. Cobb CO, Shihadeh A, Weaver MF, Eissenberg T (2011) Waterpipe tobacco smoking and cigarette smoking: a direct comparison of toxicant exposure and subjective effects. Nicotine Tob Res 13(2):78–87
12. Johnston LD, O'Malley P, Bachman JG et al (2010) Monitoring the future national survey results on adolescent drug use, 1975–2011: volume I, Secondary school students. Institute for Social Research, Ann Arbor
13. Heinz AJ, Giedgowd GE, Crane NA, Veilleux JC, Conrad M, Braun AR, Olejarska NA, Kassel JD (2013) A comprehensive examination of hookah smoking in college students: use patterns and contexts, social norms and attitudes, harm perception, psychological correlates and co-occurring substance use. Addict Behav 38(11):2751–2760
14. Holtzman AL, Babinski D, Merlo LJ (2013) Knowledge and attitudes toward hookah usage among university students. J Am Coll Health 61(6):362–370
15. Darby S, Hill D, Auvinen A, Barros-Dios JM, Baysson H, Bochicchio F, Deo H, Falk R, Forastiere F, Hakama M et al (2005) Radon in homes and risk of lung cancer: collaborative analysis of individual data from 13 European case–control studies. BMJ 330(7485):223
16. Darby S, Hill D, Deo H, Auvinen A, Barros-Dios JM, Baysson H, Bochicchio F, Falk R, Farchi S, Figueiras A et al (2006) Residential radon and lung cancer--detailed results of a collaborative analysis of individual data on 7148 persons with lung cancer and 14,208 persons without lung cancer from 13 epidemiologic studies in Europe. Scand J Work Environ Health 32(Suppl 1):1–83
17. Krewski D, Lubin JH, Zielinski JM, Alavanja M, Catalan VS, Field RW, Klotz JB, Letourneau EG, Lynch CF, Lyon JL et al (2006) A combined analysis of North American case–control studies of residential radon and lung cancer. J Toxicol Environ Health A 69(7):533–597
18. United States Environmental Protection Agency (2003) EPA assessment of risks from radon in homes. Air OoRaI, Washington, DC
19. United States Environmental Protection Agency (2011) Protecting people and families from radon. A federal action plan for saving lives. Environmental Protection Agency. Washington D.C.
20. Hosgood HD 3rd, Wei H, Sapkota A, Choudhury I, Bruce N, Smith KR, Rothman N, Lan Q (2011) Household coal use and lung cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis of case–control studies, with an emphasis on geographic variation. Int J Epidemiol 40(3):719–728
21. Mu L, Liu L, Niu R, Zhao B, Shi J, Li Y, Swanson M, Scheider W, Su J, Chang SC et al (2013) Indoor air pollution and risk of lung cancer among Chinese female non-smokers. Cancer Causes Control 24(3):439–450
22. Zhong L, Goldberg MS, Gao YT, Jin F (1999) Lung cancer and indoor air pollution arising from Chinese-style cooking among nonsmoking women living in Shanghai, China. Epidemiology 10(5):488–494
23. Pope CA 3rd, Burnett RT, Thun MJ, Calle EE, Krewski D, Ito K, Thurston GD (2002) Lung cancer, cardiopulmonary mortality, and long-term exposure to fine particulate air pollution. JAMA 287(9):1132–1141
24. Turner MC, Krewski D, Pope CA 3rd, Chen Y, Gapstur SM, Thun MJ (2011) Long-term ambient fine particulate matter air pollution and lung cancer in a large cohort of never-smokers. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 184(12):1374–1381
25. McCormack V, Peto J, Byrnes G, Straif K, Boffetta P (2012) Estimating the asbestos-related lung cancer burden from mesothelioma mortality. Br J Cancer 106(3):575–584
26. Nelson HH, Kelsey KT (2002) The molecular epidemiology of asbestos and tobacco in lung cancer. Oncogene 21(48):7284–7288
27. Frost G, Darnton A, Harding AH (2011) The effect of smoking on the risk of lung cancer mortality for asbestos workers in Great Britain (1971–2005). Ann Occup Hyg 55(3):239–247

28. Olsson AC, Gustavsson P, Kromhout H, Peters S, Vermeulen R, Bruske I, Pesch B, Siemiatycki J, Pintos J, Bruning T et al (2011) Exposure to diesel motor exhaust and lung cancer risk in a pooled analysis from case–control studies in Europe and Canada. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 183(7):941–948
29. Gamble JF, Nicolich MJ, Boffetta P (2012) Lung cancer and diesel exhaust: an updated critical review of the occupational epidemiology literature. Crit Rev Toxicol 42(7):549–598
30. Preston DL, Ron E, Tokuoka S, Funamoto S, Nishi N, Soda M, Mabuchi K, Kodama K (2007) Solid cancer incidence in atomic bomb survivors: 1958–1998. Radiat Res 168(1):1–64
31. Fazel R, Krumholz HM, Wang Y, Ross JS, Chen J, Ting HH, Shah ND, Nasir K, Einstein AJ, Nallamothu BK (2009) Exposure to low-dose ionizing radiation from medical imaging procedures. N Engl J Med 361(9):849–857
32. Brenner DJ (2004) Radiation risks potentially associated with low-dose CT screening of adult smokers for lung cancer. Radiology 231(2):440–445
33. Tokuhata GK, Lilienfeld AM (1963) Familial aggregation of lung cancer in humans. J Natl Cancer Inst 30:289–312
34. LA Tokuhata GK (1963) Familial aggregation of lung cancer among hospital patients. Public Health Rep 87:277–283
35. Matakidou A, Eisen T, Houlston RS (2005) Systematic review of the relationship between family history and lung cancer risk. Br J Cancer 93(7):825–833
36. Cote ML, Liu M, Bonassi S, Neri M, Schwartz AG, Christiani DC, Spitz MR, Muscat JE, Rennert G, Aben KK et al (2012) Increased risk of lung cancer in individuals with a family history of the disease: a pooled analysis from the International Lung Cancer Consortium. Eur J Cancer 48(13):1957–1968
37. Ooi WL, Elston RC, Chen VW, Bailey-Wilson JE, Rothschild H (1986) Increased familial risk for lung cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 76(2):217–222
38. Etzel CJ, Amos CI, Spitz MR (2003) Risk for smoking-related cancer among relatives of lung cancer patients. Cancer Res 63(23):8531–8535
39. Cote ML, Kardia SL, Wenzlaff AS, Ruckdeschel JC, Schwartz AG (2005) Risk of lung cancer among white and black relatives of individuals with early-onset lung cancer. JAMA 293(24):3036–3042
40. Schwartz AG, Yang P, Swanson GM (1996) Familial risk of lung cancer among nonsmokers and their relatives. Am J Epidemiol 144(6):554–562
41. Jonsson S, Thorsteinsdottir U, Gudbjartsson DF, Jonsson HH, Kristjansson K, Arnason S, Gudnason V, Isaksson HJ, Hallgrimsson J, Gulcher JR et al (2004) Familial risk of lung carcinoma in the Icelandic population. JAMA 292(24):2977–2983
42. Bailey-Wilson JE, Amos CI, Pinney SM, Petersen GM, de Andrade M, Wiest JS, Fain P, Schwartz AG, You M, Franklin W et al (2004) A major lung cancer susceptibility locus maps to chromosome 6q23-25. Am J Hum Genet 75(3):460–474
43. Amos CI, Pinney SM, Li Y, Kupert E, Lee J, de Andrade MA, Yang P, Schwartz AG, Fain PR, Gazdar A et al (2010) A susceptibility locus on chromosome 6q greatly increases lung cancer risk among light and never smokers. Cancer Res 70(6):2359–2367
44. Fang S, Pinney SM, Bailey-Wilson JE, de Andrade MA, Li Y, Kupert E, You M, Schwartz AG, Yang P, Anderson MW et al (2010) Ordered subset analysis identifies loci influencing lung cancer risk on chromosomes 6q and 12q. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 19(12):3157–3166
45. Schwartz AG, Prysak GM, Bock CH, Cote ML (2007) The molecular epidemiology of lung cancer. Carcinogenesis 28(3):507–518
46. Marshall AL, Christiani DC (2013) Genetic susceptibility to lung cancer–light at the end of the tunnel? Carcinogenesis 34(3):487–502
47. Hung RJ, McKay JD, Gaborieau V, Boffetta P, Hashibe M, Zaridze D, Mukeria A, Szeszenia-Dabrowska N, Lissowska J, Rudnai P et al (2008) A susceptibility locus for lung cancer maps to nicotinic acetylcholine receptor subunit genes on 15q25. Nature 452(7187):633–637

48. Thorgeirsson TE, Geller F, Sulem P, Rafnar T, Wiste A, Magnusson KP, Manolescu A, Thorleifsson G, Stefansson H, Ingason A et al (2008) A variant associated with nicotine dependence, lung cancer and peripheral arterial disease. Nature 452(7187):638–642
49. Amos CI, Wu X, Broderick P, Gorlov IP, Gu J, Eisen T, Dong Q, Zhang Q, Gu X, Vijayakrishnan J et al (2008) Genome-wide association scan of tag SNPs identifies a susceptibility locus for lung cancer at 15q25.1. Nat Genet 40(5):616–622
50. Saccone NL, Culverhouse RC, Schwantes-An TH et al (2010) Multiple independent loci at chromosome 15q25.1 affect smoking quantity: a meta-analysis and comparison with lung cancer and COPD. PLoS Genet 6(8):e1001053
51. Broderick P, Wang Y, Vijayakrishnan J, Matakidou A, Spitz MR, Eisen T, Amos CI, Houlston RS (2009) Deciphering the impact of common genetic variation on lung cancer risk: a genome-wide association study. Cancer Res 69(16):6633–6641
52. Wang Y, Broderick P, Webb E, Wu X, Vijayakrishnan J, Matakidou A, Qureshi M, Dong Q, Gu X, Chen WV et al (2008) Common 5p15.33 and 6p21.33 variants influence lung cancer risk. Nat Genet 40(12):1407–1409
53. Timofeeva MN, Hung RJ, Rafnar T, Christiani DC, Field JK, Bickeboller H, Risch A, McKay JD, Wang Y, Dai J et al (2012) Influence of common genetic variation on lung cancer risk: meta-analysis of 14 900 cases and 29 485 controls. Hum Mol Genet 21(22):4980–4995
54. Hu Z, Wu C, Shi Y, Guo H, Zhao X, Yin Z, Yang L, Dai J, Hu L, Tan W et al (2011) A genome-wide association study identifies two new lung cancer susceptibility loci at 13q12.12 and 22q12.2 in Han Chinese. Nat Genet 43(8):792–796
55. Dong J, Hu Z, Wu C, Guo H, Zhou B, Lv J, Lu D, Chen K, Shi Y, Chu M et al (2012) Association analyses identify multiple new lung cancer susceptibility loci and their interactions with smoking in the Chinese population. Nat Genet 44(8):895–899
56. Shiraishi K, Kunitoh H, Daigo Y, Takahashi A, Goto K, Sakamoto H, Ohnami S, Shimada Y, Ashikawa K, Saito A et al (2012) A genome-wide association study identifies two new susceptibility loci for lung adenocarcinoma in the Japanese population. Nat Genet 44(8):900–903
57. Lan Q, Hsiung CA, Matsuo K, Hong YC, Seow A, Wang Z, Hosgood HD 3rd, Chen K, Wang JC, Chatterjee N et al (2012) Genome-wide association analysis identifies new lung cancer susceptibility loci in never-smoking women in Asia. Nat Genet 44(12):1330–1335
58. Schwartz AG, Cote ML, Wenzlaff AS, Land S, Amos CI (2009) Racial differences in the association between SNPs on 15q25.1, smoking behavior, and risk of non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 4(10):1195–1201
59. Walsh KM, Gorlov IP, Hansen HM, Wu X, Spitz MR, Zhang H, Lu EY, Wenzlaff AS, Sison JD, Wei C et al (2013) Fine-mapping of the 5p15.33, 6p22.1-p21.31, and 15q25.1 regions identifies functional and histology-specific lung cancer susceptibility loci in African-Americans. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 22(2):251–260
60. Mannino DM, Aguayo SM, Petty TL, Redd SC (2003) Low lung function and incident lung cancer in the United States: data from the First National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey follow-up. Arch Intern Med 163(12):1475–1480
61. Purdue MP, Gold L, Jarvholm B, Alavanja MC, Ward MH, Vermeulen R (2007) Impaired lung function and lung cancer incidence in a cohort of Swedish construction workers. Thorax 62(1):51–56
62. Schabath MB, Delclos GL, Martynowicz MM, Greisinger AJ, Lu C, Wu X, Spitz MR (2005) Opposing effects of emphysema, hay fever, and select genetic variants on lung cancer risk. Am J Epidemiol 161(5):412–422
63. Littman AJ, Thornquist MD, White E, Jackson LA, Goodman GE, Vaughan TL (2004) Prior lung disease and risk of lung cancer in a large prospective study. Cancer Causes Control 15(8):819–827
64. Wilson DO, Weissfeld JL, Balkan A, Schragin JG, Fuhrman CR, Fisher SN, Wilson J, Leader JK, Siegfried J, Shapiro SD et al (2008) Association of radiographic emphysema and airflow obstruction with lung cancer. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 178(7):738–744
65. Brenner DR, McLaughlin JR, Hung RJ (2011) Previous lung diseases and lung cancer risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One 6, e17479

66. Schwartz AG, Cote ML, Wenzlaff AS, Van Dyke A, Chen W, Ruckdeschel JC, Gadgeel S, Soubani AO (2009) Chronic obstructive lung diseases and risk of non-small cell lung cancer in women. J Thorac Oncol 4(3):291–299
67. Turner MC, Chen Y, Krewski D, Calle EE, Thun MJ (2007) Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease is associated with lung cancer mortality in a prospective study of never smokers. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 176(3):285–290
68. Anthonisen NR, Connett JE, Kiley JP, Altose MD, Bailey WC, Buist AS, Conway WA Jr, Enright PL, Kanner RE, O'Hara P et al (1994) Effects of smoking intervention and the use of an inhaled anticholinergic bronchodilator on the rate of decline of FEV1. The Lung Health Study. JAMA 272(19):1497–1505
69. McGarvey LP, John M, Anderson JA, Zvarich M, Wise RA (2007) Ascertainment of cause-specific mortality in COPD: operations of the TORCH Clinical Endpoint Committee. Thorax 62(5):411–415
70. Brownson RC, Alavanja MC, Caporaso N, Berger E, Chang JC (1997) Family history of cancer and risk of lung cancer in lifetime non-smokers and long-term ex-smokers. Int J Epidemiol 26(2):256–263
71. Mayne ST, Buenconsejo J, Janerich DT (1999) Familial cancer history and lung cancer risk in United States nonsmoking men and women. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 8(12):1065–1069
72. Wasswa-Kintu S, Gan WQ, Man SF, Pare PD, Sin DD (2005) Relationship between reduced forced expiratory volume in one second and the risk of lung cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Thorax 60(7):570–575
73. de Torres JP, Bastarrika G, Wisnivesky JP, Alcaide AB, Campo A, Seijo LM, Pueyo JC, Villanueva A, Lozano MD, Montes U et al (2007) Assessing the relationship between lung cancer risk and emphysema detected on low-dose CT of the chest. Chest 132(6):1932–1938
74. Ueda K, Jinbo M, Li TS, Yagi T, Suga K, Hamano K (2006) Computed tomography-diagnosed emphysema, not airway obstruction, is associated with the prognostic outcome of early-stage lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 12(22):6730–6736
75. Li Y, Swensen SJ, Karabekmez LG, Marks RS, Stoddard SM, Jiang R, Worra JB, Zhang F, Midthun DE, de Andrade M et al (2011) Effect of emphysema on lung cancer risk in smokers: a computed tomography-based assessment. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 4(1):43–50
76. Maldonado F, Bartholmai BJ, Swensen SJ, Midthun DE, Decker PA, Jett JR (2010) Are airflow obstruction and radiographic emphysema risk factors for lung cancer? A nested case–control study using quantitative emphysema analysis. Chest 138(6):1295–1302
77. Wilson DO, Leader JK, Fuhrman CR, Reilly JJ, Sciurba FC, Weissfeld JL (2011) Quantitative computed tomography analysis, airflow obstruction, and lung cancer in the Pittsburgh lung screening study. J Thorac Oncol 6(7):1200–1205
78. Cohen BH, Diamond EL, Graves CG, Kreiss P, Levy DA, Menkes HA, Permutt S, Quaskey S, Tockman MS (1977) A common familial component in lung cancer and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Lancet 2(8037):523–526
79. Wu AH, Yu MC, Thomas DC, Pike MC, Henderson BE (1988) Personal and family history of lung disease as risk factors for adenocarcinoma of the lung. Cancer Res 48(24 Pt 1):7279–7284
80. Joost O, Wilk JB, Cupples LA, Harmon M, Shearman AM, Baldwin CT, O'Connor GT, Myers RH, Gottlieb DJ (2002) Genetic loci influencing lung function: a genome-wide scan in the Framingham Study. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 165(6):795–799
81. Wilk JB, DeStefano AL, Joost O, Myers RH, Cupples LA, Slater K, Atwood LD, Heard-Costa NL, Herbert A, O'Connor GT et al (2003) Linkage and association with pulmonary function measures on chromosome 6q27 in the Framingham Heart Study. Hum Mol Genet 12(21):2745–2751
82. DeMeo DL, Celedon JC, Lange C, Reilly JJ, Chapman HA, Sylvia JS, Speizer FE, Weiss ST, Silverman EK (2004) Genome-wide linkage of forced mid-expiratory flow in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 170(12):1294–1301
83. Silverman EK, Mosley JD, Palmer LJ, Barth M, Senter JM, Brown A, Drazen JM, Kwiatkowski DJ, Chapman HA, Campbell EJ et al (2002) Genome-wide linkage analysis of

severe, early-onset chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: airflow obstruction and chronic bronchitis phenotypes. Hum Mol Genet 11(6):623–632
84. Masri FA, Comhair SA, Koeck T, Xu W, Janocha A, Ghosh S, Dweik RA, Golish J, Kinter M, Stuehr DJ et al (2005) Abnormalities in nitric oxide and its derivatives in lung cancer. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 172(5):597–605
85. Yoshida T, Tuder RM (2007) Pathobiology of cigarette smoke-induced chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Physiol Rev 87(3):1047–1082
86. Macnee W (2007) Pathogenesis of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Clin Chest Med 28(3):479–513, v
87. Schwartz AG, Prysak GM, Bock CH, Cote ML (2006) The molecular epidemiology of lung cancer. Carcinogenesis 28(3):507–518
88. Schwartz AG, Ruckdeschel JC (2006) Familial lung cancer: genetic susceptibility and relationship to chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 173(1):16–22
89. Engels EA, Wu X, Gu J, Dong Q, Liu J, Spitz MR (2007) Systematic evaluation of genetic variants in the inflammation pathway and risk of lung cancer. Cancer Res 67(13):6520–6527
90. Molfino NA (2007) Current thinking on genetics of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Curr Opin Pulm Med 13(2):107–113
91. Smolonska J, Wijmenga C, Postma DS, Boezen HM (2009) Meta-analyses on suspected chronic obstructive pulmonary disease genes: a summary of 20 years' research. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 180(7):618–631
92. Van Dyke AL, Cote ML, Wenzlaff AS, Chen W, Abrams J, Land S, Giroux CN, Schwartz AG (2009) Cytokine and cytokine receptor single-nucleotide polymorphisms predict risk for non-small cell lung cancer among women. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 18(6):1829–1840
93. Pillai SG, Ge D, Zhu G, Kong X, Shianna KV, Need AC, Feng S, Hersh CP, Bakke P, Gulsvik A et al (2009) A genome-wide association study in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD): identification of two major susceptibility loci. PLoS Genet 5(3), e1000421
94. Lambrechts D, Buysschaert I, Zanen P, Coolen J, Lays N, Cuppens H, Groen HJ, Dewever W, van Klaveren RJ, Verschakelen J et al (2010) The 15q24/25 susceptibility variant for lung cancer and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease is associated with emphysema. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 181(5):486–493
95. Thorgeirsson TE, Gudbjartsson DF, Surakka I, Vink JM, Amin N, Geller F, Sulem P, Rafnar T, Esko T, Walter S et al (2010) Sequence variants at CHRNB3-CHRNA6 and CYP2A6 affect smoking behavior. Nat Genet 42(5):448–453
96. Wilk JB, Shrine NR, Loehr LR, Zhao JH, Manichaikul A, Lopez LM, Smith AV, Heckbert SR, Smolonska J, Tang W et al (2012) Genome-wide association studies identify CHRNA5/3 and HTR4 in the development of airflow obstruction. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 186(7):622–632
97. Young RP, Hopkins RJ, Whittington CF, Hay BA, Epton MJ, Gamble GD (2011) Individual and cumulative effects of GWAS susceptibility loci in lung cancer: associations after sub-phenotyping for COPD. PLoS One 6(2), e16476
98. Houghton AM (2013) Mechanistic links between COPD and lung cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 13(4):233–245
99. Liang HY, Li XL, Yu XS, Guan P, Yin ZH, He QC, Zhou BS (2009) Facts and fiction of the relationship between preexisting tuberculosis and lung cancer risk: a systematic review. Int J Cancer 125(12):2936–2944
100. Wu CY, Hu HY, Pu CY, Huang N, Shen HC, Li CP, Chou YJ (2011) Pulmonary tuberculosis increases the risk of lung cancer: a population-based cohort study. Cancer 117(3):618–624
101. Srinivasan M, Taioli E, Ragin CC (2009) Human papillomavirus type 16 and 18 in primary lung cancers–a meta-analysis. Carcinogenesis 30(10):1722–1728
102. Hasegawa Y, Ando M, Kubo A, Isa SI, Yamamoto S, Tsujino K, Kurata T, Ou SH, Takada M, Kawaguchi T (2013) Human papilloma virus in non-small cell lung cancer in never smokers: a systematic review of the literature. Lung Cancer 83(1):8–13
103. Hou W, Fu J, Ge Y, Du J, Hua S (2013) Incidence and risk of lung cancer in HIV-infected patients. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 139(11):1781–1794

104. Clifford GM, Polesel J, Rickenbach M, Dal Maso L, Keiser O, Kofler A, Rapiti E, Levi F, Jundt G, Fisch T et al (2005) Cancer risk in the Swiss HIV cohort study: associations with immunodeficiency, smoking, and highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Natl Cancer Inst 97(6):425–432
105. Engels EA, Brock MV, Chen J, Hooker CM, Gillison M, Moore RD (2006) Elevated incidence of lung cancer among HIV-infected individuals. J Clin Oncol 24(9):1383–1388
106. Serraino D, Piselli P, Busnach G, Burra P, Citterio F, Arbustini E, Baccarani U, De Juli E, Pozzetto U, Bellelli S et al (2007) Risk of cancer following immunosuppression in organ transplant recipients and in HIV-positive individuals in southern Europe. Eur J Cancer 43(14):2117–2123
107. Bach PB, Kattan MW, Thornquist MD, Kris MG, Tate RC, Barnett MJ, Hsieh LJ, Begg CB (2003) Variations in lung cancer risk among smokers. J Natl Cancer Inst 95(6):470–478
108. Hoggart C, Brennan P, Tjonneland A, Vogel U, Overvad K, Ostergaard JN, Kaaks R, Canzian F, Boeing H, Steffen A et al (2012) A risk model for lung cancer incidence. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 5(6):834–846
109. Tammemagi CM, Pinsky PF, Caporaso NE, Kvale PA, Hocking WG, Church TR, Riley TL, Commins J, Oken MM, Berg CD et al (2011) Lung cancer risk prediction: prostate, lung, colorectal and ovarian cancer screening trial models and validation. J Natl Cancer Inst 103(13):1058–1068
110. Tammemagi MC, Katki HA, Hocking WG, Church TR, Caporaso N, Kvale PA, Chaturvedi AK, Silvestri GA, Riley TL, Commins J et al (2013) Selection criteria for lung-cancer screening. N Engl J Med 368(8):728–736
111. Cassidy A, Myles JP, van Tongeren M, Page RD, Liloglou T, Duffy SW, Field JK (2008) The LLP risk model: an individual risk prediction model for lung cancer. Br J Cancer 98(2):270–276
112. Spitz MR, Hong WK, Amos CI, Wu X, Schabath MB, Dong Q, Shete S, Etzel CJ (2007) A risk model for prediction of lung cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 99(9):715–726
113. Etzel CJ, Kachroo S, Liu M, D'Amelio A, Dong Q, Cote ML, Wenzlaff AS, Hong WK, Greisinger AJ, Schwartz AG et al (2008) Development and validation of a lung cancer risk prediction model for African-Americans. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 1(4):255–265
114. Spitz MR, Etzel CJ, Dong Q, Amos CI, Wei Q, Wu X, Hong WK (2008) An expanded risk prediction model for lung cancer. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 1(4):250–254
115. Schumacher M, Hollander N, Sauerbrei W (1997) Resampling and cross-validation techniques: a tool to reduce bias caused by model building? Stat Med 16(24):2813–2827
116. Whittemore AS (2010) Evaluating health risk models. Stat Med 29(23):2438–2452
117. Raji OY, Agbaje OF, Duffy SW, Cassidy A, Field JK (2010) Incorporation of a genetic factor into an epidemiologic model for prediction of individual risk of lung cancer: the Liverpool Lung Project. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 3(5):664–669
118. Li H, Yang L, Zhao X, Wang J, Qian J, Chen H, Fan W, Liu H, Jin L, Wang W et al (2012) Prediction of lung cancer risk in a Chinese population using a multifactorial genetic model. BMC Med Genet 13:118
119. Spitz MR, Amos CI, Land S, Wu X, Dong Q, Wenzlaff AS, Schwartz AG (2013) Role of selected genetic variants in lung cancer risk in African Americans. J Thorac Oncol 8(4):391–397
120. Park JH, Gail MH, Greene MH, Chatterjee N (2012) Potential usefulness of single nucleotide polymorphisms to identify persons at high cancer risk: an evaluation of seven common cancers. J Clin Oncol 30(17):2157–2162

Lung Cancer in Never Smokers

Gabriel Alberto Rivera and Heather Wakelee

Abstract Lung cancer is predominantly associated with cigarette smoking; however, a substantial minority of patients with the disease have never smoked. In the US it is estimated there are 17,000–26,000 annual deaths from lung cancer in never smokers, which as a separate entity would be the seventh leading cause of cancer mortality. Controversy surrounds the question of whether or not the incidence of lung cancer in never-smokers is increasing, with more data to support this observation in Asia. There are several factors associated with an increased risk of developing lung cancer in never smokers including second hand smoke, indoor air pollution, occupational exposures, and genetic susceptibility among others. Adenocarcinoma is the most common histology of lung cancer in never smokers and in comparison to lung cancer in smokers appears less complex with a higher likelihood to have targetable driver mutations.

Keywords Non-smoker lung cancer • Lung cancer in nonsmokers

Introduction

Lung cancer is strongly associated with cigarette smoking [1–3]; however, there is a substantial minority of patients who have never smoked. This population is more likely to have distinct molecular markers [4–7], but has less well established risk factors adding to the complexity in understanding this subset. The epidemiology, risk factors, molecular biology, treatment and prognosis of lung cancer will be discussed in never-smokers. Small cell lung cancer in never-smokers is incredibly rare with only case reports and series published; therefore, we will focus on non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) [8–11]. In addition, from this point forward a person who is a never smoker is identified as having smoked less than 100 cigarettes in a lifetime.

G.A. Rivera • H. Wakelee (✉)
Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA
e-mail: hwakelee@stanford.edu

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_3

Epidemiology-Defining the Never Smoker Population

Lung cancer prior to the invention of mechanized cigarette making was a rare disease. What percentage of patients with the disease were never-smokers is unclear; however, inhaled tobacco was available on a limited basis [12, 13]. The capacity to identify never-smokers in numbers meaningful for global and regional analysis to date has been limited as several cancer registries have inconsistently identified smoking status. The studies that exist with data on never-smokers have often had to resort to creative ways of estimating smoking prevalence.

What Is the Incidence and Mortality of Lung Cancer in Never-Smokers?

In 2012, there were an estimated 1.8 million new cases of lung cancer reported by GLOBOCAN [14]. In actuality the incidence varies dramatically by continent or region [15–18]. Given the high fatality rate of lung cancer, mortality closely tracks incidence with 1.59 million deaths projected globally for 2012 [14]. In the US the incidence of new lung cancer cases for 2014 is estimated at 224,210 and deaths estimated at 159,260 [19]. Reports in the US have estimated among never-smokers annual deaths of 17,000–26,000 from lung cancer that as a separate entity would be the seventh leading cause of cancer mortality [7, 20].

Is Incidence or Death Rate of Lung Cancer in Never Smokers Increasing? Is There a Difference by Sex or Ethnicity?

There have been very few studies that have been able to accurately report incidence rates of lung cancer in never-smokers, in particular across regions. Sun et al. and Subramanian et al. report that in the year 2000 never-smokers were 25 % of all cases of lung cancers globally, of which 15 % were men and 53 % were women [6, 7]. These percentages, however, are actually the inverse of percentages taken from the Parkin et al. study of smoking related lung cancer [21]. In contrast, Wakelee et al. performed direct measurement of the incidence of lung cancer in never-smokers by utilizing data from six large cohorts primarily from the United States and Sweden from 1971 to 2002. Age-adjusted incidence rates by sex for people aged 40–79, ranged from 4.8 cases for men in the Swedish cohort to 20.8 per 100,000 person years for women in the California Teachers Study cohort; however, the study was not designed to answer whether the incidence rates were increasing over time [22]. The incidence rates were higher for women than they were for men, but this does not answer whether women who never smoke are at an increased risk to develop lung cancer compared to men [23]. Thun et al. tried to answer this question of whether the incidence rate of lung cancer was increasing by comparing historical

data to more recent analyses. Taking data from 13 large cohorts and 22 cancer registries they examined cohorts with low prevalence of smoking either reported from 1983–1987 or historical cases of US women in the 1935–1940 Connecticut Tumor Registry. It was noted in women of European descent the age-standardized rate for lung cancer in never-smokers was 9.7 per 100,000 women, which was similar to Basque women at 8.6 in the 1980s and 8.7 in US women in the 1930s [18]. Although this study demonstrated no increase in the incidence of lung cancer in never-smoker women over time, it had limited numbers to report incidence rates accurately for Asians, and African Americans, and made no comment on men. A single center study in Asia reported a significantly increased incidence of lung cancer in never-smokers spanning three decades from 1970 to 2000 that went from 15.9 % to 32.8 % over this time period [24]. Caution should be taken; however, as this study reported only proportions, not incidence rates or standardized rates. Unfortunately, to date lung cancer incidence in never-smokers has yet to be studied in an accurate and comprehensive manner given the lack of smoking data in the majority of cancer registries.

Several large studies have examined death rates from lung cancer in never-smokers stratified by sex and ethnicity, specifically examining temporal trends as well as risk. Death rates by sex were examined in the two large American Cancer Society (ACS) studies, Cancer Prevention Study (CPS) I (1959–1972) and II (1982–2000), to give age-specific and age-standardized death rates for 460,000 never-smokers, aged 35–84, all within the US, Puerto Rico, and Guam. They found age-standardized death rates were significantly higher in men at all ages in the first CPS cohort. In the second cohort the higher death rate in men was only seen in those age 60 and above, which may have been related to the decreasing death rate among men, ages 35–69, and the increased death rate in women, ages 70–84 [20]. The study mentioned previously by Thun et al. included CPS I and extended the coverage of CPS II by 4 years and reported higher death rates in men aged 40 and over in those of European and Asian descent. The number of deaths in African American men was small, making it difficult to reliably comment on all age groups. In never-smokers of European descent in the US, the calculated risk to develop lung cancer was estimated at 1.1 % for a man and 0.8 % for a woman before the age of 85 [18].

Limited data exists on comparative analysis between ethnic groups among never-smokers with lung cancer. In the ACS cohort analysis, incidence was only significantly higher for African American women aged 40–69 compared to men and women of European descent [18]. Gomez et al., in a population-based case-control study from Northern California, found that from the years 1998–2003 and 2005–2008, a higher proportion of female never smokers with lung cancer were Asian Pacific Islanders (API) and Latinas compared to non-Hispanic whites. Although this was a small study, hazard ratios were calculated and a cox proportional hazard model demonstrated that mortality rates in U.S. born Latinas and female API were 2.1 and 1.7 times higher, respectively, than non-Hispanic whites [25]. Caution in interpretation must be taken given significant variance between regions. This was illustrated by Liu et al. who found significant variation in the incidence of lung cancer in never-smokers in China, even in neighboring cities. Taking all the cities together the death rate was 0.5 per 1000 never-smokers compared to 1.5 in smokers [17].

Potential Risk Factors in the Development of Lung Cancer in Never Smokers

Second Hand Smoke

The IARC as well as several authors list second hand smoke (SHS) as carcinogenic with an excess of lung cancer from SHS as high as 25 % [26–28] (Table 1). A descriptive study found that amongst those with SHS exposure approximately 22 % were men and 88 % were women [29]. While frequency data does not evaluate association or risk there have been several case-control studies that have calculated

Table 1 Selected risk factors in the development of lung cancer in never smokers

Risk factor	Risk ratio	Comments	References
Second hand smoke	1.34	Prospective nested case control in Europe	[27]
	1.23 (spouse) 1.27 (workplace)	Pooled analysis from two case controls US & Europe	[31]
	2.1	Case control from Toronto	[32]
	1.34	Prospective cohort study in Japan	[34]
Residential radon	0.18 per 100 Bq/m3	This is an estimated odds ratio based on unit of radioactivity exposure from radon measured in Becquerel (Bq)	[43]
Indoor air pollution (biofuel)	2.15	Meta-analysis of 25 case control studies of household coal	[54]
Occupational exposures	3.49 asbestos 2.48 paint dust	Prospective cohort study in the Netherlands	[58]
Lung disease	2.93	Asthma	[57]
Genetic susceptibility	1.95	Family history of lung cancer in first degree relative	[65]
	1.62-Heterozygote 2.35-Homozygote	5p15.33 Asian females	[73]
	5p15.33: White-1.15 Asian-1.23	Pooled analysis of 21 case control studies of Whites and Asians. 15q25.1 & 6p21.33 were not significantly associated with risk of lung cancer in never smokers.	[77]
	0.68	18p11.22 447 Korean never smokers	[79]
	1.46	13q31.3 multicenter study in US	[78]
	1.32 0.85 1.16 1.19 0.86	10q25.2 6q22.2 6p21.32 3q28 17q24.3 Study population were Asian women	[80]
	0.45	MSH2	[89]

MSH2 mutS homolog 2

odds ratios and utilized unconditional regression analysis to help answer this question. Unfortunately, not every study lists this information in the analysis; therefore, caution should be taken for over estimation of odds ratios [30]. In these case-control studies SHS for the most part has been subdivided into home, workplace, or social with differences noted in odds ratios from one setting to the other, but all with odds ratios greater than 1 and higher risk noted with combined exposures noted in regression analysis [31–34]. As SHS is often assessed by interview from smoking partner, non-smoking partner, or next-of-kin the validity of these measures as well as non-smoker status have been brought into question; however, misclassification is likely low [35, 36]. Other studies have been able to demonstrate dose response by SHS intensity and duration [31, 34]. One author also noted an increased risk if exposed to SHS prior to the age of 25 [37].

Indoor Pollution

Indoor air pollution includes: radon from soil and water, products of combustion such as coal, chemicals from household products, and biological agents such as mold among many other sources [38]. This is a fairly large category of which the focus in this section will be on those that are known to cause an increased risk of lung cancer.

Radon is a decay product from radium that is found in rock and soil. Radon can further decay into polonium that enters the air and water and emits alpha particles, which can cause DNA damage [39]. While it has already been established that in miners radon exposure can lead to lung cancer [40], less well defined is whether low-indoor radon levels are associated with increased risk as well. The following presentation of studies will examine different methods of measuring association and risk with varying results to answer this important question.

Krewski et al. in a combined analysis of seven large case-control studies in North America, including 4081 cases and 5281 controls, demonstrated with estimated odds ratios (EOR) that residential exposure to radon in general was associated with the lung cancer risk. It should be noted that although the odds ratios were numerically positive and statistically significant in two out of the seven studies, in the pooled analysis there was no statistically significant difference [40]. Arguably, relative risk is a better measure to assess causation than excess risk of disease as had been used in the study above [41]; however, both assess association and to assess causality is more complex requiring the achievement of specific criteria [3]. Sandler et al. was not able to find statistically significant excess relative risk of lung cancer related to radon exposure at any level [42]. This study, however, had significantly lower radon levels on average that did not even meet the actionable level suggested by the EPA. This study was also underpowered to assess whether there was any synergistic effect in smokers. In contrast, two separate studies from Darby et al. and Leuruad et al. found the relative risk of lung cancer in never smokers increased with radon exposure [43, 44]. One study identified a potentially high-risk group as those

who were homozygous for glutathione-S-transferase M1, an enzyme responsible in neutralizing reactive oxygen species [45].

Several studies have established a large variation in the incidence of lung cancer in Asian countries that has been postulated to be possibly due to unreported tobacco use, but also likely due to indoor air pollution [17, 18]. Indoor air pollution has been examined as a global health issue associated with an increased risk of lung cancer along with other respiratory illnesses [46]. The risk for lung cancer varies, but has been found largely in developing countries [6, 7]. Coal and wood smoke are now recognized by the IARC as a human carcinogen [47]. The use of indoor combustion products is highest in Africa and South East Asia at greater than 60 % compared to the Americas and Europe at less than 20 % [48]. Kleinerman et al. interviewed men and women from two prefectural areas in Northwest China in a case-control study on the use of coal and biomass fuel in heating and cooking in controls and lung cancer patients. They adjusted for smoking status and frequency matched for age and sex, and find a modest increased risk for those with the highest exposures [49]. In a retrospective analysis from the Yunnan Province of China, the authors found a significantly increased absolute and relative risk of dying from lung cancer in those who utilized smoky coal versus smokeless coal [50]. Coal use was also evaluated in a large case-control study in participants from Eastern/Central Europe and the United Kingdom where there was an increased risk observed when solid biofuels (coal or wood) were used for cooking [38]. This was confirmed in a large meta-analysis performed of 25 case control studies that covered cases from Africa, North America, Europe, India, Mainland China and Taiwan. Although there were differences in the risk of lung cancer by regions, the overall trend was an increase in lung cancer risk in particular in parts of China and Taiwan [51]. A transition to ventilated stoves was associated with a decreased in lung cancer incidence in at least one analysis from China [52].

Occupational Exposures

Several authors have examined occupational exposures such as pesticides, grain elevator dust, wood dust, smoke soot or exhaust as risk factors for lung cancer in never-smokers [32, 53, 54]. A large prospective cohort study of men from The Netherlands assessed cumulative probability of exposure to four specific known carcinogens at the work place reported by the IARC: asbestos, paint dust, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon (PAH), and welding fumes [54]. After adjusted for age and smoking status in the final analysis they found a significantly increased risk if exposed to asbestos or paint dust, with asbestos having the highest risk. They also found that the tested population was fairly representative of the Dutch population and that 11.6 % and 1.7 % of the lung cancers were attributable to asbestos and paint dust, respectively [54]. None-the-less, occupational exposure does not explain fully lung cancer in never-smoker as it has been shown that individuals without any occupational or environmental exposure can develop lung cancer [12, 29].

Lung Disease

Epidemiologists have studied whether specific lung conditions or infections are associated with an increased risk of lung cancer, but with conflicting data likely due to the confounding factor of smoking status. One study found no increased risk for lung cancer in never-smokers who had emphysema, chronic bronchitis, asthma, pneumonia, or tuberculosis [32]. Another study found asthma in never-smokers was associated with increased risk of lung cancer with an odds ratio of 2.93 compared to those without asthma [53]. An increased risk has also been seen in those with a history of tuberculosis infection with an odds ratio as high as 3.5 in never-smokers, particularly for disease on the same side of the previous infection [55, 56]. The association in individuals with pulmonary fibrosis is also unclear [57–60].

Radiation Exposure

In patients exposed to ionizing radiation either as treatment for breast cancer or Hodgkin's disease there is an increase risk in the development of lung cancer [61–63]. A recent study reports that molecular rearrangement of the *RET* gene may explain a small percentage of radiation induced adenocarcinomas of the lung in never-smokers [64].

Genetic Factors

Environmental exposures as described above appear to increase the risk of lung cancer in never-smokers and genetic factors play as role as well. Nitadori et al. performed a large prospective cohort study of a Japanese population to examine whether family history in a first degree relative increased the risk of lung cancer. A family history of lung cancer was associated with a significant increase in risk of lung cancer in both ever and never smoker groups, although the risk was higher in women and in never-smokers [65]. It should be noted this study controlled for SHS, but did not compare hazard ratios between ever-smokers versus never-smokers to examine whether there was a significant difference between groups. Several other studies have also reported similar results in cohort or case-control analyses [32, 33, 53, 66, 67].

On the molecular level, Bell et al. noted a family of European descent with a germline *epidermal growth factor receptor* (*EGFR*) mutation. The proband as well as his brothers, had a T790M *EGFR* germline mutation, but the two brothers did not have lung cancer. The proband at surgery was noted to have five separate tumors that were analyzed for somatic mutations in the *EGFR* domain with the missense L858R mutation and in-frame deletion delL747-T751 noted [68]. Ohtsuka et al.

identified a separate germ-line mutation in *EGFR*, V843I, which was found in multiple generations as an identical mutation. As in the previous study, in addition to the germline mutation, somatic mutations were identified including L858R. Interestingly, the V8438I mutation confers resistance to tyrosine kinase inhibitors as has been described for the T790M mutation; however, the exact mechanism for this resistance or increased susceptibility to lung cancer from either mutation has yet to be elucidated [69]. Recently, a unique *HER2* germline mutation, G660D, was identified in a Japanese family with lung cancer in multiple generations [70].

While these last two studies have examined the potential heritability of lung cancer risk at a specific gene level, other studies have used more traditional linkage analysis strategies to identify loci of interest that might confer risk to the disease [71]. One study utilized comparative genomic hybridization analysis to determine that in never-smokers of Chinese descent with lung cancer, gain of 16p was frequent, though loss of 16p was identified in an earlier study that was not restricted to patients of Chinese ancestry [71, 72]. Several scientists have performed genome wide association studies (GWAS) in never-smokers utilizing single nucleotide polymorphism array data and have identified 5p15.33 locus (*TERT-CLPTM1L*) as one that confers an increased risk of lung cancer [73–75]. There have been several other loci identified; however, they have not been consistently replicated, perhaps due to ethnic or environmental exposure differences [76, 77]. This was seen in two separate studies where 13q31.3 (*GPC5*) was identified in an American population [78] and 18p11.22 (*FAM38B*) in a Korean population [79]. A large GWAS among Asian females found several novel chromosomal aberrations at 10q25.2 (*VTI1A*), 6q22.2 (*ROS1 & DCBLD1*), and 6p21.32 (*HLA-DRA*) when compared to controls [80]. They also confirmed two other mutations, 3q28 (*TP63*) and 17q24.3 (*BPTF*), reported in three separate studies [81–83]. Other scientists have focused on specific genes that have largely been associated with the metabolism of tobacco related carcinogens in the cytochrome P450 system. The data has been inconsistent with some [84, 85] reporting an increased risk in those with CYP1A mutations while others have refuted this finding [86]. Other studies have looked at DNA repair with some data to support an increased risk in those with the lowest DNA repair capacity [87], while others have implicated polymorphisms in the ataxia telangiectasia mutated gene [88] or mismatch repair gene MSH2, in particular if associated with SHS exposure [89, 90]. Govindan et al. performed whole genome sequencing as well as whole transcriptome sequencing, on multiple lung cancer surgical specimens, including in some tumors from never smoking patients. This study was able to demonstrate significant difference in mutation rate between smokers and never smokers indicating a different oncogenic process [91].

Pathology

The topic of histological subtype has been well studied with the majority of data reporting adenocarcinoma as the most common histological type in never smokers [6, 7, 22, 92, 93]. In a review paper on lung cancer in never-smokers

Samet et al. presents relevant theories of why a trend for an increase in adenocarcinoma has been observed, even in smokers, and especially in women, including change in puff volume that may distribute carcinogens differently within lung tissue as well as increased nitrate levels due to greater combustion of tobacco material within the cigarette, which he asserts also impacts never-smokers through side stream smoke [12]. One study looked at subtypes of adenocarcinoma as they correlate with common mutational status among never-smokers [94].

Driver Mutations

Considerable research has led to identification of "driver mutations" in adenocarcinoma of the lung and two, *EGFR* and *ALK*, already have FDA approved therapeutics. Others such as *ROS1*, *BRAF* and *HER2* are targetable with drugs on the market for other indications and more, including *KRAS* and *RET*, with agents that are in ongoing investigations. Specifics on molecular profiling and receptor cell signaling will be discussed in detail in chapters later in this book.

Estimates of actionable mutational frequency in never-smokers vary by ethnicity or region (Fig. 1) with reports as high as 90 % in a single-center institution of Chinese women with lung cancer that included analysis for *EGFR*, *ALK*, *HER2*, and *KRAS* [94] to 29.4 % EGFR mutant in a recent evaluation of 907 patients with lung cancer from India [95]. In general, mutations within *EGFR* are identified in approx-

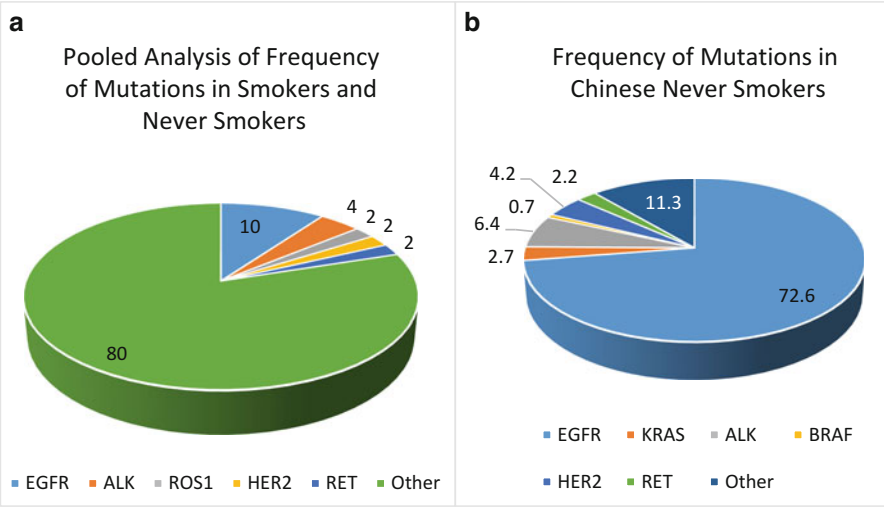


Fig. 1 Mutations are more common in never smokers with adenocarcinoma. In figure (**a**), percentages are displayed of the frequency of mutations in adenocarcinoma that includes smokers with never smokers. Figure (**b**), although inherent biases exist in single center studies, this single center study in China illustrates the proportion of identifiable mutations in a population of 408 never smokers with adenocarcinoma

imately 10 % of lung adenocarcinomas, but at a much higher frequency in never-smokers [96]. Another example is that HER2 exon 20 insertion mutations constitute approximately 2 % of NSCLC adenocarcinoma mutations but are more common in women, with adenocarcinoma who were never-smokers [97, 98].

Other significant mutations found in lung cancer, with a higher frequency in those who develop lung cancer as never-smokers, are ALK and ROS1 [99–101]. ALK mutations represent approximately 4 % of lung adenocarcinomas while ROS1 is around 2 %. Patients with this mutation also appear to be younger, never smokers, and have adenocarcinoma [97]. RET alterations are found in roughly 2 % of adenocarcinomas of the lung with individuals typically younger and never-smokers [64, 102, 103].

Prognosis

Survival data for lung cancer patients who are never-smokers as compared to smokers is conflicting. Subramananian et al. in a single-center case-control study did not find a survival difference between smokers and never smokers [104]. Nordquist et al. in a single center study however, reported 16 % vs 23 % 5-year survival rates in smokers compared to never-smokers. Smoking was a negative predictive value on regression analysis in another study [105]. A very large retrospective study by Kawaguchi et al. utilizing 15,185 Japanese individuals from one national registry and 13,332 Caucasians from a cancer registry in Southern California found a statistically significant survival advantage for Japanese never-smokers and a trend for Caucasian never-smokers compared to smokers with lung cancer [106].

Summary

Lung cancer in never smokers as a separate entity is the seventh leading cause of cancer related mortality. There appears to be racial variation in the incidence and mortality that require further research. Established risk factors include second hand smoke, several environmental toxins and potential genetic predispositions, but much work still needs to be done in this area. Whatever the inciting event, it appears adenocarcinoma is the most common histological type and can be associated with a variety of somatic mutations with important therapeutic implications.

References

1. Jemal A et al (2008) Annual report to the nation on the status of cancer, 1975–2005, featuring trends in lung cancer, tobacco use, and tobacco control. J Natl Cancer Inst 100(23):1672–1694
2. Siegel R, Naishadham D, Jemal A (2013) Cancer statistics, 2013. CA Cancer J Clin 63(1):11–30

3. Weiss W (1997) Cigarette smoking and lung cancer trends. A light at the end of the tunnel? Chest 111(5):1414–1416
4. Bryant A, Cerfolio RJ (2007) Differences in epidemiology, histology, and survival between cigarette smokers and never-smokers who develop non-small cell lung cancer. Chest 132(1):185–192
5. Dutu T et al (2005) Differential expression of biomarkers in lung adenocarcinoma: a comparative study between smokers and never-smokers. Ann Oncol 16(12):1906–1914
6. Subramanian J, Govindan R (2007) Lung cancer in never smokers: a review. J Clin Oncol 25(5):561–570
7. Sun S, Schiller JH, Gazdar AF (2007) Lung cancer in never smokers–a different disease. Nat Rev Cancer 7(10):778–790
8. Okamoto I et al (2006) EGFR mutation in gefitinib-responsive small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 17(6):1028–1029
9. Shiao TH et al (2011) Epidermal growth factor receptor mutations in small cell lung cancer: a brief report. J Thorac Oncol 6(1):195–198
10. Antony GK et al (2010) Small cell lung cancer in never smokers: report of two cases. J Thorac Oncol 5(5):747–748
11. Kurahara Y et al (2012) Small-cell lung cancer in never-smokers: a case series with information on family history of cancer and environmental tobacco smoke. Clin Lung Cancer 13(1):75–79
12. Samet JM et al (2009) Lung cancer in never smokers: clinical epidemiology and environmental risk factors. Clin Cancer Res 15(18):5626–5645
13. Witschi H (2001) A short history of lung cancer. Toxicol Sci 64(1):4–6
14. Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Ervik M, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, Parkin DM, Forman D, Bray F (2013) GLOBOCAN 2012 v1.0, cancer incidence and mortality worldwide: IARC CancerBase no. 11 [internet]. Available from: http://globocan.iarc.fr. Cited 28 Dec 2013
15. (1987) Rates and rate standardization. In: Breslow NE, Day NE (eds) The design and analysis of cohort studies. Oxford University Press, Oxford, p 415
16. Ezzati M et al (2005) Role of smoking in global and regional cancer epidemiology: current patterns and data needs. Int J Cancer 116(6):963–971
17. Liu BQ et al (1998) Emerging tobacco hazards in China: 1. Retrospective proportional mortality study of one million deaths. BMJ 317(7170):1411–1422
18. Thun MJ et al (2008) Lung cancer occurrence in never-smokers: an analysis of 13 cohorts and 22 cancer registry studies. PLoS Med 5(9):e185
19. Siegel R et al (2014) Cancer statistics, 2014. CA Cancer J Clin 64(1):9–29
20. Thun MJ et al (2006) Lung cancer death rates in lifelong nonsmokers. J Natl Cancer Inst 98(10):691–699
21. Parkin DM et al (2005) Global cancer statistics, 2002. CA Cancer J Clin 55(2):74–108
22. Wakelee HA et al (2007) Lung cancer incidence in never smokers. J Clin Oncol 25(5):472–478
23. Gazdar AF, Thun MJ (2007) Lung cancer, smoke exposure, and sex. J Clin Oncol 25(5): 469–471
24. Yano T et al (2008) Never-smoking nonsmall cell lung cancer as a separate entity: clinicopathologic features and survival. Cancer 113(5):1012–1018
25. Gomez SL et al (2011) Survival following non-small cell lung cancer among Asian/Pacific Islander, Latina, and Non-Hispanic white women who have never smoked. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 20(3):545–554
26. IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans (2004) Tobacco smoke and involuntary smoking. IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum 83:1–1438
27. Vineis P et al (2005) Environmental tobacco smoke and risk of respiratory cancer and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in former smokers and never smokers in the EPIC prospective study. BMJ 330(7486):277
28. Vineis P et al (2004) Tobacco and cancer: recent epidemiological evidence. J Natl Cancer Inst 96(2):99–106

29. Clement-Duchene C et al (2010) Characteristics of never smoker lung cancer including environmental and occupational risk factors. Lung Cancer 67(2):144–150
30. Bagley SC, White H, Golomb BA (2001) Logistic regression in the medical literature: standards for use and reporting, with particular attention to one medical domain. J Clin Epidemiol 54(10):979–985
31. Brennan P et al (2004) Secondhand smoke exposure in adulthood and risk of lung cancer among never smokers: a pooled analysis of two large studies. Int J Cancer 109(1):125–131
32. Brenner DR et al (2010) Lung cancer risk in never-smokers: a population-based case-control study of epidemiologic risk factors. BMC Cancer 10:285
33. Gorlova OY et al (2007) Aggregation of cancer among relatives of never-smoking lung cancer patients. Int J Cancer 121(1):111–118
34. Kurahashi N et al (2008) Passive smoking and lung cancer in Japanese non-smoking women: a prospective study. Int J Cancer 122(3):653–657
35. Nyberg F et al (1998) A European validation study of smoking and environmental tobacco smoke exposure in nonsmoking lung cancer cases and controls. Cancer Causes Control 9(2):173–182
36. Wells AJ et al (1998) Misclassification rates for current smokers misclassified as nonsmokers. Am J Public Health 88(10):1503–1509
37. Asomaning K et al (2008) Second hand smoke, age of exposure and lung cancer risk. Lung Cancer 61(1):13–20
38. Lissowska J et al (2005) Lung cancer and indoor pollution from heating and cooking with solid fuels: the IARC international multicentre case-control study in Eastern/Central Europe and the United Kingdom. Am J Epidemiol 162(4):326–333
39. Samet JM (1989) Radon and lung cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 81(10):745–757
40. Krewski D et al (2006) A combined analysis of North American case-control studies of residential radon and lung cancer. J Toxicol Environ Health A 69(7):533–597
41. (1980) Fundamental measures of disease occurrence and association. In: Breslow NE, Day NE (eds) The analysis of case-control studies. International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon
42. Sandler DP et al (2006) Indoor radon and lung cancer risk in Connecticut and Utah. J Toxicol Environ Health A 69(7):633–654
43. Darby S et al (2005) Radon in homes and risk of lung cancer: collaborative analysis of individual data from 13 European case-control studies. BMJ 330(7485):223
44. Leuraud K et al (2011) Radon, smoking and lung cancer risk: results of a joint analysis of three European case-control studies among uranium miners. Radiat Res 176(3):375–387
45. Bonner MR et al (2006) Radon, secondhand smoke, glutathione-S-transferase M1 and lung cancer among women. Int J Cancer 119(6):1462–1467
46. Zhang J, Smith KR (2003) Indoor air pollution: a global health concern. Br Med Bull 68:209–225
47. Hosgood HD 3rd et al (2010) In-home coal and wood use and lung cancer risk: a pooled analysis of the International Lung Cancer Consortium. Environ Health Perspect 118(12):1743–1747
48. Bonjour S et al (2013) Solid fuel use for household cooking: country and regional estimates for 1980–2010. Environ Health Perspect 121(7):784–790
49. Kleinerman RA et al (2002) Lung cancer and indoor exposure to coal and biomass in rural China. J Occup Environ Med 44(4):338–344
50. Barone-Adesi F et al (2012) Risk of lung cancer associated with domestic use of coal in Xuanwei, China: retrospective cohort study. BMJ 345:e5414
51. Hosgood HD 3rd et al (2011) Household coal use and lung cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis of case-control studies, with an emphasis on geographic variation. Int J Epidemiol 40(3):719–728
52. Lan Q et al (2002) Household stove improvement and risk of lung cancer in Xuanwei, China. J Natl Cancer Inst 94(11):826–835
53. Gorlova OY et al (2006) Never smokers and lung cancer risk: a case-control study of epidemiological factors. Int J Cancer 118(7):1798–1804

54. van Loon AJ et al (1997) Occupational exposure to carcinogens and risk of lung cancer: results from The Netherlands cohort study. Occup Environ Med 54(11):817–824
55. Zheng W et al (1987) Lung cancer and prior tuberculosis infection in Shanghai. Br J Cancer 56(4):501–504
56. Hinds MW, Cohen HI, Kolonel LN (1982) Tuberculosis and lung cancer risk in nonsmoking women. Am Rev Respir Dis 125(6):776–778
57. Daniels CE, Jett JR (2005) Does interstitial lung disease predispose to lung cancer? Curr Opin Pulm Med 11(5):431–437
58. Hubbard R et al (2000) Lung cancer and cryptogenic fibrosing alveolitis. A population-based cohort study. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 161(1):5–8
59. Le Jeune I et al (2007) The incidence of cancer in patients with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis and sarcoidosis in the UK. Respir Med 101(12):2534–2540
60. Wells C, Mannino DM (1996) Pulmonary fibrosis and lung cancer in the United States: analysis of the multiple cause of death mortality data, 1979 through 1991. South Med J 89(5):505–510
61. Prochazka M et al (2005) Ionizing radiation and tobacco use increases the risk of a subsequent lung carcinoma in women with breast cancer: case-only design. J Clin Oncol 23(30):7467–7474
62. Travis LB et al (2002) Lung cancer following chemotherapy and radiotherapy for Hodgkin's disease. J Natl Cancer Inst 94(3):182–192
63. van Leeuwen FE et al (1995) Roles of radiotherapy and smoking in lung cancer following Hodgkin's disease. J Natl Cancer Inst 87(20):1530–1537
64. Dacic S et al (2014) RET rearrangements in lung adenocarcinoma and radiation. J Thorac Oncol 9(1):118–120
65. Nitadori J et al (2006) Association between lung cancer incidence and family history of lung cancer: data from a large-scale population-based cohort study, the JPHC study. Chest 130(4):968–975
66. Gao Y et al (2009) Family history of cancer and nonmalignant lung diseases as risk factors for lung cancer. Int J Cancer 125(1):146–152
67. Wu PF et al (2004) Cancer aggregation and complex segregation analysis of families with female non-smoking lung cancer probands in Taiwan. Eur J Cancer 40(2):260–266
68. Bell DW et al (2005) Inherited susceptibility to lung cancer may be associated with the T790M drug resistance mutation in EGFR. Nat Genet 37(12):1315–1316
69. Ohtsuka K et al (2011) Familial lung adenocarcinoma caused by the EGFR V843I germ-line mutation. J Clin Oncol 29(8):e191–e192
70. Yamamoto H et al (2014) Novel germline mutation in the transmembrane domain of HER2 in familial lung adenocarcinomas. J Natl Cancer Inst 106(1):djt338
71. Sanchez-Cespedes M et al (2001) Chromosomal alterations in lung adenocarcinoma from smokers and nonsmokers. Cancer Res 61(4):1309–1313
72. Wong MP et al (2003) Chromosomal aberrations of primary lung adenocarcinomas in nonsmokers. Cancer 97(5):1263–1270
73. Hsiung CA, et al (2010) The 5p15.33 locus is associated with risk of lung adenocarcinoma in never-smoking females in Asia. PLoS Genet 6(8)
74. Wang Y et al (2010) Role of 5p15.33 (TERT-CLPTM1L), 6p21.33 and 15q25.1 (CHRNA5-CHRNA3) variation and lung cancer risk in never-smokers. Carcinogenesis 31(2):234–238
75. Wang Y et al (2008) Common 5p15.33 and 6p21.33 variants influence lung cancer risk. Nat Genet 40(12):1407–1409
76. Amos CI et al (2010) A susceptibility locus on chromosome 6q greatly increases lung cancer risk among light and never smokers. Cancer Res 70(6):2359–2367
77. Truong T et al (2010) Replication of lung cancer susceptibility loci at chromosomes 15q25, 5p15, and 6p21: a pooled analysis from the International Lung Cancer Consortium. J Natl Cancer Inst 102(13):959–971
78. Li Y et al (2010) Genetic variants and risk of lung cancer in never smokers: a genome-wide association study. Lancet Oncol 11(4):321–330

79. Ahn MJ et al (2012) The 18p11.22 locus is associated with never smoker non-small cell lung cancer susceptibility in Korean populations. Hum Genet 131(3):365–372
80. Lan Q et al (2012) Genome-wide association analysis identifies new lung cancer susceptibility loci in never-smoking women in Asia. Nat Genet 44(12):1330–1335
81. Hosgood HD 3rd et al (2012) Genetic variant in TP63 on locus 3q28 is associated with risk of lung adenocarcinoma among never-smoking females in Asia. Hum Genet 131(7):1197–1203
82. Miki D et al (2010) Variation in TP63 is associated with lung adenocarcinoma susceptibility in Japanese and Korean populations. Nat Genet 42(10):893–896
83. Shiraishi K et al (2012) A genome-wide association study identifies two new susceptibility loci for lung adenocarcinoma in the Japanese population. Nat Genet 44(8):900–903
84. Raimondi S et al (2005) Metabolic gene polymorphisms and lung cancer risk in non-smokers. An update of the GSEC study. Mutat Res 592(1–2):45–57
85. Taioli E et al (2003) Polymorphisms in CYP1A1, GSTM1, GSTT1 and lung cancer below the age of 45 years. Int J Epidemiol 32(1):60–63
86. Wenzlaff AS et al (2005) CYP1A1 and CYP1B1 polymorphisms and risk of lung cancer among never smokers: a population-based study. Carcinogenesis 26(12):2207–2212
87. Gorlova OY et al (2008) DNA repair capacity and lung cancer risk in never smokers. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 17(6):1322–1328
88. Lo YL et al (2010) ATM polymorphisms and risk of lung cancer among never smokers. Lung Cancer 69(2):148–154
89. Jung CY et al (2006) Polymorphisms in the hMSH2 gene and the risk of primary lung cancer. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 15(4):762–768
90. Lo YL et al (2011) Polymorphisms of MLH1 and MSH2 genes and the risk of lung cancer among never smokers. Lung Cancer 72(3):280–286
91. Govindan R et al (2012) Genomic landscape of non-small cell lung cancer in smokers and never-smokers. Cell 150(6):1121–1134
92. Kawaguchi T et al (2010) Gender, histology, and time of diagnosis are important factors for prognosis: analysis of 1499 never-smokers with advanced non-small cell lung cancer in Japan. J Thorac Oncol 5(7):1011–1017
93. Toh CK et al (2006) Never-smokers with lung cancer: epidemiologic evidence of a distinct disease entity. J Clin Oncol 24(15):2245–2251
94. Zhang Y et al (2012) Frequency of driver mutations in lung adenocarcinoma from female never-smokers varies with histologic subtypes and age at diagnosis. Clin Cancer Res 18(7):1947–1953
95. Chougule A et al et al (2013) Frequency of EGFR mutations in 907 lung adenocarcioma patients of Indian ethnicity. PLoS One 8(10)
96. Subramanian J, Govindan R (2008) Molecular genetics of lung cancer in people who have never smoked. Lancet Oncol 9(7):676–682
97. Dacic S (2013) Molecular genetic testing for lung adenocarcinomas: a practical approach to clinically relevant mutations and translocations. J Clin Pathol 66(10):870–874
98. Mazieres J et al (2013) Lung cancer that harbors an HER2 mutation: epidemiologic characteristics and therapeutic perspectives. J Clin Oncol 31(16):1997–2003
99. Kwak EL et al (2010) Anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibition in non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 363(18):1693–1703
100. Bergethon K et al (2012) ROS1 rearrangements define a unique molecular class of lung cancers. J Clin Oncol 30(8):863–870
101. Shaw AT et al (2011) Effect of crizotinib on overall survival in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer harbouring ALK gene rearrangement: a retrospective analysis. Lancet Oncol 12(11):1004–1012
102. Suehara Y et al (2012) Identification of KIF5B-RET and GOPC-ROS1 fusions in lung adenocarcinomas through a comprehensive mRNA-based screen for tyrosine kinase fusions. Clin Cancer Res 18(24):6599–6608
103. Wang R et al (2012) RET fusions define a unique molecular and clinicopathologic subtype of non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 30(35):4352–4359

104. Subramanian J et al (2007) Presentation and stage-specific outcomes of lifelong never-smokers with non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). J Thorac Oncol 2(9):827–830
105. Nordquist LT et al (2004) Improved survival in never-smokers vs current smokers with primary adenocarcinoma of the lung. Chest 126(2):347–351
106. Kawaguchi T et al (2010) Japanese ethnicity compared with Caucasian ethnicity and never-smoking status are independent favorable prognostic factors for overall survival in non-small cell lung cancer: a collaborative epidemiologic study of the National Hospital Organization Study Group for Lung Cancer (NHSGLC) in Japan and a Southern California Regional Cancer Registry databases. J Thorac Oncol 5(7):1001–1010

Immune Therapy

Lysanne Lievense, Joachim Aerts, and Joost Hegmans

Abstract Lung cancer has long been considered an unsuitable target for immunotherapy due to its proposed immunoresistant properties. However, recent evidence has shown that anti-tumor immune responses can occur in lung cancer patients, paving the way for lung cancer as a novel target for immunotherapy. In order to take full advantage of the potential of immunotherapy, research is focusing on the presence and function of various immunological cell types in the tumor microenvironment. Immune cells which facilitate or inhibit antitumor responses have been identified and their prognostic value in lung cancer has been established. Knowledge regarding these pro- and anti-tumor immune cells and their mechanisms of action has facilitated the identification of numerous potential immunotherapeutic strategies and opportunities for intervention. A plethora of immunotherapeutic approaches is currently being developed and studied in lung cancer patients and phase 3 clinical trials are ongoing. Many different immunotherapies have shown promising clinical effects in patients with limited and advanced stage lung cancer, however, future years will have to tell whether immunotherapy will earn its place in the standard treatment of lung cancer.

Keywords Cancer immunotherapy • Tumor microenvironment • Immunosuppressive cells • Regulatory T cells • Myeloid-derived suppressor cells • Tumor-associated macrophages • Tumor antigens • Tumor vaccines • Cellular immunotherapy • Personalized medicine

Introduction

Cancer immunotherapy consists of approaches that enhance the host immune system to generate effective immune responses against cancer. The editors of Science have chosen this strategy to combat tumors as the Breakthrough of the Year for 2013 [1]. Although it is still in its infancy, over the last decade we have witnessed that

L. Lievense • J. Aerts • J. Hegmans (✉)
Department of Pulmonary Medicine, Erasmus MC Cancer Institute,
Dr. Molewaterplein 50, Rotterdam 3015 GD, The Netherlands
e-mail: j.hegmans@erasmusmc.nl

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_4

immunotherapeutic approaches are becoming more appealing components of the anticancer armamentarium. In 2010, sipuleucel-T became the first therapeutic vaccine to be approved by the US FDA for the treatment of metastatic, hormone-refractory prostate cancer [2]. This was followed in 2011 by ipilimumab, a fully human monoclonal antibody which blocks cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen-4 (CTLA-4), the first agent approved in the EU for the treatment of unresectable or metastatic melanoma [3]. Examples of immune modulation in lung cancer are the MAGE-A3, L-BLP25 and TG4010 vaccines and belagenpumatucel-L; these are discussed in detail below. With the increasing understanding of the fundamentals of cellular and molecular tumor immunology, many ways are now investigated how the immune system can be further augmented to treat lung cancer. However, to understand the principles of these novel immunotherapeutic approaches, it is important to comprehend the different immune cell components and their function in the tumorigenic process. Most of these cells will be discussed in the next section, where it will become clear that the immune system plays a dual role in carcinogenesis. The complex interactions between diverse immune cell types and tumor cells can actively favor tumor rejection as well as tumor progression, depending on the tumor cell characteristics, type, stage, secreted factors and the types of immune cells that are involved. It emphasizes the importance of the full understanding of the intricacy of the cellular interactions within the tumor microenvironment as well as the effects of tumor-derived factors on distant involved immunological tissues and organs. Understanding the local and systemic immune mechanisms will lead to new potential therapeutic targets. There is a rapid progress in this field of cancer immunology and the development of novel immunotherapeutic approaches. Therefore, immunotherapy is by many considered as the fourth modality in conventional cancer treatments alongside surgery, chemotherapy and radiation. It is believed that the role of immunotherapy for lung cancer treatment is in combination regiments with surgery (debulking of the tumor), chemotherapy (inducing immunogenic cell death), and merged immunotherapeutic approaches that further modulate the tumor-host equilibrium towards tumor regression [4, 5].

Immune Cell Involvement in Lung Cancer Carcinogenisis

There is currently overwhelming evidence that several immunological cell types of the host influence lung cancer incidence, cancer growth, response to therapy and thereby the prognosis of the disease. Immunohistochemical analysis of lung cancer biopsies have demonstrated that the tumor microenvironment is a heterogeneous and complex system of tumor cells and stromal cells, including endothelial cells and their precursors, pericytes, smooth-muscle cells, and fibroblasts of various phenotypes, located within the connective tissue or extra-cellular matrix (e.g. collagen). Leukocyte infiltration is an important characteristic of cancer and the main components of these infiltrates include natural killer (T) cells, mast cells, neutrophils, B- and T lymphocyte subsets, myeloid derived suppressor cells, macrophages and dendritic cells (Fig. 1). Based on their functions, these cells can be divided into cells

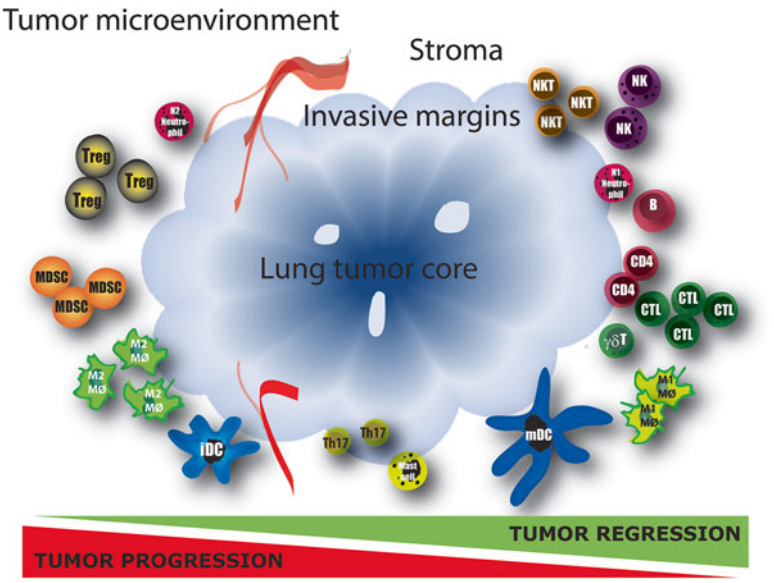


Fig. 1 The tumor microenvironment is a heterogeneous and complex system of tumor cells and 'normal' stromal cells, including endothelial cells and their precursors, pericytes, smooth-muscle cells, and fibroblasts of various phenotypes, located within the connective tissue or extra-cellular matrix (e.g. collagen). Leukocyte infiltration is an important characteristic of lung cancer and the main components of these infiltrates include natural killer (T) cells (NK/NKT), N1/N2 neutrophils, B- and T-lymphocyte (cytotoxic T cells [CTL]; T helper 17 [Th17]; CD4; regulatory T cells [Treg]; gamma delta T cells) subsets, myeloid derived suppressor cells (MDSC), M1/M2 macrophages (MØ), mast cells, and immature dendritic cells (iDC)/mature dendritic cells (mDC). Based on their functions, these cells can be divided into cells with a potentially positive impact on the antitumor response (right) and cells with a detrimental effect (left). The net effect of the interactions between these various cell types and their secreted products within the environment of an established tumor participates in determining anti-tumor immunity, angiogenesis, metastasis, overall cancer cell survival and proliferation

with a potentially positive impact on the antitumor response and cells with a detrimental effect. The net effect of the interactions between these various cell types and their secreted products within the environment of an established tumor participates in determining anti-tumor immunity, angiogenesis, metastasis, overall cancer cell survival and proliferation. Next we will provide a short update on the function of these immune cells for lung cancer that is adapted from Heuvers et al. [6].

Natural Killer (T) Cells

Natural killer (NK) cells (expressing the surface markers CD16 and CD56, but not CD3) are lymphocytes that play an important role in the rejection of tumors without previous sensitization and without restriction by the major histocompatibility

complex (MHC) [7, 8]. NK cells eradicate tumors through multiple killing pathways, including direct tumor cell killing. They also secrete cytokines and chemokines like interleukin (IL) IL-10, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, and the principal NK-derived cytokine interferon (IFN)-γ, which can coordinate the innate and adaptive immune responses to tumor cells and may lead to apoptosis of the attacked cells. A large cohort study showed that an increase in NK cells in tumor tissue is a strong independent prognostic factor for the survival of lung cancer patients [9]. Natural killer T (NKT) cells (CD16+, CD56+, CD3+) are a subset of NK cells that are found in the peripheral blood, tumor tissue and pleural effusions of lung cancer patients in decreased numbers and with reduced functions [10, 11]. It has been shown that NKT cells in cancer patients produce a decreased amount of IFN-γ and are therefore less effective than NKT cells in healthy controls [12, 13].

Mast Cells

Accumulation of mast cells is common in angiogenesis-dependent conditions, like cancer, as mast cells are major producers of proangiogenic molecules as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), IL-8, transforming growth factor (TGF)-β [14]. Mast cells also play a central role in the control of innate and adaptive immunity by interacting with B and T cells (in particular regulatory T cells) and dendritic cells. The density of mast cells in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) tumors is correlated with microvessel density [15] and mast cells/histamine has a direct growth promoting effect on NSCLC cell lines in vitro [16]. Tumor-infiltrating mast cells can directly influence proliferation and invasion of tumors, by histamine, IL-8 and VEGF while the production of TNF-α and heparin can suppress tumor growth [16, 17]. It has been shown that in NSCLC mast cell counts were enhanced as tumor stage increased while another study did not found this correlation [14, 18]. The controversy of mast cells in other cancer types seems to be related to the type, microenvironment and stage of cancer and their role may depend on the tumor environment [19, 20].

Neutrophils

Neutrophils play a major role in cancer biology. They make up a significant portion of the infiltrating immune cells in the tumor and the absolute neutrophil count and the neutrophil to lymphocyte ratio in blood are independent prognostic factors for survival of NSCLC [21–23]. Neutrophils are attracted to the tumor under the influence of specific chemokines, cytokines and cell adhesion molecules. Tumor-associated neutrophils (TAN) have polarized functions and can be divided into the N1 and N2 phenotype in a context-dependent manner [24]. The N1 phenotype inhibits tumor growth by potentiating T cell responses while the N2 phenotype

promotes tumor growth [25]. The antitumor activities of N1 neutrophils include expression of immune activating cytokines (TNF-α, IL-12, GM-CSF, and VEGF), T cell attracting chemokines (CCL3, CXCL9, CXCL10), lower expression of arginase, and a better capacity of killing tumor cells in vitro. N2 neutrophils support tumor growth by producing angiogenic factors and matrix-degrading enzymes, support the acquisition of a metastatic phenotype, and suppress the anti-tumor immune response by inducible nitric oxide (NO) synthase and arginase expression [26]. Neutrophils also influence adaptive immunity by interacting with T cells [27], B cells [28], and DC [29]. In resectable NSCLC patients, intratumoral neutrophils were elevated in 50 % of the patients and this was associated with a high cumulative incidence of relapse [30].

B Lymphocytes

B cells may affect the prognosis of patients with lung cancer, as patients with stage I NSCLC contain more intratumoral germinal centers with B lymphocytes than patients with stages II to IV [31]. These tertiary (T-BALT) structures provide some evidence of an adaptive immune response that could limit tumor progression in some patients. For instance, the production of antibodies by B cells can activate tumor cell killing by NK cells and other inflammatory cells [32]. Auto-antibodies against tumor antigens are commonly found in patients with lung cancer [33–35] and can inhibit micrometastasis [36]. The role of B cells seems depending on the context.

T Lymphocytes

Several subsets of T cells have been identified, and they all develop in the thymus from common precursor T cells. Based on cytokine secretion and function, these cells are classified as CD4, CD8, Th17, regulatory T cells (Tregs), or TH17 cells, amongst others. CD4+ cells and CD8+ cells represent the strong effectors of the adaptive immune response against cancer [37]. There is controversy on the impact of T cells and their localization on the prognosis of lung cancer [38–43]. This may be caused by the presence of a special subset of T cells, the regulatory T cells (Tregs), and myeloid-derived suppressor cells which are both discussed below. Also tumor-derived factors can exhaust T lymphocytes or induce their apoptosis [44]. Recently it has been shown that cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL) within the tumor (the tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes [TIL]) are of beneficial prognostic influence in resected NSCLC patients in both adenocarcinoma [45] and squamous cell carcinoma [46].

Tregs, characterized by the expression of CD4, CD25, Foxp3, but absence of CD127, are T lymphocytes that are generated in the thymus (natural Treg) or induced

in the periphery (induced Treg) when triggered by suboptimal antigen stimulation or stimulation with IL-35, TGF-β and IL-10 [47]. Tregs are further characterized by the expression of glucocorticoid-induced TNF-receptor-related-protein (GITR), lymphocyte activation gene-3 (LAG-3), and cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA4). In cancer patients, Tregs confer growth and metastatic advantages by inhibiting anti-tumor immunity. They have this pro-tumoral effect by promoting tolerance via direct suppressive functions on activated T-cells or via the secretion of immunosuppressive cytokines such as IL-10 and TGF-β [48, 49]. Tregs are present in tumor tissue [50, 51] and increased in peripheral blood of NSCLC patients compared to healthy controls [52, 53]. This increase in Tregs was found to promote tumor growth and was correlated with lymph node metastasis [54, 55] and poor prognosis [50, 56]. Many factors can increase Tregs in NSCLC tumors, among them are thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) [57] and intratumoral cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) expression [58]. Tregs are considered the most powerful inhibitors of antitumor immunity [59].

Th17 cells are a subpopulation of CD4+ T helper cells that are characterized by the production of interleukin-17 (IL-17, also known as IL-17A). IL-17 plays an important role in the host defenses against bacterial and fungal infections by the activation, recruitment, and migration of neutrophils [60, 61]. In vitro experiments have shown that IL-1β, IL-6, and IL-23 promote Th17 generation and differentiation from naïve CD4+ T cells [62]. Among the other cytokines secreted by Th17 cells are IL-17 F, IL-21, IL-22, and TNF-α. The role of Th17 cells in cancer is poorly understood. Th17 cells accumulate in malignant pleural effusion from patients with lung cancer [62]. Also higher levels of IL-17A were detected in serum and in tumor lesions of lung adenocarcinoma patients, indicating a potential role of these cells in cancer [63]. It has been shown that Th17 cells encouraged tumor growth by inducing tumor vascularization or enhancing inflammation, but other studies revealed also opposite roles for Th17 cells. Recent data indicate that IL-17 may play a role in the metastasis of lung cancer by promoting lymph-angiogenesis and is therefore an independent prognostic factor in both overall and disease-free survival in NSCLC [64]. So, it is controversial whether Th17 cells in cancer are beneficial or antagonistic; this may be dependent on the tumor immunogenicity, the stage of disease, and the impact of inflammation and angiogenesis on tumor pathogenesis [65].

Myeloid-Derived Suppressor Cells

Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) are a heterogeneous population of immature myeloid cells and myeloid progenitor cells. MDSCs inhibit T cells activation [66, 67] in a nonspecific or antigen-specific manner, alter the peptide presenting ability of MHC class I molecules on tumor cells [68], influence B cells [69], block NK cell cytotoxicity [70–72], inhibit dendritic cell differentiation [73], and expand Tregs [74, 75] signifying their crucial contribution in constituting a tumor

suppressive environment. Furthermore, there is compelling evidence that MDSC, by secreting MMP9 and TGF-β1, are also involved in angiogenesis, vasculogenesis, and metastatic spread [76]. MDSCs suppress the immune system by the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS), nitric oxide (NO), peroxynitrite and secretion of the cytokines IL-10 and TGF-β [77]. Upregulated arginase-I activity by MDSCs depletes the essential amino acid L-arginine, contributing to the induction of T cell tolerance by the down regulation of the CD3ζ chain expression of the T cell receptor [78–81]. However, the mechanisms that are used to suppress the immune responses are highly dependent on the context of the tumor microenvironment [82]. An increased subpopulation of MDSCs in the peripheral blood of NSCLC patients was detected that decreased in those patients that responded to chemotherapy and patient undergoing surgery [83].

Tumor–Associated Macrophages

Macrophages are part of the innate immune system and play important roles in the first line of defense against foreign pathogens. They can be divided into M1 macrophages (classical activation) and M2 macrophages (alternative activation). M1 macrophages attract and activate cells of the adaptive immune system and have anti-tumor and tissue destructive activity, while the M2 phenotype has been linked to tumor-promoting activities by subversion of adaptive immunity, promoting tumor angiogenesis and supporting cancer cell survival, proliferation, invasion and tumor dissemination. Macrophages in tumors are usually referred to as tumor-associated macrophages (TAM) and their presence can be substantial (10–65 % of the tumor stroma). In the beginning, the TAM mainly consist of M1-like macrophages however, when the tumor starts to invade and vascularize, there is a skewing towards the M2 phenotype [84, 85]. This takes place especially at those regions in the tumor that are hypoxic [86]. It has been reported by several groups that there is an association between the number of tumor islet macrophages and NSCLC survival [87–91]. Moreover, when looking at the different phenotypes of TAM (M1 and M2), it is shown that high numbers of M1 macrophages infiltrating the tumor are correlated with improved survival. On the other hand, the presence of M2-like macrophages is associated with poor clinical outcome.

Dendritic Cells

Dendritic cells (DC) are widely acknowledged as the central surveillance cell type and play an important role in the activation of lymphocyte subsets to control or eliminate human tumors. Upon encountering tumor cells or tumor-associated antigens, DC engulf this material and begin migrating via lymphatic vessels to regional lymphoid organs. The density of immature DC (Langerhans cell and interstitial DC)

and mature DC, present in the tumor microenvironment, is highly predictive of disease-specific survival in early-stage NSCLC patients [92] and the presence of DC in resected NSCLC material is a good prognostic factor [9]. Interaction between the DC and tumor cells results in the release of anti-tumor cytokines [93, 94]. This suggests that DC within the tumor microenvironment of early-stage NSCLC are capable in initiating adaptive immune responses in situ [95–97]. In the peripheral blood and regional lymph nodes of lung cancer patients, the number and function of mature DC is dramatically reduced [98, 99], partly due to abnormal differentiation of myeloid cells (e.g. MDSC) [100]. Tumor cells, stromal cells like fibroblasts, and tumor-infiltrating immune cells and/or their secreted products, like VEGF, M-CSF, IL-6, IL-10, and TGF-β are also responsible for systemic and local DC defects [101–104]. Affected DC are impaired in their ability to phagocytose antigen and to stimulate T cells, leading to a defective induction of anti-tumor responses. NSCLC-derived DC produce high amounts of the immunosuppressive cytokines IL-10 and TGF-β [105]. It has been shown that the T cell co-inhibitory molecule B7-H3 and programmed death receptor-ligand-1 (PD-L1) are upregulated on tumor residing DC and these molecules conveys mainly suppressive signals by inhibiting cytokine production and T cell proliferation [106, 107].

Context-Specific Nature of Immune Cells in Lung Tumors

From the above it is apparent that different types of tumor-infiltrating immune cells have different effects on tumor progression. Based on their functions, immune types can be divided into cells with a potentially positive impact on the antitumor response and cells with detrimental effects, but cell phenotypes can adapt on the changing environment (e.g. the macrophage M1/M2 phenotype polarization). The net effect of the interactions between all these various cell types and their secreted products within the environment of an established tumor participates in determining anti-tumor immunity, angiogenesis, metastasis, overall cancer cell survival and proliferation. These immune infiltrates are heterogeneous between tumor types, and are very diverse from patient to patient. The importance of these tumor-infiltrating immune cells for tumorigenesis, and their secreted chemokines and cytokines, was recently acknowledged by revisiting the hallmarks of cancer as described by Hanahan and Weinberg in 2000 and now include “tumor promoting inflammation” and “avoiding immune destruction” [108, 109]. Besides the type and density of the cells, also the location in the tumor (in the centre or core; or within the invasive margins of the tumor), in adjacent tertiary or secondary lymphoid structures or their presence in peripheral blood will shape the immune contexture. Histopathological analyses of the location, density and functional orientation of the different immune cell populations in large annotated collections of human lung tumors has identified a good association of effector T-cells (CD3+CD8+), memory T cells (CD3+CD45RO+) [38, 88, 110–112], and Th1 cells (IL-2 and IFN-gamma secreting CD3+ cells) [110] with longer disease-free survival and/or a better overall

survival while Th17 [64, 110] and Tregs [56, 110, 113, 114] have a poor association with the prognosis [115, 116] . However, it is important to realize the complex spatiotemporal dynamics in the tumor-immune interactions in time due to perturbations at the gene and protein level of the immune cells and tumor cells within the microenvironment [116]. For example, when myeloid cells are attracted to the tumor, they are influenced by several signals able to shape the new cells as "needed" by the tumor. In an early phase of tumor development, the tumor-associated macrophages mainly consist of an M1-like phenotype and later in the tumorigenic process, when the tumor changes its local environment, there is a skewing towards the M2 phenotype [84, 85, 117]. This takes place especially at those regions in the tumor that are hypoxic (Fig. 2) [86, 118]. A subpopulation of TAMs gather in hypoxic sites in the tumor as a result of chemoattractants produced by tumor cells [119]. Exposure to hypoxia stimulates TAMs to acquire a pro-angiogenic M2 phenotype with high production of pro-angiogenic factors like VEGF and MMP-9 [120]. This preferential polarization is also a result of the absence of M1-orienting signals, such as IFN-γ or bacterial components in the tumor environment as well as the presence of M2 polarization factors. Thus the cancer immunoediting concept as described by Schreiber et al. [121], that comprises editing, equilibrium and escape, takes place continuously and this plasticity is a major source of heterogeneity between patients and a cause for therapy resistance [4].

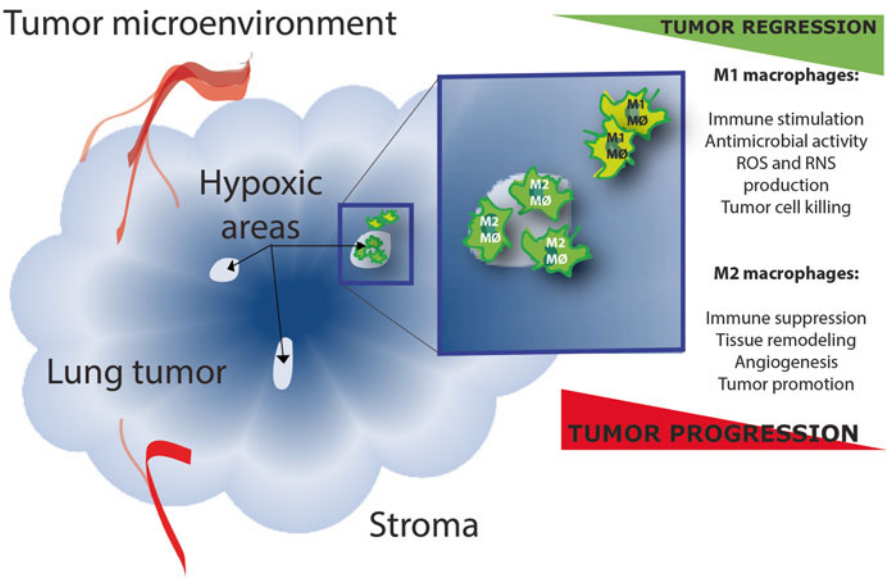


Fig. 2 Opposing effects of M1 and M2 tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) in the tumor environment. ROS: reactive oxygen species and RNS: reactive nitrogen species. The classically activated M1 macrophages and alternatively activated M2 macrophages are at the opposing ends of the polarization continuum and have opposing effects in tumor biology. M2 TAMs can be abundantly present within tumors, especially in those areas that are oxygen deprived

Types of Immunotherapeutic Approaches

Immunotherapy attempts to stimulate or restore the body's natural ability of the immune system to fight cancer. There are various strategies to activate the immune system and these are classified earlier by Aerts et al. and here into the following categories: biological response modifiers, monoclonal antibodies, peptide or tumor cell vaccines, and cellular immunotherapy (Fig. 3 and Table 1). There is no consensus regarding which of the four categories is the optimal approach for thoracic malignancies, this will probably be highly dependent on the tumor characteristics of each individual patient.

Biological Response Modifiers

Biological response modifiers are compounds which can nonspecifically enhance the immune response, either by directly stimulating the immune system and/or by the direct induction of tumor cell apoptosis. These compounds can activate the anti-tumor immune response via the direct stimulation of pro-inflammatory immune

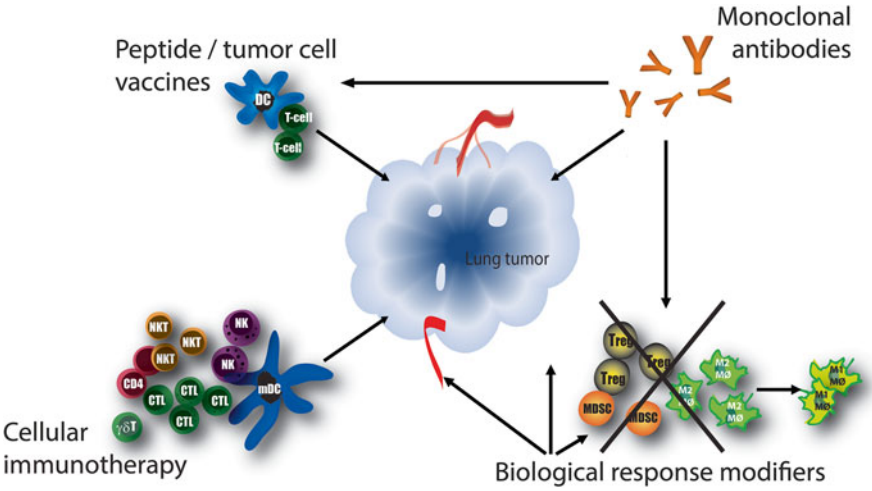


Fig. 3 Immunotherapeutic approaches. Different immunotherapeutic approaches are currently being developed for the treatment of lung cancer. All approaches aim to elicit an anti-tumor immune response and they can often work complementary and/or synergistically. Biological response modifiers can nonspecifically enhance the immune response, either by directly stimulating the immune system and/or by the direct induction of tumor cell apoptosis. Monoclonal antibodies bind specifically to one epitope and can be directed against numerous tumor- or immune cell related targets. Tumor vaccines are designed to deliver tumor antigens to antigen-presenting cells, which can subsequently induce a tumor specific immune response. Cellular immunotherapy includes the adoptive transfer of autologous or allogeneic activated immune cells

Table 1 Immunotherapeutic approaches that have been tested or are currently under investigation for lung cancer and mesothelioma

Approach types	Examples of clinical studies in lung cancer and mesothelioma	Mode of action	References
Biological response modifiers			
Triggering inflammation	PF-3512676 (CpG 7909) CpG-ODN 2006 Bacillus Calmette-Guerin (BCG), Mycobacterium vaccae (SRL172)	Toll-like receptor 9 agonist Downregulation of Tregs Nonspecific immune stimulants now often tested as adjuvants	[130, 131, 216, 217] [218] [219]
Cytokine therapy	IL-2 + tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) or interferon alpha (IFN-α) Interferon gamma (IFN-γ) Mda-7 (IL-24)	Induces T-cell proliferation Induces tumor cell apoptosis Mda-7/IL-24 induces tumor cell apoptosis and inhibits tumor angiogenesis	[135, 139] [136, 137] [220]
Colony-stimulating factors	Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)	Treatment of chemotherapy-induced neutropenia	[140, 141]
Multi-modal effectors	Multi-target VEGFR: thalidomide and analogues such as lenalidomide and pomalidomide Cyclophosphamide Cyclosporine Denileukin Diftitox Talactoferrin Trabectedin (Yondelis) All-trans-retinoic acid (ATRA)	Besides anti-metastatic, anti-angiogenic also immunomodulatory drugs [221, 222] Targets regulatory T-cells [223, 224] Targets regulatory T-cells [225] Targets regulatory T-cells [226] and cancer cells which express the IL-2 receptor Recombinant human lactoferrin, promotes innate and adaptive immunity against tumor cells in the gut-associated lymphoid tissue [142, 227] Targets tumor-associated macrophages [228] and tumor cells Targets myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs)	[229, 230] [223] [231] [232] [143, 144, 233, 234] [235, 236] [237]

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Monoclonal antibodies			
Directed against tumor cells	Cetuximab Panitumumab Matuzumab Necitumab Trastuzumab (Herceptin) CAT-5001 (SS1P) Amatuximab (MORab-009)	Chimeric or fully humanized antibodies which target the epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor on tumor cells Anti-HER2, targets tumor cells which overexpress the human epidermal growth factor 2 (HER2) protein Anti-mesothelin immunotoxin, targets mesothelin expressed in malignant mesothelioma and lung adenocarcinoma Chimeric anti-mesothelin monocloncal antibody	[145, 238, 239] [146, 240, 241] [242] [149]
Directed against tumor products	Bevacizumab	Slows the growth of tumor blood vessels by targeting the VEGF protein. Blockade of VEGF is also immunomodulatory	[150, 243]
Immune checkpoint inhibitors	Anti-CTLA-4 (Ipilimumab/tremelimumab) Anti-PD-L1 (BMS-936559/MPDL-3280A) / PD-1 (BMS-936558 (nivolumab)/MK3475 (lambrolizumab))	Prevents T cell inhibitory mechanisms and allows T cells to continue cancer cell destruction	[155, 244] [158, 159]
Peptide or tumor cell vaccines			

Vaccines	GVAX	GM-CSF gene-transfected tumor cell vaccine	[184, 185]
	Belagenpumatucel-L (Lucanix)	Allogeneic tumor cell vaccine made with four irradiated NSCLC cell lines modified with TGF-β2 antisense plasmid	[188, 247]
	MAGE-A3 vaccine	Vaccine composed of MAGE-A3 protein and adjuvant AS15	[166]
	(L)-BLP-25 anti-MUC-1 (Stimuvax)	Vaccine which targets MUC-1 expressed on tumor cells	[177, 248]
	TG4010	*Vaccinia* vector coding MUC1 and IL-2	[179, 180]
	CimaVax EGF	Vaccine composed of human recombinant Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF) conjugated to a carrier protein	[168]
	WT1 peptide vaccine	Vaccine composed of four WT1 (Wilms' tumor suppressor gene) analogue peptides	[169]
	CRS-207	Live-attenuated *Listeria monocytogenes* vector encoding human mesothelin [148]	[182]
	Bec2/BCG	Induces anti-GD3 antibodies (overexpressed on 60 % of SCLC patients) [245]	[124, 249]
	GV1001	Vaccine which targets the telomerase peptide GV1001	[173]
	Racotumomab (Vaxira)	Anti-idiotypic antibody which mimicks the NGcGM3 ganglioside that is expressed on multiple human cancers [246]	[250], ClinicalTrials.gov: NCT01460472
	Tergenpumatucel-L	Vaccine composed of irradiated and gene-transfected lung cancer cell lines	ClinicalTrials.gov: NCT01774578
Cellular immunotherapy			
Dendritic cells (DCs)	Ex-vivo generated DC-vaccines	Dendritic cells loaded with tumor antigens	[195, 254–256]
T-cells	Ex-vivo generated lymphokine-activated killer cells (LAK)	Autologous lymphokine-activated killer cells [251]	[196, 197]
Natural Killer (NK) cells	Cytokine-induced killer cells (CIK)	Autologous cytokine-activated T-cells and NK cells [252]	[200]
	Activated T-cells	Adoptive transfer of activated T-lymphocytes	[201]
	Gamma delta T cells	Adoptive transfer of zoledronate expanded gamma delta T-cells	[203]
	NK cells	Adoptive transfer of allogeneic Natural Killer (NK) cells [253]	[204]

cells or via the inhibition of detrimental suppressive immune cells like Tregs or MDSCs.

The observation that lung cancer patients who developed an empyema after pneumonectomy seemed to have a longer survival gave rise to studies involving different biological response modifiers in the 1970s [122]. The idea that bacterial infection in the area of the draining lymph nodes of the resected tumor could lead to immune destruction of residual tumor cells provoked studies involving the intrapleural injection of bacterial antigens to induce immune activation. Bacillus Calmette-Guèrin (BCG) is a vaccine against tuberculosis that is prepared from a strain of attenuated live bovine tuberculosis bacillus and its potential for cancer immunotherapy has been thoroughly investigated. McKneally et al. were the first to study the effect of postoperative injection of BCG into the pleural space of early stage lung cancer patients [123]. Their observation that intrapleural BCG injection resulted in an improved survival lead to numerous studies regarding nonspecific immune stimulation with this vaccine. Currently, BCG is most often investigated as an adjuvants instead as a single therapeutic agent in lung cancer patients [124]. In contrast, in patients with superficial bladder cancer, the use of intravesical BCG is now well-established [125]. In addition to BCG, heat-killed mycobacterium vaccae (SRL 172) has been investigated as a nonspecific immunostimulant in lung cancer and mesothelioma patients in combination with chemotherapy [126, 127], unfortunately no survival benefits were reported. Mycobacterial adjuvant-based agents have been shown to activate antigen-presenting cells and induce a Th1-type immune response, partly due to the binding of components of the cell wall of Mycobacteria to Toll-like receptors (TLRs) [128]. TLRs are membrane glycoproteins and belong to a family of pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) that recognize specific microbial molecular structures, pathogen associated molecular patterns (PAMPs). Recognition of a PAMP belonging to a micro-organism by a TLR leads to activation, maturation and induction of proinflammatory cytokines. Immature dendritic cells express numerous TLRs and nonspecific immune activation via the stimulation of these TLRs has been extensively researched. In lung cancer specifically, TLR9 plays an important role and has been described to be overexpressed in lung cancer tissue [129]. Synthetic TLR9-activating compounds (e.g. PF-3512676, CpG-ODN) have been clinically tested in combination with chemotherapy in lung cancer patients, unfortunately no clinical benefit was found [130, 131]. However, since preclinical studies have shown that the use of the TLR9 agonist CpG-ODN as an adjuvants in tumor vaccines reduces the number of regulatory T-cells and increases the number of effector T-cells, TLRs remain a potential target in the field of cancer immunotherapy [132].

In addition to compounds that nonspecifically enhance inflammation, the administration of cytokines has been amongst the earliest approaches in cancer immunotherapy. Interferons (IFN) have been one of the major cytokine families of interest given their direct antiproliferative and immunopotentiating effects. In the 1980s, the first clinical trials were conducted in which lung cancer patients were treated with different types of IFN (recombinant alpha and beta) [133, 134]. Since then, the potential of IFN therapy in lung cancer patients has been researched extensively in

a number of clinical trials, however no clinical benefits were found [135–138]. Other proinflammatory cytokines of which their potential as a therapeutic target in lung cancer patients has been investigated are IL-2 and TNF-α. In general, treatment with the combination of IL-2 and TNF-α induced relatively grave toxicities and no survival benefits [139]. Currently, the direct administration of proinflammatory cytokines in order to enhance the anti-tumor immune response has been mostly abandoned in lung cancer patients with the exception of the use of colony-stimulating factors with the purpose of the treatment of chemotherapy-induced neutropenia [140, 141].

The group of biological response modifiers consists of a subgroup of multi-modal effectors. The majority of the multi-modal effectors aim to enhance the anti-tumor immune response via the modulation of specific anti-inflammatory immune cells, e.g. Tregs, MDSCs and tumor-associated macrophages. Because of their capability to facilitate an optimal pro-inflammatory immune response, these multi-modal effectors have great potential in combination with more specific immunotherapeutic approaches, e.g. vaccines and cellular immunotherapy. A multi-modal effector which received a lot of attention recently is the recombinant human lactoferrin: talactoferrin alfa. Talactoferrin alfa is an immunostimulatory protein that stimulates dendritic cell maturation in the gut [142]. After promising preclinical and clinical studies in lung cancer patients, a phase 3 study showed no survival benefit of talactoferrin alfa monotherapy in patients with advanced lung cancer [143, 144]. However, the potential of this compound in combination with other immunotherapeutic strategies is topic of further research.

Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies bind specifically to one epitope and their application as potential immunotherapeutic agents has received a lot of attention recently. The use of monoclonal antibodies directed against tumor growth related antigens on the tumor cell like epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) and human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) has been well established in lung cancer patients [145, 146]. In addition to the direct effect of the inhibition of growth factors and/or their receptors, antibodies bound to the tumor cell surface can induce antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) [147]. Mesothelin is another tumor-specific antigen which is an attractive target for treatment with monoclonal antibodies because of its expression on several epithelial tumors including mesothelioma and lung cancer. Clinical studies with monoclonal antibodies against mesothelin are currently ongoing in lung cancer and mesothelioma patients [148, 149].

In addition to monoclonal antibodies directed against antigens specifically expressed by tumor cells, antibodies that are directed against tumor products have been clinically implemented. In lung cancer patients, the monoclonal antibody bevacizumab which is directed against VEGF has been extensively investigated in clinical trials. In a recent meta-analysis, Cui et al. showed that bevacizumab accom-

panied by chemotherapy improves clinical outcomes compared to other targeted therapies in chemotherapy-naïve lung cancer patients [150]. Bevacizumab has been developed in order to target blood vessel growth of tumors, however recent evidence shows that bevacizumab also has an immunomodulating effect and enhances circulating CD8 T cells in treated cancer patients [151]. This twofold effect makes bevacizumab an interesting compound to study in combination with other immunotherapies.

The blockade of immune checkpoints using monoclonal antibodies can be considered one of the major breakthroughs in cancer research of the past years. In order to control the immune response and to mitigate collateral tissue damage the immune system is harnessed with a negative feedback system. T-cells have the capacity to upregulate co-inhibitory receptors in order to inhibit the immune response and mediate immune tolerance. Multiple immune-inhibitory pathways (checkpoints) and their accompanying inhibitory co-receptors have been identified. In chronic infection and in cancer, expression of these inhibitory co-receptors is enhanced and associated with an anergic state in T cells [152]. Antibodies that bind to these co-receptors can block inhibitory signals and therefore augment T cell activation and proliferation.

The development of antibodies which bind to co-inhibitory molecules activated during T cell activation has led to the possibility to prevent T cell inhibitory mechanisms and therefore enhance the anti-tumor immune response [153]. The first monoclonal antibody against a co-inhibitory molecule that showed clinical efficacy in cancer patients was anti-CTLA-4 (ipilimumab) [3]. Currently, ipilimumab is approved for the treatment of metastatic melanoma [154]. In patients with advanced lung cancer, treatment with ipilimumab and chemotherapy resulted in a modest survival benefit compared to treatment with chemotherapy alone [155]. Another monoclonal antibody directed against CTLA-4, tremelimumab, has shown encouraging clinical activity in patients with chemotherapy-resistant advanced mesothelioma [156]. In addition to CTLA-4, expression of other co-inhibitory receptors like programmed death protein (PD1) and its ligand PD-L1 have been shown to play a role in lung cancer [157]. Both treatment with anti-PD1 (nivolumab) and anti-PD-L1 resulted in objective responses in patients with advanced lung cancer [158, 159]. Although these results are without any doubt very promising, the implementation of these immune checkpoint inhibitors is hampered by serious immune-related toxicities (e.g. colitis, hepatitis) and low response rates. Therefore, the development of robust, predictive biomarkers is pivotal for the clinical implementation of monoclonal antibodies against co-inhibitory receptors [160]. In addition, phase 3 studies will have to determine whether these immune checkpoint inhibitors will earn their place in the standard treatment of lung cancer.

Tumor Vaccines

The research regarding cancer vaccines has made great progress since the discovery of human tumor antigens which can be recognized by T cell receptors [161]. Tumor vaccines are designed to deliver tumor antigens to antigen-presenting cells, which can subsequently induce a tumor specific immune response by the adaptive immune

system. These vaccines can consist of various types of antigen sources. An antigen candidate needs to meet certain criteria in order to potentially be able to elicit a specific anti-tumor immune response. Tumor specificity, frequency and homogeneous expression in tumor cells, role as an oncogene and intrinsic immunogenicity are essential features of antigens which determine the success [5]. In lung cancer and mesothelioma, a broad spectrum of approaches using various antigen sources have been undertaken to develop cancer vaccines. These are here divided into (1) proteins and peptides, (2) liposomal complexes, (3) recombinant viruses and bacterial vectors, and (4) cell-based vaccines.

Proteins and Peptides

Melanoma-associated antigen A3 (MAGE A3) is an antigen which is specifically expressed by several human tumors, including non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Activation of the MAGE genes is known to take place in early carcinogenesis of the lung, however the physiological function of MAGE gene products is unknown [162, 163]. MAGE A3 is detected in approximately 35–50 % of NSCLC and its expression has been shown to be inversely correlated with survival [164, 165]. Vaccines composed of recombinant MAGE A3 (and adjuvants) have shown promising results in lung cancer patients in phase 2 studies and have progressed to a phase 3 trial which is currently being conducted [166]. Epidermal growth factor (EGF) is another eligible candidate to be applied in lung cancer vaccines because of its broad expression in 85 % of NSCLCs. CimaVax EGF is a vaccine composed of human recombinant EGF conjugated to a carrier protein and has proven survival benefits in a phase 2 study with advanced-stage lung cancer patients [167, 168]. In addition to large proteins like MAGE and EGF, smaller peptides can also be used in tumor vaccines. The WT1 (Wilms' tumor suppressor gene 1) peptide vaccine is composed of four WT1 analogue peptides. WT1 can be expressed in both lung cancer and mesothelioma and vaccination with this peptide has been shown to induce T-cell mediated immune responses in lung cancer and mesothelioma patients [169]. The enzyme telomerase is expressed in most human cancers, including NSCLC, and is therefore considered an attractive cancer vaccine target [170, 171]. Peptide GV1001 consists of 16 amino acids derived from the active site of human telomerase reverse transcriptase [172]. A phase 2 trial with GV1001 showed low toxicity, immune activation and promising clinical responses in NSCLC patients [173].

Liposomal Complexes

Liposomes are known to be potent vaccine delivery systems [174]. The best known cancer vaccine which makes use of this delivery technique is L-BLP25 or Stimuvax. This liposomal vaccine aims to generate an immune response against mucin 1 (MUC1), a cell surface glycosylated phosphoprotein that is frequently overexpressed by epithelial tumors including NSCLC [175, 176]. The L-BLP25 contains

the BLP25 lipopeptide and a liposomal delivery system, which facilitates uptake by antigen-presenting cells [176]. A phase 2 trial with advanced stage NSCLC patients showed survival benefits and paved the way for a large phase 3 trial (the START trial) [177]. Unfortunately, Stimuvax failed to increase overall survival in this trial, however, subgroup analyses could still reveal beneficial effects for certain lung cancer patient groups and/or treatment schemes [178].

Recombinant Viruses and Bacterial Vectors

Viruses can be genetically modified in order to express certain antigens and/or co-stimulatory cytokines and are therefore useful as 'viral vaccines' in cancer immunotherapy. The earlier described MUC1 protein can also be targeted by the TG4010 viral vaccine. This vaccine consists of attenuated vaccinia virus Ankara which is genetically modified to express MUC1 and IL-2 as adjuvants [179]. In a phase 2 study it was shown that TG4010 enhances the effect of chemotherapy in advanced NSCLC patients, a phase 3 trial is currently being conducted [180].

In addition to viruses, bacteria can also be used as a vaccination vehicle. CRS-207 consists of a live-attenuated *Listeria monocytogenes* vector encoding human mesothelin [148]. The earlier described mesothelin is an attractive vaccine component because it has been shown to be able to induce a strong CD8 T cell response [181]. CRS-207 has proven to be safe and resulted in immune activation in a phase 1 study amongst patients with mesothelin-positive tumors (lung cancer and mesothelioma included) [182]. Future studies will have to reveal the clinical potential of this mesothelin encoding bacterial vector.

Cell-Based Vaccines

There is a variety of cell-based vaccines under development for the treatment of lung cancer. Cell-based vaccines can be autologous or allogeneic and transfected or not with immunostimulatory compounds. Autologous tumor cell vaccines are ideal antigen sources because they are capable of inducing an immune response to a large variety of antigens expressed by the patient's tumor. However their practical implementation is complex and challenging for large scale development [183]. An example of an autologous tumor cell vaccine developed for lung cancer is GVAX. This autologous lung cancer vaccine consists of patient-specific irradiated lung cancer cells genetically modified to secrete granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF) to enhance the immune response. Although a phase 1 study with GVAX showed signs of clinical benefits in lung cancer patients, this study was not followed-up by a phase 2 or phase 3 study [184, 185]. An allogeneic tumor cell vaccine that did reach phase 3 clinical trials is belagenpumatucel-L (Lucanix). Lucanix consists of four irradiated NSCLC cell lines modified with TGF-β2 antisense plasmid. TGF-β is known to be associated with the immune escape of tumors and increased levels of TGF-β are associated with a worse prognosis in NSCLC patients

[186, 187]. The addition of the TGF-β2 antisense plasmid aims to stimulate the vaccine-induced immune response by inhibition of the production of TGF-β by the tumor. It is possible to use a combination of tumor cell lines as vaccine cocktail because NSCLC tumor cell lines are described to share immunogenic epitopes with primary tumors [163]. A phase 2 study showed clinical response rates of 15 % amongst advanced stage NSCLC patients [188]. Unfortunately, in a phase 3 study belagenpumatucel-L did not meet its predefined endpoint in the entire patient population. However, in specific subgroups of patients marked improvements in survival were achieved resulting in a current continued development of belagenpumatucel-L for specific indications.

Cellular Immunotherapy

Cellular immunotherapy includes the adoptive transfer of autologous or allogeneic activated immune cells. Initially, adoptive immunotherapy was used for relapses after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation in leukemia patients [189]. Recent advances have facilitated the application and clinical success of this method in various solid tumors [190]. The most prominent success story regarding cellular immunotherapy is sipuleucel-T, a vaccine for prostate cancer that consists of autologous peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) including antigen-presenting cells that have been activated ex vivo with a recombinant fusion protein (PA2024, a prostate antigen that is fused to GM-CSF) [2]. After it was demonstrated in a phase 3 clinical trial that sipuleucel-T prolongs survival in metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer patients, FDA approval followed in 2010. The general goal of adoptive cellular immunotherapy is to induce a tumor-specific immune response via the infusion of e.g. tumor-antigen loaded DCs or specifically activated T cells. In lung cancer, cellular immunotherapeutic approaches using various cell types have been evaluated [191].

Dendritic Cells

As described earlier, DCs are the professional antigen-presenting cells of the immune system and they have emerged as the most powerful initiators of immune responses. Because of their capacity to engulf tumor antigens and activate T-cells in an antigen-specific manner, the use of DCs as immunotherapeutic agents is very promising. In DC-based immunotherapeutic approaches, DCs are generated ex vivo from monocytes and after arming with tumor-associated antigens, reinjected into the patient with the intention to restore proper presentation of tumor-associated antigens and T-cell activation. This concept has been researched in NSCLC and has shown promising results regarding the elicited immune response, safety and tolerability, despite the small sample sizes of the trials [192–194]. In mesothelioma, treatment with autologous tumor-lysate pulsed DCs was shown to be safe and elicited an anti-tumor immune response in a phase 1 clinical trial [195].

T Cells

Different sources and activation procedures can be used in specifically harnessing the T cell response and have been clinically evaluated in lung cancer. Lymphokine-activated killer (LAK) cells are autologous IL-2 stimulated lymphocytes and their application has shown clinical responses in several studies with lung cancer patients [196, 197]. Cytokine-induced killer (CIK) cells are generated in vitro by stimulation of peripheral blood lymphocytes with anti-CD3 antibodies, IL-2, IL-1α, and IFN-γ [198]. CIK cells have proven their clinical potential in multiple solid tumors including lung cancer [199] and these results warrant future clinical trials [200]. In addition, in a recent study autologous purified T lymphocytes activated with anti-CD3 antibodies and IL-2 demonstrated an extended survival in patients with advanced NSCLC, however this effect was seen in a historical cohort study and therefore these data will have to be confirmed in a prospective randomized trial [201]. Because expanded gamma delta T cells showed strong cytotoxicity to lung cancer cell lines in vitro, the exploitation of this cell type has been tested clinically. In a phase 1 study, autologous expanded gamma delta T cells unfortunately showed limited clinical responses in NSCLC patients [202, 203].

Natural Killer Cells

Adoptive transfer of allogeneic, in vitro activated and expanded NK cells from haploidentical donors was proven potentially clinically effective in NSCLC [204]. NKT cells are currently exploited for cancer treatment by harnessing these cells with CD1d agonist ligands [205], or by adoptive transfer of NKT cells activated in vitro [206].

Response Evaluation

Immunotherapy represents a new class of agents in the treatment of lung cancer. As demonstrated for sipuleucel-T in prostate cancer and ipilimumab in melanoma, treatment responses and improvement of overall survival can be seen in lung cancer patients. However, often the agents did not change initial disease progression. Even a transient worsening of disease manifested either by progression of known lesions or the appearance of new lesions can be seen, before disease stabilization or tumor regression. The commonly accepted treatment paradigm, however, suggests that treatments should initially decrease tumor volume, which can be measured using CT scan. Also, progression-free survival is increasingly used as an alternative endpoint of studies. This seems to be unfortunate for immunotherapy, which may initiate an immune response that ultimately slows the tumor growth rate, resulting in longer survival, but not a decrease in tumor volume on CT scan or an increased progression-free survival [257]. Immune-related response criteria which adapt the standard response criteria and include the potential for delayed clinical response

and initial increase of tumor mass after immunotherapy are currently being developed [207]. Therefore, clinicians at this moment may need to reconsider how to measure success of their immunotherapeutic approach [208].

The Future of Cancer Immunotherapy

For a long time, stimulating the patient's immune system to attack tumors has been viewed as a rather meaningless intervention, an assumption that has radically changed since the recent clinical successes of cancer immunotherapy. However, despite the promising results achieved in some patients, the overall response rates are low. It has been shown that the immune contexture (i.e., the type, density and location of tumor-infiltrating immune cells) can predict the clinical outcome of patients affected by multiple types of cancer, but with consistent intra-patient variations [209]. It is therefore critical to identify the unique immunological profile of individual patients as a means to identify the best-suited immunotherapeutic approach for each patient [153]. This personalized way could greatly improve the efficacy of current immunotherapies. In addition to an individualized treatment plan, the future of immunotherapy in lung cancer patients includes multimodality treatment. Surgery, irradiation or chemotherapy vigorously reduce the tumor mass and the induced tumor cell death results in tumor antigen exposure. These therapeutic effects enhance the efficacy of immunotherapy and warrant combinatorial treatment approaches. In addition, multiple chemotherapeutical agents have been described to modulate the tumor microenvironment and therefore enhance immunotherapy [210, 211]. Gemcitabine and vinorelbine are known to be able to reduce circulating MDSCs [212, 213], increase the ratio of M1 to M2 macrophages [214] and stimulate APCs [215]. Therefore, the combination of immunotherapy with conventional treatments can elicit a synergistic treatment response and takes advantage of the full potential of cancer immunotherapy.

References

1. Couzin-Frankel J (2013) Breakthrough of the year 2013. Cancer immunotherapy. Science 342(6165):1432–1433
2. Kantoff PW et al (2010) Sipuleucel-T immunotherapy for castration-resistant prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 363(5):411–422
3. Hodi FS et al (2010) Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med 363(8):711–723
4. Holzel M, Bovier A, Tuting T (2013) Plasticity of tumour and immune cells: a source of heterogeneity and a cause for therapy resistance? Nat Rev Cancer 13(5):365–376
5. Tartour E, Zitvogel L (2013) Lung cancer: potential targets for immunotherapy. Lancet Respir Med 1:551–563
6. Heuvers ME et al (2012) Patient-tailored modulation of the immune system may revolutionize future lung cancer treatment. BMC Cancer 12:580

7. Becknell B, Caligiuri MA (2008) Natural killer cells in innate immunity and cancer. J Immunother 31(8):685–692
8. Caligiuri MA (2008) Human natural killer cells. Blood 112(3):461–469
9. Al-Shibli K et al (2009) The prognostic value of intraepithelial and stromal innate immune system cells in non-small cell lung carcinoma. Histopathology 55(3):301–312
10. Rijavec M et al (2011) Natural killer T cells in pulmonary disorders. Respir Med 105(Suppl 1):S20–S25
11. Shimizu T et al (2009) Activation of Valpha24NKT cells in malignant pleural effusion in patients with lung cancer. Oncol Rep 22(3):581–586
12. Molling JW et al (2005) Peripheral blood IFN-gamma-secreting Valpha24+ Vbeta11+ NKT cell numbers are decreased in cancer patients independent of tumor type or tumor load. Int J Cancer 116(1):87–93
13. Tahir SM et al (2001) Loss of IFN-gamma production by invariant NK T cells in advanced cancer. J Immunol 167(7):4046–4050
14. O'Callaghan DS et al (2010) The role of inflammation in the pathogenesis of non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 5(12):2024–2036
15. Dundar E et al (2008) The significance and relationship between mast cells and tumour angiogenesis in non-small cell lung carcinoma. J Int Med Res 36(1):88–95
16. Stoyanov E et al (2012) Mast cells and histamine enhance the proliferation of non-small cell lung cancer cells. Lung Cancer 75(1):38–44
17. Khazaie K et al (2011) The significant role of mast cells in cancer. Cancer Metastasis Rev 30(1):45–60
18. Niczyporuk M et al (2012) A lack of correlation between mast cells, angiogenesis, and outcome in non-small cell lung cancer. Exp Lung Res 38(6):281–285
19. Heijmans J et al (2012) Role of mast cells in colorectal cancer development, the jury is still out. Biochim Biophys Acta 1822(1):9–13
20. Nechushtan H (2010) The complexity of the complicity of mast cells in cancer. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 42(5):551–554
21. Sarraf KM et al (2009) Neutrophil/lymphocyte ratio and its association with survival after complete resection in non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 137(2):425–428
22. Teramukai S et al (2009) Pretreatment neutrophil count as an independent prognostic factor in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: an analysis of Japan Multinational Trial Organisation LC00-03. Eur J Cancer 45(11):1950–1958
23. Tomita M et al (2011) Preoperative neutrophil to lymphocyte ratio as a prognostic predictor after curative resection for non-small cell lung cancer. Anticancer Res 31(9):2995–2998
24. Mantovani A (2009) The yin-yang of tumor-associated neutrophils. Cancer Cell 16(3):173–174
25. Colotta F et al (2009) Cancer-related inflammation, the seventh hallmark of cancer: links to genetic instability. Carcinogenesis 30(7):1073–1081
26. Fridlender ZG et al (2009) Polarization of tumor-associated neutrophil phenotype by TGF-beta: "N1" versus "N2" TAN. Cancer Cell 16(3):183–194
27. Soehnlein O (2009) An elegant defense: how neutrophils shape the immune response. Trends Immunol 30(11):511–512
28. Puga I et al (2012) B cell-helper neutrophils stimulate the diversification and production of immunoglobulin in the marginal zone of the spleen. Nat Immunol 13(2):170–180
29. Yang D et al (2009) Alarmins link neutrophils and dendritic cells. Trends Immunol 30(11):531–537
30. Ilie M et al (2011) Predictive clinical outcome of the intratumoral CD66b-positive neutrophil- to-CD8-positive T-cell ratio in patients with resectable nonsmall cell lung cancer. Cancer 118(6):1726–37
31. Gottlin EB et al (2011) The association of intratumoral germinal centers with early-stage non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 6(10):1687–1690
32. Pelletier MP et al (2001) Prognostic markers in resectable non-small cell lung cancer: a multivariate analysis. Can J Surg 44(3):180–188

33. Kazarian M, Laird-Offringa IA (2011) Small-cell lung cancer-associated autoantibodies: potential applications to cancer diagnosis, early detection, and therapy. Mol Cancer 10:33
34. Mihn DC, Kim TY (2009) Various autoantibodies are found in small-cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 64(2):250
35. Nagashio R et al (2008) Detection of tumor-specific autoantibodies in sera of patients with lung cancer. Lung Cancer 62(3):364–373
36. Amornsiripanitch N et al (2010) Complement factor H autoantibodies are associated with early stage NSCLC. Clin Cancer Res 16(12):3226–3231
37. Andersen MH et al (2006) Cytotoxic T cells. J Invest Dermatol 126(1):32–41
38. Hiraoka K et al (2006) Concurrent infiltration by CD8+ T cells and CD4+ T cells is a favourable prognostic factor in non-small-cell lung carcinoma. Br J Cancer 94(2):275–280
39. McCoy MJ et al (2012) Peripheral CD8(+) T cell proliferation is prognostic for patients with advanced thoracic malignancies. Cancer Immunol Immunother 62(3):529–39
40. Mori M et al (2000) Infiltration of CD8+ T cells in non-small cell lung cancer is associated with dedifferentiation of cancer cells, but not with prognosis. Tohoku J Exp Med 191(2): 113–118
41. Suzuki K et al (2011) 2011. Prognostic immune markers in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 17(16):5247–56
42. Trojan A et al (2004) Immune activation status of CD8+ T cells infiltrating non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 44(2):143–147
43. Wakabayashi O et al (2003) CD4+ T cells in cancer stroma, not CD8+ T cells in cancer cell nests, are associated with favorable prognosis in human non-small cell lung cancers. Cancer Sci 94(11):1003–1009
44. Wherry EJ (2011) T cell exhaustion. Nat Immunol 12(6):492–499
45. Kayser G et al (2012) Stromal CD4/CD25 positive T-cells are a strong and independent prognostic factor in non-small cell lung cancer patients, especially with adenocarcinomas. Lung Cancer 76(3):445–51
46. Ruffini E et al (2009) Clinical significance of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in lung neoplasms. Ann Thorac Surg 87(2):365–371, discussion 371-2
47. Ni XY et al (2012) TGF-beta of lung cancer microenvironment upregulates B7H1 and GITRL expression in dendritic cells and is associated with regulatory T cell generation. Oncol Rep 28(2):615–621
48. Hawrylowicz CM, O'Garra A (2005) Potential role of interleukin-10-secreting regulatory T cells in allergy and asthma. Nat Rev Immunol 5(4):271–283
49. Thornton AM, Shevach EM (1998) CD4+CD25+ immunoregulatory T cells suppress polyclonal T cell activation in vitro by inhibiting interleukin 2 production. J Exp Med 188(2):287–296
50. Fu HY et al (2013) FOXP3 and TLR4 protein expression are correlated in non-small cell lung cancer: implications for tumor progression and escape. Acta Histochem 115(2):151–157
51. Woo EY et al (2001) Regulatory CD4(+)CD25(+) T cells in tumors from patients with early-stage non-small cell lung cancer and late-stage ovarian cancer. Cancer Res 61(12): 4766–4772
52. Erfani N et al (2012) Increase of regulatory T cells in metastatic stage and CTLA-4 over expression in lymphocytes of patients with non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Lung Cancer 77(2):306–311
53. Okita R et al (2005) CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells in the peripheral blood of patients with breast cancer and non-small cell lung cancer. Oncol Rep 14(5):1269–1273
54. Dimitrakopoulos FI et al (2011) Association of FOXP3 expression with non-small cell lung cancer. Anticancer Res 31(5):1677–1683
55. Zaynagetdinov R et al (2012) Epithelial nuclear factor-kappaB signaling promotes lung carcinogenesis via recruitment of regulatory T lymphocytes. Oncogene 31(26):3164–3176
56. Tao H et al (2012) Prognostic potential of FOXP3 expression in non-small cell lung cancer cells combined with tumor-infiltrating regulatory T cells. Lung Cancer 75(1):95–101

57. Li H et al (2011) Increased prevalence of regulatory T cells in the lung cancer microenvironment: a role of thymic stromal lymphopoietin. Cancer Immunol Immunother 60(11):1587–1596
58. Sharma S et al (2005) Tumor cyclooxygenase-2/prostaglandin E2-dependent promotion of FOXP3 expression and CD4+ CD25+ T regulatory cell activities in lung cancer. Cancer Res 65(12):5211–5220
59. Zou W (2006) Regulatory T cells, tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol 6(4):295–307
60. Iwakura Y et al (2011) Functional specialization of interleukin-17 family members. Immunity 34(2):149–162
61. Zou W, Restifo NP (2010) T(H)17 cells in tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol 10(4):248–256
62. Ye ZJ et al (2010) Generation and differentiation of IL-17-producing CD4+ T cells in malignant pleural effusion. J Immunol 185(10):6348–6354
63. Li Y et al (2011) Effects of IL-17A on the occurrence of lung adenocarcinoma. Cancer Biol Ther 12(7):610–616
64. Chen X et al (2010) Increased IL-17-producing cells correlate with poor survival and lymphangiogenesis in NSCLC patients. Lung Cancer 69(3):348–354
65. Wilke CM et al (2011) Th17 cells in cancer: help or hindrance? Carcinogenesis 32(5): 643–649
66. Gallina G et al (2006) Tumors induce a subset of inflammatory monocytes with immunosuppressive activity on CD8+ T cells. J Clin Invest 116(10):2777–2790
67. Watanabe S et al (2008) Tumor-induced CD11b+ Gr-1+ myeloid cells suppress T cell sensitization in tumor-draining lymph nodes. J Immunol 181(5):3291–3300
68. Lu T et al (2011) Tumor-infiltrating myeloid cells induce tumor cell resistance to cytotoxic T cells in mice. J Clin Invest 121(10):4015–4029
69. Serafini P et al (2008) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells promote cross-tolerance in B-cell lymphoma by expanding regulatory T cells. Cancer Res 68(13):5439–5449
70. Hoechst B et al (2009) Myeloid derived suppressor cells inhibit natural killer cells in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma via the NKp30 receptor. Hepatology 50(3):799–807
71. Li H et al (2009) Cancer-expanded myeloid-derived suppressor cells induce anergy of NK cells through membrane-bound TGF-beta 1. J Immunol 182(1):240–249
72. Nausch N et al (2008) Mononuclear myeloid-derived "suppressor" cells express RAE-1 and activate natural killer cells. Blood 112(10):4080–4089
73. Cheng P et al (2008) Inhibition of dendritic cell differentiation and accumulation of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in cancer is regulated by S100A9 protein. J Exp Med 205(10):2235–2249
74. Hoechst B et al (2008) A new population of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in hepatocellular carcinoma patients induces CD4(+)CD25(+)Foxp3(+) T cells. Gastroenterology 135(1):234–243
75. Pan PY et al (2010) Immune stimulatory receptor CD40 is required for T-cell suppression and T regulatory cell activation mediated by myeloid-derived suppressor cells in cancer. Cancer Res 70(1):99–108
76. Finke J et al (2011) MDSC as a mechanism of tumor escape from sunitinib mediated anti-angiogenic therapy. Int Immunopharmacol 11(7):856–861
77. Ostrand-Rosenberg S (2010) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells: more mechanisms for inhibiting antitumor immunity. Cancer Immunol Immunother 59(10):1593–1600
78. Bronte V, Zanovello P (2005) Regulation of immune responses by L-arginine metabolism. Nat Rev Immunol 5(8):641–654
79. Gabrilovich DI, Nagaraj S (2009) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells as regulators of the immune system. Nat Rev Immunol 9(3):162–174
80. Rodriguez PC, Ochoa AC (2008) Arginine regulation by myeloid derived suppressor cells and tolerance in cancer: mechanisms and therapeutic perspectives. Immunol Rev 222: 180–191

81. Youn JI, Gabrilovich DI (2010) The biology of myeloid-derived suppressor cells: the blessing and the curse of morphological and functional heterogeneity. Eur J Immunol 40(11):2969–2975
82. Ostrand-Rosenberg S et al (2012) Cross-talk between myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC), macrophages, and dendritic cells enhances tumor-induced immune suppression. Semin Cancer Biol 22(4):275–81
83. Liu CY et al (2010) Population alterations of L-arginase- and inducible nitric oxide synthase-expressed CD11b+/CD14/CD15+/CD33+ myeloid-derived suppressor cells and CD8+ T lymphocytes in patients with advanced-stage non-small cell lung cancer. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 136(1):35–45
84. Bremnes RM et al (2011) The role of tumor-infiltrating immune cells and chronic inflammation at the tumor site on cancer development, progression, and prognosis: emphasis on non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 6(4):824–833
85. Schmid MC, Varner JA (2010) Myeloid cells in the tumor microenvironment: modulation of tumor angiogenesis and tumor inflammation. J Oncol 2010:201026
86. Lewis C, Murdoch C (2005) Macrophage responses to hypoxia: implications for tumor progression and anti-cancer therapies. Am J Pathol 167(3):627–635
87. Dai F et al (2010) The number and microlocalization of tumor-associated immune cells are associated with patient's survival time in non-small cell lung cancer. BMC Cancer 10:220
88. Kawai O et al (2008) Predominant infiltration of macrophages and CD8(+) T Cells in cancer nests is a significant predictor of survival in stage IV nonsmall cell lung cancer. Cancer 113(6):1387–1395
89. Ma J et al (2010) The M1 form of tumor-associated macrophages in non-small cell lung cancer is positively associated with survival time. BMC Cancer 10:112
90. Ohri CM et al (2009) Macrophages within NSCLC tumour islets are predominantly of a cytotoxic M1 phenotype associated with extended survival. Eur Respir J 33(1):118–126
91. Welsh TJ et al (2005) Macrophage and mast-cell invasion of tumor cell islets confers a marked survival advantage in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 23(35):8959–8967
92. Sautes-Fridman C et al (2011) Tumor microenvironment is multifaceted. Cancer Metastasis Rev 30(1):13–25
93. Becker Y (1993) Dendritic cell activity against primary tumors: an overview. In Vivo 7(3):187–191
94. Mitra R, Singh S, Khar A (2003) Antitumour immune responses. Expert Rev Mol Med 5(3):1–19
95. Kusmartsev S, Gabrilovich DI (2006) Effect of tumor-derived cytokines and growth factors on differentiation and immune suppressive features of myeloid cells in cancer. Cancer Metastasis Rev 25(3):323–331
96. Pinzon-Charry A, Maxwell T, Lopez JA (2005) Dendritic cell dysfunction in cancer: a mechanism for immunosuppression. Immunol Cell Biol 83(5):451–461
97. Shurin MR et al (2006) Intratumoral cytokines/chemokines/growth factors and tumor infiltrating dendritic cells: friends or enemies? Cancer Metastasis Rev 25(3):333–356
98. Almand B et al (2000) Clinical significance of defective dendritic cell differentiation in cancer. Clin Cancer Res 6(5):1755–1766
99. Bergeron A et al (2006) Characterisation of dendritic cell subsets in lung cancer microenvironments. Eur Respir J 28(6):1170–1177
100. Gabrilovich D (2004) Mechanisms and functional significance of tumour-induced dendritic-cell defects. Nat Rev Immunol 4(12):941–952
101. Gabrilovich DI et al (1996) Production of vascular endothelial growth factor by human tumors inhibits the functional maturation of dendritic cells. Nat Med 2(10):1096–1103
102. Laxmanan S et al (2005) Vascular endothelial growth factor impairs the functional ability of dendritic cells through Id pathways. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 334(1):193–198

103. Menetrier-Caux C et al (1998) Inhibition of the differentiation of dendritic cells from CD34(+) progenitors by tumor cells: role of interleukin-6 and macrophage colony-stimulating factor. Blood 92(12):4778–4791
104. Steinman RM (1991) The dendritic cell system and its role in immunogenicity. Annu Rev Immunol 9:271–296
105. Dumitriu IE et al (2009) Human dendritic cells produce TGF-beta 1 under the influence of lung carcinoma cells and prime the differentiation of CD4+CD25+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells. J Immunol 182(5):2795–2807
106. Mu CY et al (2011) High expression of PD-L1 in lung cancer may contribute to poor prognosis and tumor cells immune escape through suppressing tumor infiltrating dendritic cells maturation. Med Oncol 28(3):682–688
107. Schneider T et al (2011) Non-small cell lung cancer induces an immunosuppressive phenotype of dendritic cells in tumor microenvironment by upregulating B7-H3. J Thorac Oncol 6(7):1162–1168
108. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2000) The hallmarks of cancer. Cell 100(1):57–70
109. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144(5):646–674
110. Dieu-Nosjean MC et al (2008) Long-term survival for patients with non-small-cell lung cancer with intratumoral lymphoid structures. J Clin Oncol 26(27):4410–4417
111. Al-Shibli KI et al (2008) Prognostic effect of epithelial and stromal lymphocyte infiltration in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 14(16):5220–5227
112. Ito N et al (2005) Prognostic significance of T helper 1 and 2 and T cytotoxic 1 and 2 cells in patients with non-small cell lung cancer. Anticancer Res 25(3B):2027–2031
113. Petersen RP et al (2006) Tumor infiltrating Foxp3+ regulatory T-cells are associated with recurrence in pathologic stage I NSCLC patients. Cancer 107(12):2866–2872
114. Shimizu K et al (2010) Tumor-infiltrating Foxp3+ regulatory T cells are correlated with cyclooxygenase-2 expression and are associated with recurrence in resected non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 5(5):585–590
115. Fridman WH et al (2012) The immune contexture in human tumours: impact on clinical outcome. Nat Rev Cancer 12(4):298–306
116. Bindea G et al (2013) Spatiotemporal dynamics of intratumoral immune cells reveal the immune landscape in human cancer. Immunity 39(4):782–795
117. Ruffell B, Affara NI, Coussens LM (2012) Differential macrophage programming in the tumor microenvironment. Trends Immunol 33(3):119–126
118. Escribese MM, Casas M, Corbi AL (2012) Influence of low oxygen tensions on macrophage polarization. Immunobiology 217(12):1233–1240
119. Lewis CE, Hughes R (2007) Inflammation and breast cancer. Microenvironmental factors regulating macrophage function in breast tumours: hypoxia and angiopoietin-2. Breast Cancer Res 9(3):209
120. White JR et al (2004) Genetic amplification of the transcriptional response to hypoxia as a novel means of identifying regulators of angiogenesis. Genomics 83(1):1–8
121. Schreiber RD, Old LJ, Smyth MJ (2011) Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. Science 331(6024):1565–1570
122. Ruckdeschel JC et al (1972) Postoperative empyema improves survival in lung cancer. Documentation and analysis of a natural experiment. N Engl J Med 287(20):1013–1017
123. McKneally MF, Maver C, Kausel HW (1976) Regional immunotherapy of lung cancer with intrapleural B.C.G. Lancet 1(7956):377–379
124. Giaccone G et al (2005) Phase III study of adjuvant vaccination with Bec2/bacille Calmette-Guerin in responding patients with limited-disease small-cell lung cancer (European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer 08971-08971B; Silva Study). J Clin Oncol 23(28):6854–6864
125. Malmstrom PU et al (1999) 5-year follow-up of a randomized prospective study comparing mitomycin C and bacillus Calmette-Guerin in patients with superficial bladder carcinoma. Swedish-Norwegian Bladder Cancer Study Group. J Urol 161(4):1124–1127

126. O'Brien ME et al (2000) A randomized phase II study of SRL172 (Mycobacterium vaccae) combined with chemotherapy in patients with advanced inoperable non-small-cell lung cancer and mesothelioma. Br J Cancer 83(7):853–857
127. O'Brien ME et al (2004) SRL172 (killed Mycobacterium vaccae) in addition to standard chemotherapy improves quality of life without affecting survival, in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: phase III results. Ann Oncol 15(6):906–914
128. Grange JM et al (2008) The use of mycobacterial adjuvant-based agents for immunotherapy of cancer. Vaccine 26(39):4984–4990
129. Droemann D et al (2005) Human lung cancer cells express functionally active Toll-like receptor 9. Respir Res 6:1
130. Manegold C et al (2012) A phase III randomized study of gemcitabine and cisplatin with or without PF-3512676 (TLR9 agonist) as first-line treatment of advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 23(1):72–77
131. Hirsh V et al (2011) Randomized phase III trial of paclitaxel/carboplatin with or without PF-3512676 (Toll-like receptor 9 agonist) as first-line treatment for advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 29(19):2667–2674
132. Perret R et al (2013) Adjuvants that improve the ratio of antigen-specific effector to regulatory T cells enhance tumor immunity. Cancer Res 73(22):6597–6608
133. Ettinger DS, Harwood K (1988) Phase II study of recombinant beta interferon in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung carcinoma. Med Pediatr Oncol 16(1):30–32
134. Olesen BK et al (1987) Recombinant interferon A (IFL-rA) therapy of small cell and squamous cell carcinoma of the lung. A phase II study. Eur J Cancer Clin Oncol 23(7):987–989
135. Jansen RL et al (1992) Interleukin-2 and interferon-alpha in the treatment of patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Immunother (1991) 12(1):70–73
136. Jett JR et al (1994) Phase III trial of recombinant interferon gamma in complete responders with small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 12(11):2321–2326
137. Mattson K et al (1991) Recombinant interferon gamma treatment in non-small cell lung cancer. Antitumour effect and cardiotoxicity. Acta Oncol 30(5):607–610
138. van Zandwijk N et al (1997) Role of recombinant interferon-gamma maintenance in responding patients with small cell lung cancer. A randomised phase III study of the EORTC Lung Cancer Cooperative Group. Eur J Cancer 33(11):1759–1766
139. Schiller JH, Morgan-Ihrig C, Levitt ML (1995) Concomitant administration of interleukin-2 plus tumor necrosis factor in advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Am J Clin Oncol 18(1):47–51
140. Timmer-Bonte JN et al (2005) Prevention of chemotherapy-induced febrile neutropenia by prophylactic antibiotics plus or minus granulocyte colony-stimulating factor in small-cell lung cancer: a Dutch Randomized Phase III Study. J Clin Oncol 23(31):7974–7984
141. Timmer-Bonte JN et al (2008) Prophylactic G-CSF and antibiotics enable a significant dose-escalation of triplet-chemotherapy in non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 60(2):222–230
142. Spadaro M et al (2008) Lactoferrin, a major defense protein of innate immunity, is a novel maturation factor for human dendritic cells. FASEB J 22(8):2747–2757
143. Parikh PM et al (2011) Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase II study of single-agent oral talactoferrin in patients with locally advanced or metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer that progressed after chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 29(31):4129–4136
144. Ramalingam S et al (2013) Talactoferrin alfa versus placebo in patients with refractory advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (FORTIS-M trial). Ann Oncol 24(11):2875–2880
145. Pirker R (2013) EGFR-directed monoclonal antibodies in non-small cell lung cancer. Target Oncol 8(1):47–53
146. Mazieres J et al (2013) Lung cancer that harbors an HER2 mutation: epidemiologic characteristics and therapeutic perspectives. J Clin Oncol 31(16):1997–2003
147. Arnould L et al (2006) Trastuzumab-based treatment of HER2-positive breast cancer: an antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity mechanism? Br J Cancer 94(2):259–267
148. Hassan R, Ho M (2008) Mesothelin targeted cancer immunotherapy. Eur J Cancer 44(1):46–53

149. Hassan R et al (2010) Phase I clinical trial of the chimeric anti-mesothelin monoclonal antibody MORAb-009 in patients with mesothelin-expressing cancers. Clin Cancer Res 16(24):6132–6138
150. Cui J et al (2013) The efficacy of bevacizumab compared with other targeted drugs for patients with advanced NSCLC: a meta-analysis from 30 randomized controlled clinical trials. PLoS One 8(4), e62038
151. Mansfield AS et al (2013) The immunomodulatory effects of bevacizumab on systemic immunity in patients with metastatic melanoma. Oncoimmunology 2(5), e24436
152. Pardoll DM (2012) The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer 12(4):252–264
153. Aerts JG, Hegmans JP (2013) Tumor-specific cytotoxic T cells are crucial for efficacy of immunomodulatory antibodies in patients with lung cancer. Cancer Res 73(8):2381–2388
154. Robert C et al (2011) Ipilimumab plus dacarbazine for previously untreated metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med 364(26):2517–2526
155. Lynch TJ et al (2012) Ipilimumab in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin as first-line treatment in stage IIIB/IV non-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomized, double-blind, multicenter phase II study. J Clin Oncol 30(17):2046–2054
156. Calabro L et al (2013) Tremelimumab for patients with chemotherapy-resistant advanced malignant mesothelioma: an open-label, single-arm, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol 14(11):1104–1111
157. Zhang Y et al (2010) Programmed death-1 upregulation is correlated with dysfunction of tumor-infiltrating CD8+ T lymphocytes in human non-small cell lung cancer. Cell Mol Immunol 7(5):389–395
158. Topalian SL et al (2012) Safety, activity, and immune correlates of anti-PD-1 antibody in cancer. N Engl J Med 366(26):2443–2454
159. Brahmer JR et al (2012) Safety and activity of anti-PD-L1 antibody in patients with advanced cancer. N Engl J Med 366(26):2455–2465
160. Lievense LA, Hegmans JP, Aerts JG (2014) Biomarkers for immune checkpoint inhibitors. Lancet Oncol 15(1), e1
161. van der Bruggen P et al (1991) A gene encoding an antigen recognized by cytolytic T lymphocytes on a human melanoma. Science 254(5038):1643–1647
162. Jang SJ et al (2001) Activation of melanoma antigen tumor antigens occurs early in lung carcinogenesis. Cancer Res 61(21):7959–7963
163. Thomas A, Hassan R (2012) Immunotherapies for non-small-cell lung cancer and mesothelioma. Lancet Oncol 13(7):e301–e310
164. Bolli M et al (2002) Tissue microarray evaluation of Melanoma antigen E (MAGE) tumor-associated antigen expression: potential indications for specific immunotherapy and prognostic relevance in squamous cell lung carcinoma. Ann Surg 236(6):785–793, discussion 793
165. Gure AO et al (2005) Cancer-testis genes are coordinately expressed and are markers of poor outcome in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 11(22):8055–8062
166. Vansteenkiste J et al (2013) Adjuvant MAGE-A3 immunotherapy in resected non-small-cell lung cancer: Phase II Randomized Study Results. J Clin Oncol 31(19):2396–2403
167. Garcia B et al (2008) Effective inhibition of the epidermal growth factor/epidermal growth factor receptor binding by anti-epidermal growth factor antibodies is related to better survival in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer patients treated with the epidermal growth factor cancer vaccine. Clin Cancer Res 14(3):840–846
168. Rodriguez PC et al (2011) Safety, immunogenicity and preliminary efficacy of multiple-site vaccination with an Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF) based cancer vaccine in advanced non small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients. J Immune Based Ther Vaccines 9:7
169. Krug LM et al (2010) WT1 peptide vaccinations induce CD4 and CD8 T cell immune responses in patients with mesothelioma and non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother 59(10):1467–1479
170. Kim NW et al (1994) Specific association of human telomerase activity with immortal cells and cancer. Science 266(5193):2011–2015

171. Fernandez-Garcia I, Ortiz-de-Solorzano C, Montuenga LM (2008) Telomeres and telomerase in lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 3(10):1085–1088
172. Kyte JA (2009) Cancer vaccination with telomerase peptide GV1001. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 18(5):687–694
173. Brunsvig PF et al (2011) Telomerase peptide vaccination in NSCLC: a phase II trial in stage III patients vaccinated after chemoradiotherapy and an 8-year update on a phase I/II trial. Clin Cancer Res 17(21):6847–6857
174. Henriksen-Lacey M et al (2011) Liposomal vaccine delivery systems. Expert Opin Drug Deliv 8(4):505–519
175. Sangha R, Butts C (2007) L-BLP25: a peptide vaccine strategy in non small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 13(15 Pt 2):s4652–s4654
176. Decoster L, Wauters I, Vansteenkiste JF (2012) Vaccination therapy for non-small-cell lung cancer: review of agents in phase III development. Ann Oncol 23(6):1387–1393
177. Butts C et al (2005) Randomized phase IIB trial of BLP25 liposome vaccine in stage IIIB and IV non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 23(27):6674–6681
178. Kroemer G, Zitvogel L, Galluzzi L (2013) Victories and deceptions in tumor immunology: Stimuvax. Oncoimmunology 2(1), e23687
179. Ramlau R et al (2008) A phase II study of Tg4010 (Mva-Muc1-Il2) in association with chemotherapy in patients with stage III/IV non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 3(7):735–744
180. Quoix E et al (2011) Therapeutic vaccination with TG4010 and first-line chemotherapy in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a controlled phase 2B trial. Lancet Oncol 12(12):1125–1133
181. Thomas AM et al (2004) Mesothelin-specific CD8(+) T cell responses provide evidence of in vivo cross-priming by antigen-presenting cells in vaccinated pancreatic cancer patients. J Exp Med 200(3):297–306
182. Le DT et al (2012) A live-attenuated Listeria vaccine (ANZ-100) and a live-attenuated Listeria vaccine expressing mesothelin (CRS-207) for advanced cancers: phase I studies of safety and immune induction. Clin Cancer Res 18(3):858–868
183. Kochenderfer JN, Gress RE (2007) A comparison and critical analysis of preclinical anticancer vaccination strategies. Exp Biol Med (Maywood) 232(9):1130–1141
184. Nemunaitis J et al (2004) Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor gene-modified autologous tumor vaccines in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 96(4):326–331
185. Nemunaitis J et al (2006) Phase 1/2 trial of autologous tumor mixed with an allogeneic GVAX vaccine in advanced-stage non-small-cell lung cancer. Cancer Gene Ther 13(6):555–562
186. Ikushima H, Miyazono K (2010) TGFbeta signalling: a complex web in cancer progression. Nat Rev Cancer 10(6):415–424
187. Kong F et al (1999) Plasma transforming growth factor-beta1 level before radiotherapy correlates with long term outcome of patients with lung carcinoma. Cancer 86(9):1712–1719
188. Nemunaitis J et al (2006) Phase II study of belagenpumatucel-L, a transforming growth factor beta-2 antisense gene-modified allogeneic tumor cell vaccine in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 24(29):4721–4730
189. Ballen K, Stewart FM (1997) Adoptive immunotherapy. Curr Opin Oncol 9(6):579–583
190. Restifo NP, Dudley ME, Rosenberg SA (2012) Adoptive immunotherapy for cancer: harnessing the T cell response. Nat Rev Immunol 12(4):269–281
191. Zheng YW et al (2013) Current adoptive immunotherapy in non-small cell lung cancer and potential influence of therapy outcome. Cancer Invest 31(3):197–205
192. Perroud MW Jr et al (2011) Mature autologous dendritic cell vaccines in advanced non-small cell lung cancer: a phase I pilot study. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 30:65
193. Wang K et al (2009) An autologous therapeutic dendritic cell vaccine transfected with total lung carcinoma RNA stimulates cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses against non-small cell lung cancer. Immunol Invest 38(7):665–680

194. Zhou Q et al (2008) A dendritic cell-based tumour vaccine for lung cancer: full-length XAGE-1b protein-pulsed dendritic cells induce specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in vitro. Clin Exp Immunol 153(3):392–400
195. Hegmans JP et al (2010) Consolidative dendritic cell-based immunotherapy elicits cytotoxicity against malignant mesothelioma. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 181(12):1383–1390
196. Kimura H, Yamaguchi Y (1995) Adjuvant immunotherapy with interleukin 2 and lymphokine-activated killer cells after noncurative resection of primary lung cancer. Lung Cancer 13(1):31–44
197. Kimura H, Yamaguchi Y (1997) A phase III randomized study of interleukin-2 lymphokine-activated killer cell immunotherapy combined with chemotherapy or radiotherapy after curative or noncurative resection of primary lung carcinoma. Cancer 80(1):42–49
198. Hontscha C et al (2011) Clinical trials on CIK cells: first report of the international registry on CIK cells (IRCC). J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 137(2):305–310
199. Hui KM (2012) CIK cells–current status, clinical perspectives and future prospects–the good news. Expert Opin Biol Ther 12(6):659–661
200. Li R et al (2012) Autologous cytokine-induced killer cell immunotherapy in lung cancer: a phase II clinical study. Cancer Immunol Immunother 61(11):2125–2133
201. Iwai K et al (2012) Extended survival observed in adoptive activated T lymphocyte immunotherapy for advanced lung cancer: results of a multicenter historical cohort study. Cancer Immunol Immunother 61(10):1781–1790
202. Nakajima J et al (2010) A phase I study of adoptive immunotherapy for recurrent non-small-cell lung cancer patients with autologous gammadelta T cells. Eur J Cardiothorac Surg 37(5):1191–1197
203. Sakamoto M et al (2011) Adoptive immunotherapy for advanced non-small cell lung cancer using zoledronate-expanded gammadeltaTcells: a phase I clinical study. J Immunother 34(2):202–211
204. Iliopoulou EG et al (2010) A phase I trial of adoptive transfer of allogeneic natural killer cells in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother 59(12):1781–1789
205. Dhodapkar MV, Richter J (2011) Harnessing natural killer T (NKT) cells in human myeloma: progress and challenges. Clin Immunol 140(2):160–166
206. Motohashi S, Nakayama T (2009) Natural killer T cell-mediated immunotherapy for malignant diseases. Front Biosci (Schol Ed) 1:108–116
207. Wolchok JD et al (2009) Guidelines for the evaluation of immune therapy activity in solid tumors: immune-related response criteria. Clin Cancer Res 15(23):7412–7420
208. Cornelissen R et al (2012) New roads open up for implementing immunotherapy in mesothelioma. Clin Dev Immunol 2012:927240
209. Hegmans JP, Aerts JG (2013) Immunological profiling as a means to invigorate personalized cancer therapy. Oncoimmunology 2(8), e25236
210. Kershaw MH et al (2013) Enhancing immunotherapy using chemotherapy and radiation to modify the tumor microenvironment. Oncoimmunology 2(9), e25962
211. Galluzzi L et al (2012) The secret ally: immunostimulation by anticancer drugs. Nat Rev Drug Discov 11(3):215–233
212. Ko HJ et al (2007) A combination of chemoimmunotherapies can efficiently break self-tolerance and induce antitumor immunity in a tolerogenic murine tumor model. Cancer Res 67(15):7477–7486
213. Suzuki E et al (2005) Gemcitabine selectively eliminates splenic Gr-1+/CD11b+ myeloid suppressor cells in tumor-bearing animals and enhances antitumor immune activity. Clin Cancer Res 11(18):6713–6721
214. Fridlender ZG et al (2010) Chemotherapy delivered after viral immunogene therapy augments antitumor efficacy via multiple immune-mediated mechanisms. Mol Ther 18(11):1947–1959
215. Nowak AK, Robinson BW, Lake RA (2003) Synergy between chemotherapy and immunotherapy in the treatment of established murine solid tumors. Cancer Res 63(15):4490–4496

216. Belani CP et al (2013) Phase 2 trial of erlotinib with or without PF-3512676 (CPG 7909, a Toll-like receptor 9 agonist) in patients with advanced recurrent EGFR-positive non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Biol Ther 14(7):557–563
217. Yamada K et al (2010) Phase I study of TLR9 agonist PF-3512676 in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Cancer Sci 101(1):188–195
218. Wang YY et al (2011) The variation of CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells in the periphery blood and tumor microenvironment of non-small cell lung cancer patients and the downregulation effects induced by CpG ODN. Target Oncol 6(3):147–154
219. Bottomley A et al (2008) Symptom and quality of life results of an international randomised phase III study of adjuvant vaccination with Bec2/BCG in responding patients with limited disease small-cell lung cancer. Eur J Cancer 44(15):2178–2184
220. Gupta P et al (2008) Targeted combinatorial therapy of non-small cell lung carcinoma using a GST-fusion protein of full-length or truncated MDA-7/IL-24 with Tarceva. J Cell Physiol 215(3):827–836
221. Galustian C, Dalgleish A (2009) Lenalidomide: a novel anticancer drug with multiple modalities. Expert Opin Pharmacother 10(1):125–133
222. Elkinson S, McCormack PL (2013) Pomalidomide: first global approval. Drugs 73(6):595–604
223. Bass KK, Mastrangelo MJ (1998) Immunopotentiation with low-dose cyclophosphamide in the active specific immunotherapy of cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother 47(1):1–12
224. Ghiringhelli F et al (2007) Metronomic cyclophosphamide regimen selectively depletes CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells and restores T and NK effector functions in end stage cancer patients. Cancer Immunol Immunother 56(5):641–648
225. Kawai M et al (2005) Inhibitory and stimulatory effects of cyclosporine A on the development of regulatory T cells in vivo. Transplantation 79(9):1073–1077
226. Litzinger MT et al (2007) IL-2 immunotoxin denileukin diftitox reduces regulatory T cells and enhances vaccine-mediated T-cell immunity. Blood 110(9):3192–3201
227. Hayes TG et al (2006) Phase I trial of oral talactoferrin alfa in refractory solid tumors. Invest New Drugs 24(3):233–240
228. Germano G et al (2013) Role of macrophage targeting in the antitumor activity of trabectedin. Cancer Cell 23(2):249–262
229. Hoang T et al (2012) Randomized phase III study of thoracic radiation in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin with or without thalidomide in patients with stage III non-small-cell lung cancer: the ECOG 3598 study. J Clin Oncol 30(6):616–622
230. Young RJ et al (2012) Analysis of circulating angiogenic biomarkers from patients in two phase III trials in lung cancer of chemotherapy alone or chemotherapy and thalidomide. Br J Cancer 106(6):1153–1159
231. Kruijtzer CM et al (2002) Phase II and pharmacologic study of weekly oral paclitaxel plus cyclosporine in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 20(23):4508–4516
232. Gerena-Lewis M et al (2009) A Phase II trial of Denileukin Diftitox in patients with previously treated advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Am J Clin Oncol 32(3):269–273
233. Digumarti R et al (2011) A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase II study of oral talactoferrin in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel in previously untreated locally advanced or metastatic non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 6(6):1098–1103
234. Kelly RJ, Giaccone G (2010) The role of talactoferrin alpha in the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer. Expert Opin Biol Ther 10(9):1379–1386
235. Sessa C et al (2009) Phase I clinical and pharmacokinetic study of trabectedin and cisplatin in solid tumours. Eur J Cancer 45(12):2116–2122
236. Massuti B et al (2012) Trabectedin in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC) with XPG and/or ERCC1 overexpression and BRCA1 underexpression and pretreated with platinum. Lung Cancer 76(3):354–361

237. Iclozan C et al (2013) Therapeutic regulation of myeloid-derived suppressor cells and immune response to cancer vaccine in patients with extensive stage small cell lung cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother 62(5):909–918
238. Hanna N et al (2006) Phase II trial of cetuximab in patients with previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 24(33):5253–5258
239. Pirker R et al (2009) Cetuximab plus chemotherapy in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (FLEX): an open-label randomised phase III trial. Lancet 373(9674): 1525–1531
240. Clamon G et al (2005) Lack of trastuzumab activity in nonsmall cell lung carcinoma with overexpression of erb-B2: 39810: a phase II trial of Cancer and Leukemia Group B. Cancer 103(8):1670–1675
241. Lara PN Jr et al (2004) Trastuzumab plus docetaxel in HER2/neu-positive non-small-cell lung cancer: a California Cancer Consortium screening and phase II trial. Clin Lung Cancer 5(4):231–236
242. Hassan R et al (2007) Phase I study of SS1P, a recombinant anti-mesothelin immunotoxin given as a bolus I.V. infusion to patients with mesothelin-expressing mesothelioma, ovarian, and pancreatic cancers. Clin Cancer Res 13(17):5144–5149
243. Barlesi F et al (2013) Randomized phase III trial of maintenance bevacizumab with or without pemetrexed after first-line induction with bevacizumab, cisplatin, and pemetrexed in advanced nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer: AVAPERL (MO22089). J Clin Oncol 31(24):3004–11
244. Reck M et al (2013) Ipilimumab in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin as first-line therapy in extensive-disease-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomized, double-blind, multicenter phase 2 trial. Ann Oncol 24(1):75–83
245. Brezicka T et al (2000) Reactivity of monoclonal antibodies with ganglioside antigens in human small cell lung cancer tissues. Lung Cancer 28(1):29–36
246. Fernandez LE et al (2010) NGcGM3 ganglioside: a privileged target for cancer vaccines. Clin Dev Immunol 2010:814397
247. Nemunaitis J et al (2009) Phase II trial of Belagenpumatucel-L, a TGF-beta2 antisense gene modified allogeneic tumor vaccine in advanced non small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients. Cancer Gene Ther 16(8):620–624
248. Butts C et al (2011) Updated survival analysis in patients with stage IIIB or IV non-small-cell lung cancer receiving BLP25 liposome vaccine (L-BLP25): phase IIB randomized, multicenter, open-label trial. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 137(9):1337–1342
249. Grant SC et al (1999) Long survival of patients with small cell lung cancer after adjuvant treatment with the anti-idiotypic antibody BEC2 plus Bacillus Calmette-Guerin. Clin Cancer Res 5(6):1319–1323
250. Vazquez AM et al (2012) Racotumomab: an anti-idiotype vaccine related to N-glycolyl-containing gangliosides - preclinical and clinical data. Front Oncol 2:150
251. Rosenberg SA et al (1985) Observations on the systemic administration of autologous lymphokine-activated killer cells and recombinant interleukin-2 to patients with metastatic cancer. N Engl J Med 313(23):1485–1492
252. Ma Y et al (2012) Cytokine-induced killer cells in the treatment of patients with solid carcinomas: a systematic review and pooled analysis. Cytotherapy 14(4):483–493
253. Terme M et al (2008) Natural killer cell-directed therapies: moving from unexpected results to successful strategies. Nat Immunol 9(5):486–494
254. Hirschowitz EA et al (2004) Autologous dendritic cell vaccines for non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 22(14):2808–2815
255. Hirschowitz EA et al (2007) Immunization of NSCLC patients with antigen-pulsed immature autologous dendritic cells. Lung Cancer 57(3):365–372
256. Um SJ et al (2010) Phase I study of autologous dendritic cell tumor vaccine in patients with non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 70(2):188–194
257. Madan RA et al (2010) Therapeutic cancer vaccines in prostate cancer: the paradox of improved survival without changes in time to progression. Oncologist 15(9):969–975

Anti-angiogenesis in Personalized Therapy of Lung Cancer

Peter M. Ellis

Abstract Upregulation of angiogenesis is a frequent occurrence in lung cancer and is reported to represent a negative prognostic factor. This provides a rationale for the development and evaluation of anti-angiogenic agents. To date bevacizumab, a monoclonal antibody directed against serum VEGF, is the only anti-angiogenic agent that has demonstrated improved overall survival for patients with lung cancer. Meta-analysis of trials of bevacizumab in combination with platinum-based chemotherapy for NSCLC, show a 10 % reduction in the risk of death (HR 0.90, 95 % CI 0.81–0.99). However, therapy with bevacizumab is limited to NSCLC patients with non-squamous histology, good performance status, no brain metastases and the absence of bleeding or thrombotic disorders. More recently, similar survival was observed in a non bevacizumab containing regimen of carboplatin, pemetrexed and maintenance pemetrexed.

Multiple oral anti-angiogenic compounds have been evaluated in NSCLC, both in first-line therapy, or upon disease progression. The majority of agents have shown some evidence of activity, but none have clearly demonstrated improvements in overall survival. Increased toxicities have been observed, including an increased risk of death for some agents, limiting their development. Promising data exist for sunitinib in patients with heavily pre-treated NSCLC, and nintedanib in combination with docetaxel, as second-line therapy for NSCLC. However, these findings require validation. Currently, there is no established role for anti-angiogenic therapy in SCLC, although there is some promise for sunitinib as maintenance therapy following platinum and etoposide chemotherapy.

The challenge for anti-angiogenic therapy is to understand whether treatment effects in a subpopulation, are lost among a larger unselected population of patients. There is a need for additional translational research to identify predictive biomarkers for anti-angiogenic therapy.

Keywords Anti-angiogenic therapy • NSCLC • SCLC • VEGFR • PDGFR • FGFR • Bevacizumab • VEGF-trap • Tyrosine kinase inhibitors • Predictive biomarkers

P.M. Ellis (✉)
Department of Oncology, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Juravinski Cancer Centre, Hamilton, ON, Canada
e-mail: ellisp@hhsc.ca

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_5

Rationale for Anti-Angiogenesis in Lung Cancer

Angiogenesis is a complex process occurring throughout the body and subject to many pro and anti-angiogenic regulatory factors. Beyond normal physiological function though, new blood vessel formation and upregulation of angiogenesis is frequently observed in many cancers, including lung cancer [1] (Fig. 1).

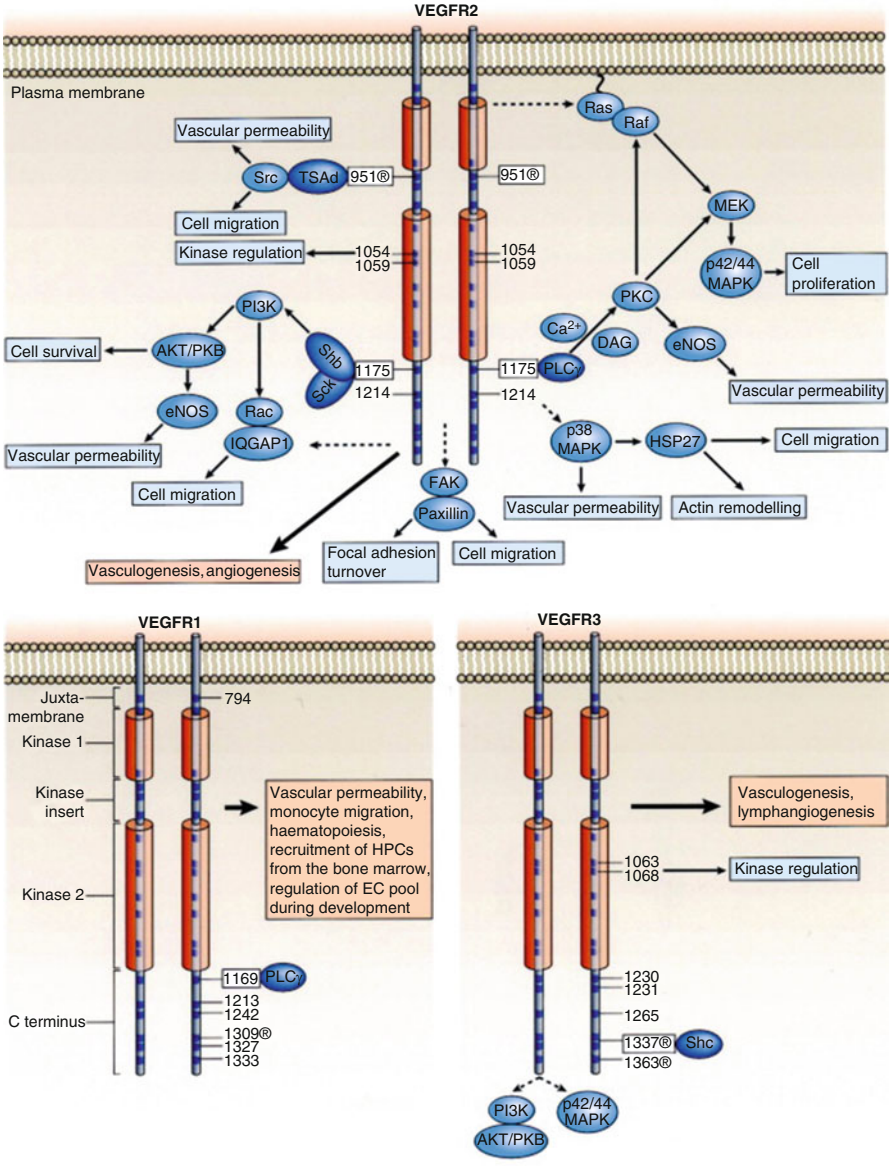


Fig. 1 Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor signal transduction (Reprinted with permission from Roskoski. CROH 2007 62(3):179–213)

A variety of pro-angiogenic factors exist, including vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), [2, 3] platelet derived growth factor (PDGF) [4] and fibroblast derived growth factor (FGF) [5]. Recognition of the importance of these factors in tumor growth and development has resulted in the development and evaluation of multiple therapeutic agents as potential anticancer therapies [6].

The role of serum VEGF (VEGF-A) in tumor growth and development has been widely studied. Serum VEGF activates the VEGF receptor (VEGFR-2) resulting in downstream signalling through activation of targets including PI3-kinase, resulting in stimulation of cell survival and proliferation pathways [7, 8]. Overexpression of VEGF-A appears to be a negative prognostic factor for survival [9]. Given its role in tumor progression and negative impact on survival, the VEGF/VEGF-R pathway has been the focus of extensive therapeutic evaluation for anti-angiogenic agents.

The Platelet Derived Growth Factor (PDGF) family of receptors represent an additional pro-angiogenic pathway. PDGF results in stimulation of PDGF receptor α (PDGFR-α) and PDGF receptor β (PDGFR-β) [4, 10] resulting in downstream signalling through PI3K and extracellular signal-regulated kinase (Erk) [11]. In vitro data suggest that PDGFR expression in tumors is a mechanism of resistance to VEGF directed therapy and provide a rationale for combined VEGF and PDGF directed therapy [12, 13].

Fibroblast Growth Factor (FGF) and its receptor represent a further anti-angiogenic target [14]. Similar to VEGF and PDGF, ligand binding causes receptor dimerization, activation of the tyrosine kinase domain, and stimulation of downstream targets, including PI3K and the mitogen-activated protein kinase (Mek)-Erk pathways [5]. In vitro data suggest synergism between FGF, VEGF, and PDGF pathways in stimulating angiogenesis and cellular growth [15, 16]. Resistance to anti-VEGF therapy may be due in part to upregulation of compensatory angiogenic signaling pathways (cross-talk), such as PDGF and FGF, therefore, inhibition of multiple pro-angiogenic pathways may represent a rational treatment strategy for patients with NSCLC.

These data provide a rationale for the evaluation of agents inhibiting VEGF, PDGF, or FGF as treatment options for lung cancer. Anti-angiogenic agents have been widely evaluated in combination with standard systemic therapies. There are several proposed mechanisms of action through which anti-angiogenic therapies can provide further benefit to the therapeutic effect of other systemic treatments [6]. Firstly these agents may normalize tumor vasculature and improve delivery of cytotoxic agents. Secondly, they may prevent rapid tumor cell repopulation after cytotoxic drugs. Lastly they may augment the anti-vascular effects of chemotherapy. At present, bevacizumab, a monoclonal antibody directed against VEGF-A, is the only anti-angiogenic agent approved as a treatment for lung cancer [17]. Additional strategies target receptor tyrosine kinases for VEGFR, PDGFR and FGFR, as well as vascular disrupting agents (Table 1). Clinical data for all these of agents are summarized in the following sections.

Table 1 Summary of mechanism of action for anti-angiogenic agents

Drug	VEGF	VEGFR	PDGFR	c-kit	Raf	Flt-3	RET	Pan-Her	MET	FGFR	EGFR	Src
Bevacizumab	✓											
Sorafenib		R-2&3	β	✓	✓	✓						
Sunitinib		R-1,2&3	α/β	✓		✓	✓					
Cediranib		R-1,2&3	α/β	✓								
Axitanib		R-1,2&3	β	✓								
Motesanib		R-1,2&3	✓	✓			✓					
Linifanib		R-1,2&3	✓									
BMS-690514		✓						✓				
MGCD265		✓							✓			
Brivanib		R-2								R-1		
Vandetanib		R-2&3					✓				✓	
BIBF1120		R-1,2&3	α/β			✓				R-1,2&3		✓
Pazopanib		R-1,2&3	α/β	✓						R-1,3		
Ramucirumab		R-2										
Aflibercept	VEGF-A&B											

The Role of Bevacizumab in the Treatment of NSCLC

Bevacizumab in the First-Line Therapy of NSCLC

Bevacizumab is a monoclonal antibody directed towards VEGF-A, and is the only anti-angiogenic agent to date, that has been shown to improve overall survival in lung cancer [17]. Toxicity concerns, including venous thromboembolic disease and fatal hemorrhage were observed in the initial randomized phase II trial [18]. This limited further development of bevacizumab in NSCLC to good performance status patients with non-squamous histology and no history of thrombosis, bleeding, gross hemoptysis, or brain metastases.

Five randomized trials have evaluated the addition of bevacizumab to standard platinum-based chemotherapy as first-line therapy for advanced and metastatic NSCLC (Table 2) [17–22]. The Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) 4599 trial randomized patients to carboplatin, paclitaxel with or without bevacizumab 15 mg/kg [17]. Greater efficacy was observed for patients receiving chemotherapy plus bevacizumab, including higher response rates (RR; 35 % vs. 15 %; $p<0.001$), longer progression free survival (PFS; 6.2 vs. 4.5 months; hazard ratio [HR], 0.66; 95 % confidence interval [CI], 0.57–0.77) and improved overall survival (OS; 12.3 vs. 10.3 months; HR, 0.79; 95 % CI, 0.67–0.92). The Avastin in Lung Cancer trial (AVAiL), evaluated the addition of two dose levels of bevacizumab (7.5 and 15 mg/kg) to cisplatin and gemcitabine chemotherapy. Significant improvements were observed in response rates and PFS for patients randomized to either dose of bevacizumab, compared with cisplatin and gemcitabine alone [20]. However, no improvement was observed in OS for patients randomized to bevacizumab 7.5 mg/kg (HR, 0.93; 95 % CI, 0.78–1.11), or 15 mg/kg (HR, 1.03; 95 % CI, 0.86–1.23) [21]. Two additional trials done in Japan and China provide confirmatory data regarding the efficacy of bevacizumab in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel [19, 22]. Both demonstrate improvements in RR and PFS.

In all of these trials, bevacizumab was administered as maintenance therapy until disease progression. This strategy has not been formally evaluated, although retrospective review of data from both the ECOG 4599 trial and the US Oncology network suggests that patients continuing bevacizumab until disease progression experienced longer PFS and overall survival [23, 24].

Two meta-analyses of platinum-based chemotherapy with or without bevacizumab both report a significant improvement in OS for patients randomized to receive bevacizumab [25, 26]. Soria et al, report a 10 % reduction in the risk of death from the addition of bevacizumab to chemotherapy (HR 0.90, 95 % CI 0.81–0.99) [25]. Significant improvements were also observed in response rate and PFS [26]. However, the addition of bevacizumab to platinum-based chemotherapy is associated with increased toxicities. In the ECOG 4599 trial, patients randomized to chemotherapy plus bevacizumab experienced more grade 3–5 neutropenia ($p=0.002$), thrombocytopenia ($p=0.04$), febrile neutropenia ($p=0.02$), hyponatremia ($p=0.02$), hypertension ($p<0.001$), proteinuria ($p<0.001$), headache ($p=0.003$), rash/desquamation

Table 2 Summary of randomized trials evaluating the addition of bevacizumab to systemic therapy for NSCLC

Trial	Design	Intervention	Number	ORR	PFS	OS	QoL
First-line therapy							
Johnson [18]	Randomized phase II	Cb+Pac+Bev 7.5 mg/kg Cb+Pac+Bev 15 mg/kg Cb+Pac	35 32 32	31.5 % 28.1 % 18.8 %	7.4 m 4.3 m 4.2 m	17.7 m 11.6 m 14.9 m	NA
ECOG4599 [17]	Phase III	Cb+Pac+Bev 15 mg/kg Cb+Pac	434 444	35 % 15 % P<0.001	6.2 m 4.5 m HR 0.66 (0.57–0.77)	12.3 m 10.3 m HR 0.79 (0.67–0.92)	NA
AVAiL [20, 21]	Phase III	Cis-Gem+Bev 15 mg/kg Cis-Gem+Bev 7.5 mg/kg Cis-Gem+Plac	351 345 347	30.5 % 34.1 % 20.1 %	6.5 m (HR 0.82, p=0.03) 6.7 m HR (0.79, p=0.003) 6.1 m	13.4 m (HR 1.03, 0.86–1.23) 13.6 m (HR 0.93, 0.78–1.11) 13.1 m	NA
JO19907 [19]	Randomized Phase II	Cb+Pac+bev 15 mg/kg Cb+Pac	121 59	60.7 % 31 %	6.9 m 5.9 m (HR 0.61, 0.42–0.89)	22.8 m 23.4 m (HR 0.99, 0.65–1.50)	NA
BEYOND [22]	Phase III	Cb+Pac+Bev 15 mg/kg Cb+Pac+Plac	138 138	54.4 % 23.3 %	9.2 m 6.5 m (HR 0.40, 0.29–0.54)		NA
AVAPERL [33, 34]	Phase III	Cis+Pem+Bev 7.5 mg/kg then randomized to maintenance Bev 7.5 mg/kg+Pem Bev 7.5 mg/kg	376 128 125	22.7 %	7.4 m 3.7 m (HR 0.48, 0.35–0.66)	NR 12.8 m (HR 0.75, 0.47–1.19)	EORTC QLQ-30 and LC13. No difference in global QoL. Role function, fatigue and appetite favour bev. Pain favour bev + pem

Point Break [35]	Phase III	Cb+Pem+Bev 15 mg/kg → Bev+Pem Cb+Pac+Bev 15 mg/kg → Bev	472 467	34 % 33 %	6.0 m 5.6 m (HR 0.83, 0.71–0.96)	13.4 m 12.6 m (HR 1.0, 0.86–1.16)	NA
Pronounce [36]	Phase III	Cb+Pem → Pem Cb+Pac+Bev 15 mg/kg → Bev	182 179	23.6 % 27.4 %	G4PFS 3.9 m 2.9 m (HR 0.85, 0.70–1.04)	10.5 m 11.7 m (HR 1.07, 0.83–1.36)	NA
Second line therapy							
Herbst [40]	Randomized phase II	Doc/Pem+Bev 15 mg/kg Erlo+Bev 15 mg/kg Doc/Pem+Plac	40 39 41	12.5 % 17.9 % 12.2 %	4.8 m (HR 0.66, 0.38–1.16) 4.4 m (HR 0.72. 0.42–1.23) 3.0 m	12.6 m (HR 0.71, 0.41–1.21) 13.7 m (HR 0.78, 0.42–1.23) 8.6 m	NA
BeTa [39]	Phase III	Erl+Bev 15 mg/kg Erl+Plac	319 317	13 % 6 %	3.4 m 1.7 m (HR 0.62, 0.52–0.75)	9.3 m 9.2 m (HR 0.97, 0.80–1.18)	NA

Cb carboplatin, *Pac* paclitaxel, *Bev* bevacizumab, *NA* not assessed, *Cis* cisplatin, *Gem* gemcitabine, *Plac* placebo, *Pem* pemetrexed, *G4PFS* progression free survival without grade 4 toxicity, *Doc* docetaxel, *Erl* erlotinib

($p=0.02$), and bleeding events ($p<0.001$). There were 15 treatment-related deaths, including 5 due to pulmonary hemorrhage [17]. A similar profile of adverse events was observed in the AVAiL trial.

Given the toxicity concerns with bevacizumab, a variety of sub group analyses have been performed on these trials to identify subgroups of patients who derive greater benefit from bevacizumab therapy. In the ECOG 4599 trial, a larger improvement in overall survival was observed in patients with adenocarcinoma histology [27]. The median survival was 14.2 months compared with 10.3 months in the adenocarcinoma subgroup (HR 0.69, 95 %CI 0.58–0.83). Subgroup analyses of Asian patients in the AVAiL trial suggest that the addition of bevacizumab may improve survival in this group of patients [28]. Biomarkers including serum VEGF, intracellular adhesion molecule (ICAM), βFGF have all been evaluated as predictive biomarkers for bevacizumab. While ICAM was prognostic for improved survival and both ICAM and VEGF were predictive for response rates, no biomarker to date has been shown to predict a differential effect on OS for patients receiving bevacizumab. The onset of hypertension, a known side effect of bevacizumab, has also been evaluated as a predictive biomarker of efficacy [29]. However, a combined analysis of seven trials including disease sites other than lung cancer, did not support hypertension as a predictive biomarker. Therefore none of the biomarkers evaluated to date, are predictive for an improvement in overall survival from bevacizumab [30]. Therefore, it is not possible to further define subgroups of patients to receive bevacizumab therapy.

Competing therapeutic strategies to bevacizumab have emerged over recent years. Maintenance therapy with pemetrexed following initial platinum-doublet chemotherapy has been shown to improve survival in advanced NSCLC [31, 32]. Therefore, additional trials have tried to evaluate the role of pemetrexed, in bevacizumab eligible patients. Two trials have incorporated maintenance pemetrexed therapy in patients receiving bevacizumab. The AVAPERL trial randomized patients to maintenance therapy with bevacizumab alone (Table 2), or in combination with pemetrexed, following induction therapy with cisplatin, pemetrexed plus bevacizumab [33]. Three hundred and seventy six patients were registered and 253 randomized to maintenance therapy. PFS, the primary outcome, was prolonged in patients receiving maintenance bevacizumab plus pemetrexed compared with bevacizumab alone (7.4 m vs. 3.7 m HR 0.48, 95 %CI 0.35–0.66). AVAPERL failed to show a significant difference in overall survival as a secondary endpoint (HR 0.75, 95 %CI 0.47–1.19). Global quality of life (QoL), assessed by the EORTC QLQ-30, was similar between the two arms, although role function, fatigue and appetite favoured the combination of bevacizumab and pemetrexed [34]. Similarly, the Point Break trial evaluated the addition of pemetrexed to maintenance bevacizumab [35]. Patients were randomized to carboplatin, paclitaxel, bevacizumab then maintenance bevacizumab, versus carboplatin, pemetrexed, bevacizumab then maintenance pemetrexed plus bevacizumab. There was a modest improvement in PFS (6 m vs. 5.6 m, HR 0.83, 95 %CI 0.71–0.96), but no improvement in overall survival (13.4 m vs. 12.6 m, HR 1.0, 95 %CI 0.86–1.16). Maintenance therapy with pemetrexed in addition to bevacizumab should not be considered the standard of care at this time in the absence of improved overall survival.

One additional trial (Pronounce) compared carboplatin, paclitaxel plus bevacizumab with a non-bevacizumab regimen of carboplatin, pemetrexed then maintenance pemetrexed [36]. The primary outcome was a composite of progression free survival without grade 4 toxicity. Similar response rates, PFS and overall survival were observed between the two arms, suggesting that bevacizumab may not add to the efficacy of more effective chemotherapy. Currently, bevacizumab is widely used in combination with platinum-based chemotherapy and has been incorporated into NSCLC treatment algorithms [37]. It does have significant incremental toxicity and data from the Pronounce trial suggest that cisplatin or carboplatin plus pemetrexed followed by maintenance pemetrexed provides an alternative to bevacizumab based therapy.

Bevacizumab in the Second Line Therapy of Advanced NSCLC

There has been some interest in continuation of bevacizumab beyond progression, however, there are no data from randomized trials to support this. There is an ongoing trial (AVaALL) evaluating this strategy [38]. However, two trials have evaluated the addition of bevacizumab to erlotinib in the second-line setting [39, 40]. Herbst et al. [40], conducted a randomized phase II trial comparing the addition of bevacizumab to either second-line chemotherapy, or erlotinib. Response rates were highest with the combination of erlotinib plus bevacizumab (Table 2) and improvements in PFS and OS were seen with both bevacizumab containing arms. Subsequently, the phase III BeTa trial randomized patients to erlotinib plus bevacizumab versus erlotinib alone [39]. Significant improvements were observed in RR (13 % vs. 6 %) and PFS (3.4 m vs. 1.7 m, HR 0.62, 95 %CI 0.52–0.75). However, there was no improvement in overall survival (9.3 m vs. 9.2 m, HR 0.97, 95 %CI 0.80–1.18). As a result, there are no data currently supporting the use of bevacizumab as second-line therapy in combination with either erlotinib or chemotherapy.

Other Intravenous Anti-Angiogenic Compounds Evaluated in NSCLC

Ramucirumab

Ramucirumab is an IGG1 humanized monoclonal antibody targeting the VEGFR-2 receptor. It is being evaluated in a number of disease sites including NSCLC. A phase II trial of ramucirumab in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel was reported at the American Society of Clinical Oncology meeting in 2010 (Table 3) [41]. Data were reported on 31 patients with NSCLC (all histologies were allowed). There were 10 responses in 15 evaluable patients (RR 67 %). Detailed toxicity information was not available.

Table 3 Other intravenous anti-angiogenic compounds that have been evaluated in NSCLC

Trial	Design	Intervention	Number	ORR	PFS	OS	**QoL**
First-line therapy							
Ramucirumab							
Camidge [41]	Phase I	Cb+Pac+Ram	22 evaluable	10/15 (67 %)	5.7 m (95 % CI 5.62–5.75)	NR	NA
Doebele [42]	Randomized phase II	Cis/Cb+Pem+Ram 10 mg/kg → Pem+Ram Cis/Cb+Pem → Pem	69 71	49.3 % 38 %	7.2 m (HR 0.75, 90 % CI 0.55–1.03) 5.6 m	13.9 m (HR 0.83, 90 % CI 0.56–1.22) 10.4 m	NA
Aflibercept							
Chen [44]	Phase II	Cis+Pem+Aflib	42	26.3 %	5 m (95 % CI 4.3–7.1 m)	NR	Trial stopped early because 3 cases RPLS
Vadimezan							
McKeage [47]	Randomized phase II	Cb+Pac+Vad → Vad Cb+Pac	37 36	34.4 % 29 %	5.4 m (HR 0.86, 0.5–1.4) 4.4 m	14.0 m (HR 0.73, 0.39–1.38) 8.8 m	NA
ATTRACT-1 [48]	Phase III	Cb+Pac+Vad → Vad Cb+Pac+Plac → Plac	649 650	24.7 % 24.6 %	5.5 m (HR 1.04, 0.–91 1.19) 5.5 m	13.4 m (HR 1.01, 0.85–1.19) 12.7 m	EORTC QLQ30 – no differences observed
Fosbretabulin							
FALCON [110]	Randomized phase II	Carb+Pac+Bev+Fos Carb+Pac+Bev	31 29	55 % 38 %	8.6 m (HR 0.89, 0.46–1.73) 8.8 m	–	NA
Second-line therapy							
VITAL [45]	Phase III	Doc+Aflib Doc+Plac	456 457	23.3 % 8.9 %	5.2 m (HR 0.82, 0.72–0.94) 4.1 m	10.1 m (HR 1.01, 0.87–1.17) 10.4 m	LCSS – no differences observed

Cb carboplatin, *Pac* paclitaxel, *Ram* ramucirumab, *Cis* cisplatin, *Pem* pemetrexed, *Doc* docetaxel, *Aflib* aflibercept, *RPLS* reversible posterior leukoencephalopathy syndrome, *Vad* vadimezan, *Plac* placebo, *Fos* fosbretabulin

Doebele et al, reported the results of a randomized phase II trial of cisplatin or carboplatin in combination with pemetrexed, with or without ramucirumab for four to six cycles [42]. Pemetrexed was continued as maintenance therapy either alone or with ramucirumab. A total of 140 patients were randomized. The addition of ramucirumab appeared to improve the efficacy of a platinum agent plus pemetrexed. Higher response rates were observed (49.3 % vs. 38 %). There were trends towards improved PFS (HR 0.75, 90 %CI 0.55–1.03) and OS (HR 0.83, 90 %CI 0.56–1.22), although these did not achieve statistical significance. Patients randomized to ramucirumab experienced more grade 3 neutropenia, anemia, thrombocytopenia, nausea, fatigue, hypertension, and back pain.

At this point ramucirumab remains an investigational agent with some promise. There are ongoing randomized phase II trials in both first and second-line therapy for NSCLC.

Aflibercept

Aflibercept is a human fusion protein designed to block biding of VEGF-A and VEGF-B, as well as human placental growth factor (commonly referred to as VEGF-trap). It has evidence of minor single agent activity in heavily pretreated patients [43]. A phase II trial of first-line therapy with aflibercept in combination with cisplatin and pemetrexed showed modest activity [44]. The RR was 26.3 % with median PFS of 5 months. However, the trial was stopped early because of three cases of reversible posterior leukoencephalopahy syndrome (RPLS). A randomized phase III trial of docetaxel plus or minus aflibercept as second-line therapy, showed some evidence of activity for the addition of aflibercept [45]. The addition of aflibercept to docetaxel improved RR (23.3 % vs. 8.9 %, $p<0.001$) and PFS (HR 0.82, 95 %CI 0.72–0.94). However, the study failed to achieve its primary outcome of improved overall survival. In addition there were no improvements in quality of life as measured by the Lung Cancer Symptom Scale (LCSS). There are multiple ongoing trials of aflibercept in other cancers. However, data to date do not support the use of aflibercept in NSCLC.

Vadimezan

Vadimezan is another VEGF-Trap compound [46]. Activity was observed in early phase clinical trials. A randomized phase II trial of carboplatin and paclitaxel plus/or minus vadimezan suggested that vadimezan may improve the effectiveness of platinum-based chemotherapy [47]. However, a phase III trial of the same regimen failed to improve on treatment outcomes [48]. There were no significant differences in response rates, PFS and overall survival. Additionally, quality of life between the two groups was similar. Therefore, vadimezan does not improve the therapeutic options for patients with advanced NSCLC.

Small Molecule Oral Anti-Angiogenic Compounds in the First-Line Therapy of NSCLC

There are multiple small molecule anti-angiogenic compounds that have been evaluated in combination with platinum-based chemotherapy, in the first-line therapy for NSCLC (Table 4). These agents inhibit one or more angiogenic pathways (VEGFR, PDGFR and/or FGFR), in addition to other off target receptors (Table 1). To date, despite promising preliminary data, none of these compounds have improved the therapeutic efficacy of platinum-based chemotherapy alone. Drug related toxicities of some agents preclude the administration of full doses when combined with chemotherapy. Incremental toxicity was seen in all the trials and in some cases appears to increase the risk of death. As such there are no data to support the addition of an oral anti-angiogenic agent to platinum-based chemotherapy.

Sorafenib

Sorafenib is a multitargeted TKI active against VEGFR, PDGFR, Raf, c-Kit and FLT-3 [49]. Preliminary data from heavily pretreated NSCLC patients showed disease stabilization in 59 % of patients [50]. As a result, sorafenib underwent further development in NSCLC. A phase I/II trial of sorafenib in combination with standard doses of carboplatin and paclitaxel demonstrated sorafenib could be administered in full doses with chemotherapy [51]. Subsequently, two phase III trials were conducted [52, 53]. The ESCAPE trial randomized 926 patients to carboplatin and paclitaxel plus sorafenib or placebo [53]. Patients were all good performance status (ECOG 0-1) and all NSCLC histologies were included in the trial. The trial was stopped early following an interim analysis that met criteria for futility. At the time of the final analysis, no differences were observed in OS between the two groups (median OS 10.7 m vs. 10.3 m, HR 1.15, 95 %CI 0.94–1.41). Additionally, there were no differences observed in the secondary outcomes (RR or PFS) and quality of life was not assessed in the trial. Interestingly a planned analysis according to histology demonstrated that patients with squamous cancer randomized to sorafenib had worse OS than patients in the placebo group (8.9 m vs. 13.6 m, HR 1.85, 95 %CI 1.22–2.81). Patients randomized to sorafenib experienced more thrombocytopenia, rash / desquamation, hand-foot reaction, hypertension and pruritis than in the placebo group. However, patients with squamous cancer did not experience incrementally worse toxicity.

A similarly designed trial (NEXUS), evaluated the addition of sorafenib or placebo, to cisplatin and gemcitabine in 772 patients [52]. Recruitment of patients with squamous cancer was halted following analysis of the ESCAPE trial. Data have been reported on the non-squamous histology population. No improvement in OS was observed for patients randomized to sorafenib (12.4 m vs. 12.5 m, HR 0.98, 95 %CI 0.83–1.16). A similar toxicity profile was observed to that seen in the ESCAPE trial. In summary there is no evidence to support the addition of sorafenib to first-line platinum-based chemotherapy.

Table 4 Summary of trials of oral anti-angiogenic agents in combination with platinum-based chemotherapy as first-line therapy for NSCLC

Trial	Design	Intervention	Number	ORR	PFS	OS	QoL
Sorafenib							
ESCAPE [53]	Phase III	Cb+Pac+Soraf Cb+Pac+Plac	464 462	27.4 % 24 %	4.6 m (HR 0.99, 0.84–1.16) 5.4 m	10.7 m (HR 1.15, 0.94–1.41) 10.3 m	NA Trial stopped early for futility
NEXUS [52]	Phase III	Cis+Gem+Soraf Cis+Gem+Plac	385 387	28 % 26 %	6.0 m (HR 0.83, 0.71–0.97) 5.5 m	12.4 m (HR 0.98, 0.83–1.16) 12.5 m	NA
Cediranib							
NCIC IND 171 [55]	Phase I	Cb+Pac+Ced	20	45 % (23–68 %)	7.6 m		NA
BR24 [56]	Randomized phase II	Cb+Pac+Ced 30 mg Cb+Pac+Plac	126 125	38 % 16 %	5.6 m (HR 0.77, 0.56–1.08) 5.0 m	HR 0.78 (0.57–1.06)	EORTC QLQ30 and LCS13 – not reported
BR29 [57]	Phase III	Cb+Pac+Ced 20 mg Cb+Pac+Plac	153 153	52 % 34 %	5.5 m (HR 0.91, 0.71–1.18) 5.5 m	12.2 m (HR 0.94, 0.69–1.30) 12.1 m	EORTC QLQ30 and LCS13 – not reported
NCCTG528 [58]	Randomized phase II	Cb+Gem+Ced 30 mg Cb+Gem+Plac	60 31	19 % 20 %	6.3 m (HR 0.69, 0.43–1.09) 4.5 m	12 m (HR 0.66, 0.41–1.08) 9.9 m	NA
Motesanib							
NCT00369070 [60]	Randomized phase II	Cb+Pac+Mot 125 mg daily Cb+Pac+Mot 75 mg bid Cb+Pac+Bev 15 mg/kg	61 62 63	30 % 23 % 37 %	7.7 m (HR 1.14, 0.73–1.76) 5.8 m (HR 1.22, 0.80–1.85) 8.3 m	14.0 m (HR 1.05, 0.67–1.63) 12.8 m (HR 1.18, 0.76–1.83) 14.0 m	NA
MONET-1 [61]	Phase III	Cb+Pac+Mot Cb+Pac+Plac	541 549	40 % 26 %	5.6 m (HR 0.79, 0.68–0.90) 5.4 m	13 m (HR 0.90, 0.78–1.04) 11 m	NA

(continued)

Table 4 (continued)

Trial	Design	Intervention	Number	ORR	PFS	OS	QoL
Vandetanib							
Heymach [64]	Randomized phase II	Cb+Pac+Vandet Vandet Cb+Pac	56 73 52	32 % 7 % 25 %	24w (HR 0.76, p=0.098) 11.5w (HR 1.26, p=0.86) 23w	10.2 m (HR 1.15, p=0.738) 10.2 m (HR 1.09, p=0.651) 12.6 m	NA
PrE0501 [63]	Randomized phase II	Cb+Doc+Vandet → Vandet Plac	162 total		4.5 m (p=0.07) 4.2 m	9.8 m (p=0.68) 9.4 m	NA
Pazopanib							
Scagliotti [66]	Randomized phase II	Pem+Pazop Cis+Pem	71 35	23 % 34 %	25w (HR 0.75, 0.43–1.28) 22.9w	HR 1.22 (0.64–2.33)	Trial stopped early because of increased treatment related deaths
Axitanib							
Belani [68]	Randomized phase II	Cis+Pem+Axit D1–21 Cis+Pem+Axit D2–19 Cis+Pem	55 58 57	45.5 % 39.7 % 26.3 %	8.0 m (HR 0.89, 0.56–1.4) 7.9 m (HR 1.02, 0.64–1.62) 7.1 m	16.6 m (HR 1.08, 0.66–1.760) 14.7 m (HR 1.39, 0.87–2.22) 15.9 m	NA

Cb carboplatin, *Pac* paclitaxel, *Soraf* sorafafenib, *Cis* cisplatin, *Gem* gemcitabine, *Ced* cediranib, *Mot* motesanib, *Bev* bevacizumab, *Vandet* vandetanib, *Do* decetaxel, *Pazop* pazopanib, *Pem* pemetrexed, *Axit* axitanib

Cediranib

Cediranib is an oral TKI with activity against VEGFR, PDGFR and c-Kit [54]. The recommended phase I dose of cediranib was 45 mg when combined with chemotherapy [55]. Several randomized trials have evaluated cediranib in combination with either carboplatin and paclitaxel [56, 57], or cisplatin and gemcitabine [58]. The NCIC Clinical Trials Group (CTG) BR24 trial evaluated an initial dose of cediranib of 45 mg daily or placebo, in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel [56]. Excess toxicity was observed in the early phase of the trial necessitating a reduction of the cediranib dose to 30 mg daily. Despite this, there was an increase in hypertension, diarrhea, anorexia, fatigue, stomatitis, dyspnea and sensory peripheral neuropathy. Furthermore, there was an imbalance in treatment related deaths (10 vs. 2). However, it did appear as though the addition of cediranib improved RR (38 % vs. 16 %) and PFS (5.6 m vs. 5.0 m, HR 0.77, 95 %CI 0.56–1.08). A redesigned trial (NCIC BR29) utilizing a reduced dose of cediranib (20 mg daily) was commenced [57]. Despite the lower dose of cediranib, there was still an increase in toxicity for patients randomized to chemotherapy plus cediranib. Unfortunately, no differences in PFS or OS were observed in patients randomized to cediranib at the lower dose.

One further randomized phase II trial evaluated the addition of cediranib 30 mg daily to cisplatin and gemcitabine [58]. The toxicity profile was consistent with that observed in previous studies. No significant differences in PFS or OS were observed. The available data does not support the use of cediranib in NSCLC. While there was some evidence of increased efficacy from the addition of cediranib to chemotherapy, the increased toxicity and small risk of death necessitated dose reductions to the point where there was no benefit beyond standard chemotherapy. The lack of predictive biomarkers does not justify further development of this agent in NSCLC.

Motesanib

Motesanib is an oral TKI with activity against VEGFR, PDGFR, c-Kit and RET [59]. Development of motesanib in NSCLC has been limited to first-line therapy in combination with chemotherapy. An initial randomized phase II trial evaluated two different doses of motesanib (75 mg BID and 125 mg daily) combined with carboplatin and paclitaxel, compared with carboplatin, paclitaxel plus bevacizumab [60]. Similar activity was observed for the combination of motesanib 125 mg daily, plus carboplatin and paclitaxel and carboplatin, paclitaxel and bevacizumab.

The phase III MONET-1 trial randomized NSCLC patients to carboplatin, paclitaxel with or without motesanib [61]. All histologies were initially included. However, an interim analysis demonstrated an increased risk of death and gross hemoptysis for patients with squamous histology. Further recruitment was limited to patients with non-squamous histology. There were 1090 patients with non-squamous histology randomized on trial. Patients randomized to motesanib plus

chemotherapy had higher RR (40 % vs. 26 %) and longer PFS (5.6 m vs. 5.4 m, HR 0.79, 95 %CI 0.68–0.90) compared with chemotherapy alone. Treatment with motesanib did not significantly improve OS (13 m vs. 11 m, HR 0.90, 95 %CI 0.78–1.04). There was a higher incidence of neutropenia (22 % vs. 15 %), diarrhea (9 % vs. 1 %) and hypertension (7 % vs. 1 %) among patients receiving motesanib. Biomarker analysis was performed to evaluate Placental Growth Factor (PLGF). Neither baseline PLGF, nor change in PLGF from baseline to week four were associated with improved survival for patients randomized to motesanib. This agent is not being further developed in NSCLC.

Vandetanib

Vandetanib is a multitargeted TKI that inhibits VEGFR, EGFR and RET [62]. Dual inhibition of both VEGFR and EGFR offers the potential to inhibit two important molecular pathways in NSCLC. To date though, the addition of vandetanib to first-line therapy has not improved the therapeutic ratio.

Two randomized phase II trials have evaluated vandetanib in first-line therapy [63, 64]. Heymach et al, randomized patients to carboplatin, paclitaxel and vandetanib, carboplatin, paclitaxel alone, or single agent vandetanib (Table 4) [64]. Recruitment to single agent vandetanib was discontinued following an interim analysis showing lower efficacy. Median PFS was similar between carboplatin and paclitaxel alone or in combination with vandetanib (HR 0.76, 95 %CI 0.51–1.14) and there was no improvement in OS (HR 1.15, 95 %CI 0.75–1.77). A second trial evaluated maintenance vandetanib or placebo following initial therapy with carboplatin, docetaxel and vandetanib [63]. There was no significant improvement in PFS (4.5 vs. 4.2 months; $p = 0.07$) and OS (9.8 vs. 9.4 months; $p = 0.68$) with vandetanib versus placebo. Common toxicities associated with vandetanib include rash, diarrhea and hypertension. Data do not support the addition of vandetanib to first-line treatment options.

Pazopanib

Pazopanib is another multi-targeted TKI with activity against VEGFR, PDGFR and FGFR [65]. There is limited evaluation of pazopanib in the metastatic setting. A randomized phase II trial compared pemetrexed plus cisplatin with pemetrexed plus pazopanib [66]. The trial was halted after 106 of 150 patients were entered, because of an increased risk of death in the pazopanib group. There was a higher frequency of grade 3 and 4 neutropenia observed among patients randomized to 800 mg daily of pazopanib, necessitating a dose reduction to 600 mg daily. Despite this the trial was discontinued. No significant differences were observed in any of the trial outcomes. PFS favoured patients randomized to pazopanib, although RR

and OS favoured cisplatin and pemetrexed. Given the observed toxicity from pazopanib, it should not be used in combination with chemotherapy in the treatment of NSCLC.

Axitanib

Axitanib is a TKI inhibiting VEGFR, PDGFR and c-Kit with modest activity as a single agent [67]. A randomized phase II trial evaluated cisplatin and pemetrexed alone, or in combination with two dose schedules of axitinib [68]. Higher RRs were seen in patients in both axitanib arms, although there were no significant differences in PFS or OS. This agent remains investigational as a treatment for NSCLC.

Trials of Oral Anti-Angiogenic Compounds after Failure of First-Line Therapy for NSCLC

At least six oral anti-angiogenic agents, either alone, or in combination with other agents, have been evaluated in the treatment of NSCLC after failure of first-line therapy (Table 5). Many of these agents have some evidence of activity in NSCLC. Improvements in PFS have been observed, but none of the agents have demonstrated improved OS compared with existing standards of care.

Sorafenib

Sorafenib has been extensively evaluated in NSCLC patients progressing after platinum-based chemotherapy. A novel randomized discontinuation design was used to evaluate sorafenib in patients who had at least two prior chemotherapy treatments and an EGFR TKI [69]. All patients (n = 299) received 2 months of sorafenib 400 mg twice daily. Responding patients continued sorafenib, while patients who progressed came off treatment. Those patients with stable disease were randomized to continue or discontinue their sorafenib (n = 105). Due to an error in the randomization schedule, eight patients randomized to sorafenib initially received placebo and 12 patients on the placebo arm received sorafenib, which confounds interpretation of the data. There was a significant improvement in PFS for patients randomized to sorafenib (3.3 m vs. 2.0 m, HR 0.51, 95 %CI 0.30–0.87). Differences were also observed in OS (13.7 m vs. 9.0 m, HR 0.67, 95 %CI 0.40–1.11), although these were not statistically significant. Further investigation of sorafenib in this situation appears warranted.

Additional trials have evaluated the addition of sorafenib to either erlotinib [70], or pemetrexed [71]. The Lun 160 trial randomized patients who had failed one or

two lines of chemotherapy, to erlotinib plus sorafenib, or erlotinib plus placebo (2:1 randomization) [70]. There was no difference in RR between the two arms (8 % vs. 11 %). PFS favoured the combination of erlotinib and sorafenib but the difference was not statistically significant (HR 0.86, 95 %CI 0.60–1.22). Analysis of biomarkers for EGFR and KRAS were inconclusive, however data raised the potential for benefit from the combination of erlotinib and sorafenib in patients with *EGFR* WT, or *EGFR* FISH negative tumors. E2501 randomized patients eligible for second-line chemotherapy, to pemetrexed alone or in combination with sorafenib [71]. No differences were observed in PFS or OS, therefore this combination does not appear to warrant further evaluation.

Sunitinib

Sunitinib has also been evaluated in combination with both chemotherapy and erlotinib after failure of first-line platinum-based chemotherapy (Table 5). CALGB 30704 randomized patients to pemetrexed alone, sunitinib alone, or the combination of pemetrexed plus sunitinib as second-line therapy for advanced NSCLC [72]. One hundred and thirty patients were randomized. A higher RR to treatment was observed in patients receiving the combination of pemetrexed plus sunitinib, although this difference was not statistically significant. However, both PFS and OS favored single agent pemetrexed. In regards OS, patients randomized to the combination of pemetrexed plus sunitinib had significantly worse survival (HR 2.0, 95 %CI 1.2–3.2). Therefore, current data do not support the addition of sunitinib to second-line chemotherapy.

Blumenschein et al. [73], reported on the safety and pharmacokinetics from a lead-in cohort of a randomized phase II trial of the combination of erlotinib 150 mg daily with or without sunitinib 37.5 mg daily continuously. Thirty patients were enrolled. Sunitinib administration did not affect the pharmacokinetic profile of erlotinib, but did reduce the exposure of sunitinib. Two subsequent randomized trials evaluated the addition of sunitinib to erlotinib [74, 75]. Groen et al., randomized 132 patients to erlotinib plus sunitinib versus erlotinib plus placebo [74]. There were no differences observed in either PFS or OS. A larger phase III trial of the same design demonstrated a significant improvement in PFS for patients randomized to erlotinib plus sunitinib (median PFS 3.6 m vs. 2.0 m, HR 0.81, 95 %CI 0.69–0.94) [76]. However, these differences did not translate into ay improvements in OS (median OS 9.0 m vs. 8.5 m, HR 0.92, 95 %CI 0.80–1.07). Additionally there were no differences observed in quality of life as measured by the EQ-5D. Common grade 3/4 toxicities observed in these studies include fatigue and asthenia. In studies combining sunitinib with erlotinib additional toxicities included rash, diarrhea, dyspnea, thrombocytopenia, and neutropenia. Given the increase in toxicity together with a lack of improvement in survival, data suggest that sunitinib should not be used in the management of NSCLC following progression of first-line therapy.

Table 5 Summary of trials of oral anti-angiogenic agents after failure of first-line therapy for NSCLC

Trial	Design	Intervention	Number	ORR	PFS	OS	QoL
Sorafenib							
NCT00922584 [50]	Phase II	Soraf	52	0 %	2.7 m	6.7 m	NA
E2501 [69]	Randomized phase II	Soraf induction → Soraf Plac	299 enrol 53 52	3 %	3.3 m (HR 0.51, 0.30–0.87) 2.0 m	13.7 m (HR 0.67, 0.40–1.11) 9.0 m	NA
Lun160 [70]	Randomized phase II	Erl+Soraf Erl+Plac	112 56	8 % 11 %	3.38 m (HR 0.86, 0.60–1.22) 1.94 m	7.62 m (HR 0.89, 0.59–1.34) 7.23 m	NA
NCCTG626 [71]	Randomized phase II	Pem+Soraf Pem	49 51		3.4 m (p=0.22) 4.1 m	9.4 m (p=0.49) 9.7 m	NA
Sunitinib							
CALGB30704 [72]	Randomized phase II	Pem+Sun Sun Pem	42 47 41	22 % 17 % 14 %	3.7 m (HR 1.3, 0.9–2.1) 3.3 m (HR 1.4, 0.9–2.2) 4.9 m (p=0.3)	6.7 m (HR 2.0, 1.2–3.2) 8.0 m (HR 1.4, 0.9–2.3) 10.5 m	NA
Blumenschein [73]	Phase II	Erl + Sun Erl	13 17	NR	NR	NR	no effect on ERL PK
Groen [74]	Randomized phase II	Erl+Sun Erl+Plac	132 total	NR	12.3w (HR 0.95, 0.60–1.5) 8.5w	8.2 m (HR 1.09, 0.72–1.6) 7.6 m	NA
Scagliotti [76]	Phase III	Erl+Sun Erl+Plac	480 480	10.6 % 6.9 %	3.6 m (HR 0.81, 0.69–0.94) 2.0 m	9.0 m (HR 0.92, 0.80–0.1.07) 8.5 m	EQ–5D – no difference between the two arms
Vandetanib							
ZEAL [77]	Phase III	Pem+Vandet Pem+Plac	256 278	19 % 8 %	17.6w (HR 0.86, 0.69–1.06) 11.9w	10.5 m (HR 0.86, 0.65–1.13) 9.2 m	LCSS – longer time to deterioration in total LCSS score for vandet

(continued)

Table 5 (continued)

Trial	Design	Intervention	Number	ORR	PFS	OS	QoL
ZODIAC [78]	Phase III	Doc+Vandet Doc+Plac	694 697	17 % 10 %	4.0 m (HR 0.79, 0.70–0.90) 3.2 m	10.6 m (HR 0.91, 0.78–1.07) 10.0 m	FACT–L LCS. Delayed time to symptom progression in Vandet
ZEST [80]	Phase III	Vandet Erl	623 617	12 % 12 %	2.6 m (HR 0.98, 0.87–1.10) 2.0 m	6.9 m (HR 1.01, 0.89–1.16) 7.8 m	EORTC QLQ30 – no difference in time to deterioration in symptoms
ZEPHYR [79]	Phase III	Vandet Plac	617 307	2.6 % 0.7 %	1.9 m (HR 0.63, 0.54–0.74) 1.8 m	8.5 m (HR 0.95, 0.81–1.11) 7.8 m	FACT–L LCS. No significant difference between groups
Nintedanib							
Reck [83]	Randomized phase II	Ninted 150 mg bid Ninted 250 mg bid	37 36	0 % 2.8 %	53d 48d	20.6w 29.7w (HR 0.69, p = 0.21)	
Lume-Lung1 [86]	Phase III	Doc+Ninted Doc+Plac	652 659	4.7 % 3.6 %	3.4 m (HR 0.79, 0.68–0.92) 2.7 m	10.1 m (HR 0.94, 0.83–1.05) 9.1 m	NA
Lume-Lung2 [85]	Phase III	Pem+Ninted Pem+Plac	353 360	9.1 % 8.3 %	4.4 m (HR 0.83, 0.70–0.99) 3.6 m	12.2 m (HR 1.03, 0.85–1.24) 12.7 m	NA
Cediranib							
Gadgeel [87]	Phase II	Pem+Ced	33	16 %	–	–	NA
Linifanib							
Tan [89]	Phase II	Linif	139	1.4 %	3.6 m	9.0 m	NA

Soraf sorafenib, *Plac* placebo, *Erl* erlotinib, *Pem* pemetrexed, *Sun* sunitinib, *PK* pharmacokinetics, *Vandet* vandetanib, *Ninted* nintedanib, *Doc* docetaxel, *Ced* cediranib, *Linif* linifanib

Vandetanib

Vandetanib has been evaluated in four randomized phase III trials following progression of first-line platinum-based chemotherapy, either in combination with pemetrexed [77], or docetaxel [78], or as a single agent [79, 80]. The ZEAL trial randomized 534 NSCLC patients to second-line therapy with pemetrexed plus placebo, or pemetrexed plus vandetanib 100 mg daily [77]. The primary outcome of the study, PFS, was not significantly prolonged among patients randomized to pemetrexed plus vandetanib (median PFS 17.6w vs. 11.9w, HR 0.86, 95 %CI 0.69–1.06). A higher RR was observed (19 % vs. 8 %, $p < 0.001$), but this did not translate into any improvements in OS for patients randomized to the combination arm (10.5 m vs. 9.2 m, HR 0.86, 95 %CI 0.65–1.13). Quality of life was measured using the Lung Cancer Symptom Scale (LCSS). Patients randomized to pemetrexed and vandetanib had a significantly longer time to deterioration of lung cancer symptoms than patients randomized to pemetrexed alone. A similarly designed trial (ZODIAC) randomized patients to docetaxel along or in combination with vandetanib [78]. There were 1391 patients randomized on study. A significant improvement in PFS was observed for patients randomized to docetaxel plus vandetanib (4.0 m vs. 3.2 m, HR 0.79, 95 %CI 0.70–0.90), but no significant differences were observed in OS (10.6 m vs. 10.0 m, HR 0.91, 95 %CI 0.78–1.07). Time to deterioration in symptoms significantly favored patients randomized to docetaxel plus vandetanib. While there is some evidence of increased activity for the addition of vandetanib to second-line chemotherapy, the lack of improvement in overall survival means that this agent has not been incorporated into treatment algorithms for advanced NSCLC.

Additional trials have evaluated vandetanib after prior chemotherapy. The ZEST trial compared vandetanib 300 mg daily with erlotinib 150 mg daily in patients who had received one or two prior chemotherapy treatments [80]. There were 1240 patients randomized. Vandetanib did not improve PFS in comparison to erlotinib (2.6 m vs. 2.0 m, HR 0.98, 95 %CI 0.87–1.10). Similarly there were no differences observed in OS (6.9 m vs. 7.8 m, HR 1.01, 95 %CI 0.89–1.16). There were also no difference in time to deterioration in symptoms between the two groups, as assessed by the EORTC-QLQ30 and LDS-13. While vandetanib demonstrated similar activity to erlotinib, the trial was designed to show superiority of vandetanib over erlotinib. Therefore, this is considered to be a negative trial.

The last phase III trial evaluating vandetanib, compared vandetanib versus placebo in patients who had received prior chemotherapy and an EGFR TKI (ZEPHYR) [81]. Nine hundred and twenty four patients were randomized to vandetanib 300 mg daily or placebo (2:1 schedule). The trial failed to demonstrate any improvement in OS (8.5 m vs. 7.8 m, HR 0.95, 95 %CI 0.81–1.11) and there were no differences observed in quality of life, as measured by the FACT-L. Therefore, none of the four trial of vandetanib after progression of platinum-doublet chemotherapy show any improvement in OS in comparison to standard treatment options. Given the observed toxicity of vandetanib, it has not been incorporated into the treatment algorithms for NSCLC.

Nintedanib

Nintedanib is an oral triple angiokinase inhibitor with activity against VEGFR, PDGFR, and FGFR, as well as members of the Src family and flt-3 [82]. A randomized phase II trial of two dose levels of nintedanib reported similar efficacy of single agent nintedanib 150 mg BID and 250 mg BID using a continuous dose schedule [83]. A subsequent phase I trial of nintedanib in combination with pemetrexed, reported that the recommended dose of nintedanib in combination with chemotherapy was 200 mg BID [84]. This schedule was used in two subsequent phase III trials evaluating nintedanib, or placebo in combination with either pemetrexed [85], or docetaxel [86].

The Lume-Lung 2 trial evaluated the addition of nintedanib or placebo to pemetrexed in patients with non-squamous histology [85]. This has been presented in abstract only. The trial was discontinued early following an interim analysis suggesting futility. At the time of the final analysis, there was no difference in RR (9.1 % vs. 8.3 %). However, there was a significant improvement in PFS observed (4.4 m vs. 3.6 m, HR 0.83, 95 %CI 0.70–0.99). This did not translate into any improvement in OS (12.2 m vs. 12.7, HR 1.03, 95 %CI 0.85–1.24). The Lume-Lung 1 trial evaluated nintedanib or placebo, plus docetaxel in patients with all NSCLC histologies [86]. The primary outcome was defined as PFS. OS for the entire study population was a secondary outcome. Prior to the database lock for OS, but after the PFS analysis was performed this was modified to include a pre-specified sequence for analysis for OS: first in adenocarcinoma histology who progressed within 9 months from start of initial first-line therapy; next in all adenocarcinoma histologies; and then in all NSCLC histologies. It is important to recognise that while this was done to validate subgroup analyses from the Lume-Lung 2 trial, it involves some comparisons that are no longer randomized. The trial demonstrated a significant improvement in PFS for the overall study population (3.4 m vs. 2.7 m, HR 0.85, 95 %CI 0.75–0.96). In the analysis of OS, patients randomized to docetaxel and nintedanib with adenocarcinoma and less than 9 months from start of first-line chemotherapy to study entry, demonstrated improved OS in comparison to patients randomized to docetaxel plus placebo (10.9 m vs. 7.9 m, 95 %CI 0.60–0.92). A significant improvement was also observed in all patients with adenocarcinoma histology (12.6 m vs. 10.3 m, HR 0.83, 95 %CI 0.70–0.93). However, no difference was observed in OS for the original study population involving all histologies (10.1 m vs. 9.1 m, HR 0.94, 95 %CI 0.83–1.05). Adverse events occurring more frequently in patients receiving nintedanib included diarrhea, increased liver enzymes (ALT and AST), nausea, vomiting and decreased appetite. Excess hypertension was not observed with this agent.

Nintedanib is the only oral anti-angiogenic agent evaluated in NSCLC patients following failure of first-line therapy to demonstrate any improvement in OS. However, these findings should be considered hypothesis generating at this time. There are plans to repeat this study with a population limited to adenocarcinoma histology in NSCLC patients who progressed within 9 months of starting first-line therapy.

Cedirinib

There are no randomized data of cediranib following progression of first-line platinum-based therapy. Preliminary results from a single arm phase II trial of pemetrexed plus cediranib was presented at the ASCO meeting in 2009 [87]. The observed RR was 16 % with an acceptable toxicity profile. However, the lack of a suitable control group makes interpretation of these data challenging. This agent is not undergoing further development in NSCLC

Linifanib

Linifanib is an oral anti-angiogenic agent active against VEGFR and PDGFR [88]. Only one phase II trial was identified in which 139 patients were treated with single agent linifanib after progression on prior chemotherapy treatments [89]. The observed activity was modest and this agent remains experimental at this time.

Anti-Angiogenic Therapy in SCLC

There have been a number of trials evaluating targeted therapies in SCLC. To date, trials have evaluated matrix metalloproteinases [90], inhibitors of c-myc with imatinib alone [91] or in combination with systemic therapy [92], BCL-2 antisense therapy [93], proteosome inhibition [94] and inhibition of insulin-like growth factor (IGF) [95]. All of these have been ineffective strategies that have failed to improve survival for patients with SCLC. One potential explanation is the complexity of molecular abnormalities occurring in SCLC [96, 97]. Inhibition of VEGF is a strategy that has been routinely incorporated into the therapy of NSCLC. Multiple anti-angiogenic compounds have been evaluated in SCLC, although to date not have been proven to improve survival of patients (Table 6).

Bevacizumab

Two single arm phase II trials have evaluated the addition of bevacizumab to either cisplatin and irinotecan [98], or cisplatin or etoposide [99]. Ready et al, included 68 patients in a phase II trial of cisplatin, irinotecan and bevacizumab [98]. The RR was 75 % and median PFS 7.0 months (95 %CI 6.4–8.4 m). The median OS was 11.6 months (95 %CI 10.5–15.1 m). Common toxicities of the combination include neutropenia, nausea, diarrhea, dehydration and fatigue. A second phase II trial evaluated cisplatin, etoposide and bevacizumab [99]. Efficacy was consistent with that

Table 6 Summary of trials of anti-angiogenic therapy in SCLC

Trial	Design	Intervention	Number	ORR	PFS	OS	QoL
Bevacizumab							
CALGB 30306 [98]	Phase II	Cis+Irino+Bev	68	75 %	7.0 m (95 %CI 6.4–8.4 m)	11.6 m (95 %CI 10.5–15.1 m)	NA
E3501 [99]	Phase II	Cis+Etop+Bev 15 mg/kg	65	63.5 %	4.7 m (95 %CI 4.3–5.5 m)	10.9 m (95 %CI 7.9–12.2 m)	NA
SALUTE [100]	Randomized phase II	Cis/Carb+Etop+Bev 15 mg/kg Cis/Carb+Etop+Plac	52 50	58 % 48 %	5.5 m (HR 0.53, 0.32–0.86) 4.4 m	9.4 m (HR 1.16, 0.66–2.04) 10.9 m	NA
Vandetanib							
NCICBR20 [101]	Randomized phase II	Cis+Etop → Vandet Plac	53 54		2.7 m (HR 1.01, 0.75–1.36) 2.8 m	10.6 m (HR 1.43, 1.0–2.05) 11.9 m	EORTC QLQ30+LCS13. QoL similar between the two arms
Thalidomide							
IFCT 00-01 [102]	Phase III	Epi+Cis+Etop+Cyc x 2 → Epi+Cis+Etop+Cyc+Thal Epi+Cis+Etop+Cyc+Plac	119 49 43	87 % 84 %	6.6 m (HR 0.74, 0.49–1.12) 6.4 m	11.7 m (HR 0.74, 0.49–1.12) 8.7 m	NA
Lee [103]	Phase III	Cb+Etop+Thal Cb+Etop+Plac	365 359	NR	No difference	10.5 m (HR 1.10, 0.94–1.29) 10.2 m	NA
Ellis [104]	Phase I	Cis+Etop+Pom	22	31.8 %		49.6w (95 %CI 28–63.9w)	NA

Sunitinib							
CALGB 30504 [106]	Randomized phase II	Cis/Cb+Etop→ Sunit Plac	138 44 41		3.8 m (HR 1.54, 90 %CI 1.03–2.3) 2.3 m	8.8 m (HR 1.1, 90 %CI 0.71–1.7) 6.7 m	NA
Han [105]	Phase II second line	Sunit	25	9 %	1.4 m (95 %CI 0.7–2.1 m)	5.6 m (95 % CI 3.2–8.0 m)	NA
Sorafenib							
Sharma [108]	Phase II	Cis+Etop+Soraf	17	67 %	–	7.4 m	Stopped because of toxicity concerns
Sharma [108]	Phase II	Cis+Etop+Soraf	17	67 %	–	7.4 m	Stopped because of toxicity concerns
S0435 [107]	Phase II second line	Soraf	89	4 %	2 m	7 m	NA

Cis cisplatin, *Irino* irinotecan, *Bev* bevacizumab, *Etop* etoposide, *Cb* carboplatin, *Vandet* vandetanib, *Plac* placebo, *Epi* epirubicin, *Cyc* cyclophosphamide, *Thal* thalidomide, *Pom* pomalidomide, *Sunit* sunitinib, *Soraf* sorafenib

expected from standard chemotherapy. The observed RR was 63.5 %, with a median PFS of 4.7 months (95 %CI 4.3–5.5 m). Median OS was 10.9 months (95 %CI 7.9–12.2 m). Common toxicities included neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, fatigue and weakness. Toxicities attributed to bevacizumab included hypertension, epistaxis, pulmonary and abdominal hemorrhage.

Bevacizumab has also been evaluated in a randomized phase II trial with cisplatin/carboplatin plus etoposide [100]. One hundred and two patients were randomized. There was no significant improvement in RR (58 % vs. 48 %). Progression free survival significantly favored the combination of cisplatin/carboplatin, etoposide plus bevacizumab (5.5 m vs. 4.4 m, HR 0.53, 95 %CI 0.32–0.86). This did not translate into any improvement in OS, however (9.4 m vs. 10.9 m, HR 1.16, 95 %CI 0.66–2.04). Therefore, available data do not support the addition of bevacizumab to standard chemotherapy in SCLC.

Vandetanib

One randomized trial evaluated vandetanib as maintenance therapy in SCLC [101]. The NCIC CTG BR20 trial included patients with both limited stage (LS) and extensive stage (ES) SCLC, with no evidence of disease progression following standard chemotherapy. One hundred and seven patients were randomized to vandetanib or placebo. There was no improvement in PFS (2.7 m vs. 2.8 m, HR 1.01, 95 %CI 0.75–1.36) and a trend to worse OS (10.6 m vs. 11.9 m, HR 1.43, 95 %CI 1.0–2.05). Toxicities were consistent with those previously observed from vandetanib. Therefore, there is no evidence to support the use of vandetanib in SCLC.

Thalidomide and Other Immunomodulatory Agents

Thalidomide is an anti-angiogenic agent suppressing FGF and VEGF. The IFCT-00-01 trial evaluated thalidomide in patients with ES SCLC who had evidence of tumor response following two cycle of induction therapy [102]. Patients were randomized to four additional cycles of chemotherapy with thalidomide 400 mg daily or placebo. Initially 119 patients were registered. The RR was 81.5 % and 92 patients were randomized to thalidomide or placebo. There was no significant difference observed in PFS (6.6 m vs. 6.4 m, HR 0.74, 95 %CI 0.49–1.12). Median OS was greater among patients receiving thalidomide, although this difference was not statistically significant (11.7 m vs. 8.7 m, HR 0.74, 955CI 0.49–1.12). Patients on the thalidomide arm experienced more neuropathy, but other toxicities did not differ. A second randomized trial evaluated thalidomide or placebo, in combination with carboplatin and etoposide [103]. Seven hundred and twenty four patients were randomized and no differences were observed in overall survival. As a result, thalidomide does not appear to be an active agent when added to standard chemotherapy.

A phase I trial of pomalidomide, an immunomodulatory agent, added to cisplatin and etoposide was conducted by Ellis et al. [104] Overlapping hematological toxicities did not allow pomalidomide to be administered at its recommended single agent dose. The observed response rates and overall survival were not sufficiently active to warrant further development.

Sunitinib

Two trials have evaluated sunitinib in SCLC. A phase II trial of sunitinib as second-line therapy showed some evidence of activity [105]. The RR was modest (9 %) and the median OS was 5.6 months (95 %CI 3.2–8.0 m). Only 25 patients were included and it is difficult to make any clear recommendations from this. However, there was some evidence of benefit from sunitinib as maintenance therapy. The CALGB 30504 initially planned to evaluate the combination of a platinum and etoposide in combination with sunitinib [106]. However, the observed toxicity was not tolerable. The trial was modified to evaluate maintenance sunitinib or placebo following initial therapy with cisplatin/carboplatin and etoposide. There was a significant improvement in PFS (3.8 m vs. 2.3 m, HR 1.54, 90 %CI 1.03–2.3). Overall survival also favored maintenance sunitinib although this difference was not statistically significant (8.8 m vs. 6.7 m, HR 1.1, 90 %CI 0.71–1.7). These results were of sufficient interest to warrant a phase III trial of the same design. At present though, sunitinib should be considered an investigational agent in SCLC.

Sorafenib

Several single agent phase II trials of sorafenib have been conducted [107, 108]. Results are summarized in Table 6. The RR and OS observed from the combination of carboplatin or cisplatin plus etoposide in combination with sorafenib does not appear greater than that expected from chemotherapy alone [108]. These trials included only a small number of patients, but the results do not appear to justify larger scale trials of these combinations. A second-line trial of sorafenib also showed modest activity [107]. Available data do not provide a strong rationale for further evaluation of sorafenib in SCLC.

Other Anti-Angiogenic Compounds under Evaluation for Lung Cancer

A number of other anti-angiogenic agents have been evaluated in lung cancer (Table 7). In general these agents are in early phase development in trial involving multiple cancer types. Activity has been observed in NSCLC patients providing a rationale for further evaluation. These agents have been primarily evaluated in

Table 7 Summary of other anti-angiogenic agents under development in lung cancer

Agent	Mechanism of action	Stage of development	
MGCD265	MET, VEGFR, Ron, Tie-2	Phase I multiple cancers in combination with Erl [111] Phase I multiple cancers in combination with Doc [112]	One response seen in three NSCLC patients Two responses seen in nine NSCLC patients
BMS690514	EGFR, Her2, VEGFR	Phase I in multiple cancers with expansion in NSCLC [113] Phase I/II in NSCLC patients [114] Phase I multiple cancers in combination with Carb+Pac [115]	One response observed in NSCLC Two responses in 60 patients Five responses observed in eight NSCLC patients
Brivanib	FGFR, VEGFR	Randomized discontinuation design in multiple advanced solid tumors [116]	Insufficient activity in NSCLC to warrant further development
Pazopanib	VEGFR, PDGFR, FGFR	Phase II neoadjuvant study in stage I/II NSCLC [117] Randomized trial of pazopanib in resected NSCLC [109]	Tumor reduction in 30 of 35 patients, three responses Trial did not proceed to phase III as unable to administer planned treatment

Erl erlotinib, *Doc* docetaxel, *Carb* carboplatin, *Pac* paclitaxel

heavily pre-treated patients. The one exception is pazopanib. A planned randomized trial of adjuvant therapy with pazopanib did not proceed beyond a phase II component because of inability to administer the planned dose of treatment [109]. Further development of this agent seems unlikely.

Conclusions

Angiogenesis is felt to be a key factor in tumor growth and development and therefore an important therapeutic target in cancer. There have been a large number of trials evaluating multiple anti-angiogenic compounds in lung cancer, but the majority of results have been disappointing. Unfortunately the majority of these agents have not improved the results of treatment in comparison to existing standard treatments for lung cancer. Interestingly, there appears to be some differential effect of anti-angiogenic therapy according to histological subtype. Several agents, including sorafenib and motesanib, have demonstrated worse survival for patients with squamous histology and toxicity concerns excluded patients with squamous cancers from therapy with bevacizumab. In addition, anti-angiogenic therapies add incremental and at times, overlapping toxicities to existing lung cancer treatments.

In some cases, such as cediranib, these additional toxicities requires dose reduction to a point where the drug is no longer beneficial.

Bevacizumab remains the only approved anti-angiogenic agent in the treatment of lung cancer. Bevacizumab therapy is limited to patients with good performance status with non-squamous NSCLC, absence of brain metastases, and no major bleeding or thrombotic disorders. Meta-analyses of trials of bevacizumab in combination with platinum-based chemotherapy show a modest improvement in overall survival, but there are incremental toxicity concerns. Attempts to date, to identify additional subgroups of patients who derive greater benefit from bevacizumab have not been successful. More recently, non bevacizumab-based treatment strategies have emerged. Data suggest that cisplatin or carboplatin plus pemetrexed followed by maintenance pemetrexed until disease progression, provides an alternative to bevacizumab-based therapy.

Overall, the results of trials evaluating oral anti-angiogenic agents have been disappointing. The majority of agents evaluated in phase III trials have not shown significant improvements in survival for patients with lung cancer. The challenge is understanding whether these agents are ineffective, or whether the effects in a particular subgroup are lost among a larger, unselected population of patients. This may be the case for nintedanib, where no improvement was observed in OS in two trials, although a subgroup analysis of patients with adenocarcinoma and shorter time until disease progression suggested improved survival. There is a need to additional translational studies to answer these issues.

The data in SCLC is disappointing as well. In general, targeted therapies have not proven beneficial in SCLC. Available data has not demonstrated a benefit, although there is some promise for sunitinib as maintenance therapy after initial platinum and etoposide treatment. Further research is required to identify which, if any SCLC patients, might benefit from anti-angiogenic based therapy.

References

1. Hanahan D, Folkman J (1996) Patterns and emerging mechanisms of the angiogenic switch during tumorigenesis. Cell 86:353–364
2. Folkman J, Klagsbrun M (1987) Vascular physiology. A family of angiogenic peptides. Nature 329:671–672
3. Kim KJ, Li B, Winer J et al (1993) Inhibition of vascular endothelial growth factor-induced angiogenesis suppresses tumour growth in vivo. Nature 362:841–844
4. Alvarez RH, Kantarjian HM, Cortes JE (2006) Biology of platelet-derived growth factor and its involvement in disease. Mayo Clin Proc 81:1241–1257
5. Presta M, Dell'Era P, Mitola S, Moroni E, Ronca R, Rusnati M (2005) Fibroblast growth factor/fibroblast growth factor receptor system in angiogenesis. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 16:159–178
6. Kerbel RS (2006) Antiangiogenic therapy: a universal chemosensitization strategy for cancer? Science 312:1171–1175
7. Ferrara N, Gerber H-P, LeCouter J (2003) The biology of VEGF and its receptors. Nat Med 9:669–676

8. Toi M, Matsumoto T, Bando H (2001) Vascular endothelial growth factor: its prognostic, predictive, and therapeutic implications. Lancet Oncol 2:667–673
9. Leighl N, Reck M, de Haas S et al (2009) Analysis of biomarkers (BMs) in the AVAiL phase III randomised study of first-line Bevacizumab (Bv) with cisplatin-gemcitabine (CG) in patients (pts) with non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Euro J Cancer Suppl 7:558
10. Bergsten E, Uutela M, Li X et al (2001) PDGF-D is a specific, protease-activated ligand for the PDGF beta-receptor. Nat Cell Biol 3:512–516
11. Wu E, Palmer N, Tian Z et al (2008) Comprehensive dissection of PDGF-PDGFR signaling pathways in PDGFR genetically defined cells. PLoS One 3, e3794
12. Bergers G, Song S, Meyer-Morse N, Bergsland E, Hanahan D (2003) Benefits of targeting both pericytes and endothelial cells in the tumor vasculature with kinase inhibitors. J Clin Invest 111:1287–1295
13. Erber R, Thurnher A, Katsen AD et al (2004) Combined inhibition of VEGF and PDGF signaling enforces tumor vessel regression by interfering with pericyte-mediated endothelial cell survival mechanisms. FASEB J 18:338–340
14. Rusnati M, Presta M (2007) Fibroblast growth factors/fibroblast growth factor receptors as targets for the development of anti-angiogenesis strategies. Curr Pharm Des 13:2025–2044
15. Kano MR, Morishita Y, Iwata C et al (2005) VEGF-A and FGF-2 synergistically promote neoangiogenesis through enhancement of endogenous PDGF-B-PDGFRbeta signaling. J Cell Sci 118:3759–3768
16. Nissen LJ, Cao R, Hedlund E-M et al (2007) Angiogenic factors FGF2 and PDGF-BB synergistically promote murine tumor neovascularization and metastasis. J Clin Invest 117: 2766–2777
17. Sandler A, Gray R, Perry MC et al (2006) Paclitaxel-carboplatin alone or with bevacizumab for non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 355:2542–2550
18. Johnson DH, Fehrenbacher L, Novotny WF et al (2004) Randomized phase II trial comparing bevacizumab plus carboplatin and paclitaxel with carboplatin and paclitaxel alone in previously untreated locally advanced or metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 22:2184–2191
19. Niho S, Kunitoh H, Nokihara H et al (2012) Randomized phase II study of first-line carboplatin-paclitaxel with or without bevacizumab in Japanese patients with advanced non-squamous non-small-cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 76:362–367
20. Reck M, von Pawel J, Zatloukal P et al (2009) Phase III trial of cisplatin plus gemcitabine with either placebo or bevacizumab as first-line therapy for nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer: AVAil. J Clin Oncol 27:1227–1234
21. Reck M, von Pawel J, Zatloukal P et al (2010) Overall survival with cisplatin-gemcitabine and bevacizumab or placebo as first-line therapy for nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomised phase III trial (AVAiL). Ann Oncol 21:1804–1809
22. Zhou C, Chen G, Liu X et al (2013) BEYOND: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre, phase iii study of first-line carboplatin/paclitaxel (CP) plus bevacizumab (BV) or placebo (PL) in Chinese patients with advanced or recurrent non-squamous non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). J Thorac Oncol 8:MO06.13
23. Lopez-Chavez A, Young T, Fages S et al (2012) Bevacizumab maintenance in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer, clinical patterns, and outcomes in the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group 4599 Study: results of an exploratory analysis. J Thorac Oncol 7:1707–1712
24. Nadler E, Yu E, Ravelo A, Sing A, Forsyth M, Gruschkus S (2011) Bevacizumab treatment to progression after chemotherapy: outcomes from a U.S. Community practice network. Oncologist 16:486–496
25. Soria JC, Mauguen A, Reck M et al (2013) Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised, phase II/III trials adding bevacizumab to platinum-based chemotherapy as first-line treatment in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 24:20–30
26. Botrel TE, Clark O, Clark L, Paladini L, Faleiros E, Pegoretti B (2011) Efficacy of bevacizumab (Bev) plus chemotherapy (CT) compared to CT alone in previously untreated locally

advanced or metastatic non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC): systematic review and meta-analysis. Lung Cancer 74:89–97
27. Sandler A, Yi J, Dahlberg S et al (2010) Treatment outcomes by tumor histology in Eastern Cooperative Group Study E4599 of bevacizumab with paclitaxel/carboplatin for advanced non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 5:1416–1423
28. Mok TS, Hsia TC, Tsai CM et al (2011) Efficacy of bevacizumab with cisplatin and gemcitabine in Asian patients with advanced or recurrent non-squamous non-small cell lung cancer who have not received prior chemotherapy: a substudy of the Avastin in Lung trial. Asia Pac J Clin Oncol 7(Suppl 2):4–12
29. Hurwitz HI, Douglas PS, Middleton JP et al (2013) Analysis of early hypertension and clinical outcome with bevacizumab: results from seven phase III studies. Oncologist 18:273–280
30. Dowlati A, Gray R, Sandler AB, Schiller JH, Johnson DH (2008) Cell adhesion molecules, vascular endothelial growth factor, and basic fibroblast growth factor in patients with non-small cell lung cancer treated with chemotherapy with or without bevacizumab–an Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Study. Clin Cancer Res 14:1407–1412
31. Ciuleanu T, Brodowicz T, Zielinski C et al (2009) Maintenance pemetrexed plus best supportive care versus placebo plus best supportive care for non-small-cell lung cancer: a randomised, double-blind, phase 3 study. Lancet 374:1432–1440
32. Paz-Ares LG, de Marinis F, Dediu M et al (2013) PARAMOUNT: final overall survival results of the phase III study of maintenance pemetrexed versus placebo immediately after induction treatment with pemetrexed plus cisplatin for advanced nonsquamous non–small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 31:2895–2902
33. Barlesi F, Scherpereel A, Rittmeyer A et al (2013) Randomized phase III trial of maintenance bevacizumab with or without pemetrexed after first-line induction with bevacizumab, cisplatin, and pemetrexed in advanced nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer: AVAPERL (MO22089). J Clin Oncol 31:3004–3011
34. Rittmeyer A, Gorbunova V, Vikström A (2013) Health-related quality of life in patients with advanced nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer receiving bevacizumab or bevacizumab-plus-pemetrexed maintenance therapy in AVAPERL (MO22089). J Thorac Oncol 8:1409–1416. doi:10.097/JTO.0b013e3182a46bcf
35. Socinski MA, Patel JD, Garon EB et al (2013) A phase III study of pemetrexed (Pem) plus carboplatin (Cb) plus bevacizumab (Bev) followed by maintenance pem plus bev versus paclitaxel (Pac) plus cb plus bev followed by maintenance bev in stage IIIb or IV nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer (NS-NSCLC): overall and age group results. ASCO Meet Abstr 31:8004
36. Zinner R, Ross HJ, Weaver R et al (2013) Randomized, open-label, phase III study of pemetrexed plus carboplatin (PemC) followed by maintenance pemetrexed versus paclitaxel/carboplatin/bevacizumab (PCB) followed by maintenance bevacizumab in patients with advanced nonsquamous (NS) non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr 31, LBA8003
37. NCCN Clinical practice guidelines in oncology™ (2010) Non small cell lung cancer. V.1.2011. Accessed 10 Dec 2010. Accessed at http://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/PDF.nscl.pdf
38. Gridelli C, Bennouna J, de Castro J et al (2011) Randomized phase IIIb trial evaluating the continuation of bevacizumab beyond disease progression in patients with advanced non-squamous non-small-cell lung cancer after first-line treatment with bevacizumab plus platinum-based chemotherapy: treatment rationale and protocol dynamics of the AvaALL (MO22097) trial. Clin Lung Cancer 12:407–411
39. Herbst RS, Ansari R, Bustin F et al (2011) Efficacy of bevacizumab plus erlotinib versus erlotinib alone in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer after failure of standard first-line chemotherapy (BeTa): a double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet 377:1846–1854
40. Herbst RS, O'Neill VJ, Fehrenbacher L et al (2007) Phase II study of efficacy and safety of bevacizumab in combination with chemotherapy or erlotinib compared with chemotherapy

alone for treatment of recurrent or refractory non–small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 25:4743–4750
41. Camidge DR, Ballas MS, Dubey S et al (2010) A phase II, open-label study of ramucirumab (IMC-1121B), an IgG1 fully human monoclonal antibody (MAb) targeting VEGFR-2, in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin as first-line therapy in patients (pts) with stage IIIb/IV non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr 28:7588
42. Doebele RC, Spigel D, Tehfe M et al (2013) A phase 2 randomized open-label study of ramucirumab (IMC 1121B; RAM) in combination with first-line platinum-based chemotherapy in patients (pts) with recurrent or advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC): final results from non-squamous (NSQ) pts (NCT 01160744). J Thorac Oncol 8:MO06.8
43. Leighl NB, Raez LE, Besse B et al (2010) Multicenter, phase 2 study of vascular endothelial growth factor trap (aflibercept) in platinum- and erlotinib-resistant adenocarcinoma of the lung. J Thorac Oncol 5:1054–1059. doi:10.97/JTO.0b013e3181e2f7fb
44. Chen H, Modiano MR, Neal JW et al (2012) A phase II multicenter study of aflibercept (AFL) in combination with cisplatin (C) and pemetrexed (P) in patients with previously untreated advanced/metastatic nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr 30:7541
45. Ramlau R, Gorbunova V, Ciuleanu TE et al (2012) Aflibercept and docetaxel versus docetaxel alone after platinum failure in patients with advanced or metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer: a randomized, controlled phase III trial. J Clin Oncol 30:3640–3647
46. Rustin GJ, Bradley C, Galbraith S et al (2003) 5,6-dimethylxanthenone-4-acetic acid (DMXAA), a novel antivascular agent: phase I clinical and pharmacokinetic study. Br J Cancer 88:1160–1167
47. McKeage MJ, Von Pawel J, Reck M et al (2008) Randomised phase II study of ASA404 combined with carboplatin and paclitaxel in previously untreated advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Br J Cancer 99:2006–2012
48. Lara PN, Douillard J-Y, Nakagawa K et al (2011) Randomized phase III placebo-controlled trial of carboplatin and paclitaxel with or without the vascular disrupting agent vadimezan (ASA404) in advanced non–small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 29:2965–2971
49. Wilhelm SM, Carter C, Tang L et al (2004) BAY 43–9006 exhibits broad spectrum oral antitumor activity and targets the RAF/MEK/ERK pathway and receptor tyrosine kinases involved in tumor progression and angiogenesis. Cancer Res 64:7099–7109
50. Blumenschein GR, Gatzemeier U, Fossella F et al (2009) Phase II, multicenter, uncontrolled trial of single-agent sorafenib in patients with relapsed or refractory, advanced non small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 27:4274–4280
51. Schiller JH, Flaherty KT, Redlinger M et al (2006) Sorafenib combined with carboplatin/paclitaxel for advanced non-small cell lung cancer: a phase I subset analysis. J Clin Oncol 24:7194
52. Paz-Ares LG, Biesma B, Heigener D et al (2012) Phase III, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of gemcitabine/cisplatin alone or with sorafenib for the first-line treatment of advanced, nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 30:3084–3092
53. Scagliotti G, Novello S, von Pawel J et al (2010) Phase III study of carboplatin and paclitaxel alone or with sorafenib in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 28:1835–1842
54. Nikolinakos P, Heymach JV (2008) The tyrosine kinase inhibitor cediranib for non-small cell lung cancer and other thoracic malignancies. J Thorac Oncol 3:131–134
55. Laurie SA, Gauthier I, Arnold A et al (2008) Phase I and pharmacokinetic study of daily oral AZD2171, an inhibitor of vascular endothelial growth factor tyrosine kinases, in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: the National Cancer Institute of Canada clinical trials group. J Clin Oncol 26:1871–1878
56. Goss GD, Arnold A, Shepherd FA et al (2010) Randomized, double-blind trial of carboplatin and paclitaxel with either daily oral cediranib or placebo in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: NCIC clinical trials group BR24 study. J Clin Oncol 28:49–55

57. Laurie SA, Solomon BJ, Seymour L, et al. (2014) Randomized, double-blind trial of carboplatin and paclitaxel with daily cedirinib or placebo in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer: NCIC Clinical Trials Group study BR29. Eur J Cancer 50:706–712
58. Dy GK, Mandrekar SJ, Nelson GD et al (2013) A Randomized phase II study of gemcitabine and carboplatin with or without cediranib as first line therapy in advanced non–small-cell lung cancer: North Central Cancer Treatment Group Study N0528. J Thorac Oncol 8:79–88. doi:10.1097/JTO.0b013e318274a85d
59. Polverino A, Coxon A, Starnes C et al (2006) AMG 706, an oral, multikinase inhibitor that selectively targets vascular endothelial growth factor, platelet-derived growth factor, and kit receptors, potently inhibits angiogenesis and induces regression in tumor xenografts. Cancer Res 66:8715–8721
60. Blumenschein GR Jr, Kabbinavar F, Menon H et al (2011) A phase II, multicenter, open-label randomized study of motesanib or bevacizumab in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin for advanced nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 22:2057–2067
61. Scagliotti GV, Vynnychenko I, Park K et al (2012) International, randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind phase III study of motesanib plus carboplatin/paclitaxel in patients with advanced nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer: MONET1. J Clin Oncol 30:2829–2836
62. Wedge SR, Ogilvie DJ, Dukes M et al (2002) ZD6474 inhibits vascular endothelial growth factor signaling, angiogenesis, and tumor growth following oral administration. Cancer Res 62:4645–4655
63. Aisner J, Manola J, Dakhil SR, Stella PJ, Schiller JH (2011) Randomized phase II study of vandetanib (V), docetaxel (D), and carboplatin (C) followed by maintenance V or placebo (P) in patients with stage IIIb, IV, or recurrent non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC): PrECOG PrE0501—update on maintenance treatment, progression-free survival (PFS), and overall survival (OS). J Clin Oncol 29:7560
64. Heymach J, Paz-Ares L, De Braud F et al (2008) Randomized phase II study of vandetanib alone or with paclitaxel and carboplatin as first-line treatment for advanced non–small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 26:5407–5415
65. Kumar R, Knick VB, Rudolph SK et al (2007) Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic correlation from mouse to human with pazopanib, a multikinase angiogenesis inhibitor with potent antitumor and antiangiogenic activity. Mol Cancer Ther 6:2012–2021
66. Scagliotti GV, Felip E, Besse B et al (2013) An open-label, multicenter, randomized, phase II study of pazopanib in combination with pemetrexed in first-line treatment of patients with advanced-stage non–small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 8:1529–1537. doi:10.097/JTO.0000000000000005
67. Choueiri TK (2008) Axitinib, a novel anti-angiogenic drug with promising activity in various solid tumors. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 9:658–671
68. Belani CP, Yamamoto N, Bondarenko I et al (2012) A randomized phase II study of axitinib in combination with pemetrexed/cisplatin (pem/cis) as first-line therapy for nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr 30:7551
69. Wakelee HA, Lee JW, Hanna NH, Traynor AM, Carbone DP, Schiller JH (2012) A double-blind randomized discontinuation phase-II study of sorafenib (BAY 43–9006) in previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer patients: eastern cooperative oncology group study E2501. J Thorac Oncol 7:1574–1582
70. Spigel DR, Burris HA, Greco FA et al (2011) Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase II trial of sorafenib and erlotinib or erlotinib alone in previously treated advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 29:2582–2589
71. Molina JR, Dy GK, Foster NR et al (2011) A randomized phase II study of pemetrexed (PEM) with or without sorafenib (S) as second-line therapy in advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) of nonsquamous histology: NCCTG N0626 study. J Clin Oncol 29:7513
72. Heist RS, Wang X, Hodgson L et al (2014) CALGB 30704 (alliance): a randomized phase II study to assess the efficacy of pemetrexed or sunitinib or pemetrexed plus sunitinib in the

second-line treatment of advanced non–small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 9:214–221. doi:10.1097/JTO.0000000000000071
73. Blumenschein GR Jr, Ciuleanu T, Robert F et al (2012) Sunitinib plus erlotinib for the treatment of advanced/metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer: a lead-in study. J Thorac Oncol 7:1406–1416
74. Groen HJM, Socinski M, Grossi F et al (2010) Randomized phase ii study of sunitinib (SU) plus erlotinib (E) vs. Placebo (P) plus E for the treatment of metastatic non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Ann Oncol 21:417P
75. Scagliotti GV, Krzakowski M, Szczesna A et al (2010) Sunitinib (SU) in combination with erlotinib (E) for the treatment of advanced/metastatic nonsmall cell lung cancer (NSCLC): a phase III study. Ann Oncol 21:LBA6
76. Scagliotti GV, Krzakowski M, Szczesna A et al (2012) Sunitinib plus erlotinib versus placebo plus erlotinib in patients with previously treated advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a phase III trial. J Clin Oncol 30:2070–2078
77. De Boer RH, Arrieta O, Yang CH et al (2011) Vandetanib plus pemetrexed for the second-line treatment of advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a randomized, double-blind phase III trial. J Clin Oncol 29:1067–1074
78. Herbst RS, Sun Y, Eberhardt WE et al (2010) Vandetanib plus docetaxel versus docetaxel as second-line treatment for patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (ZODIAC): a double-blind, randomised, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol 11:619–626
79. Lee JS, Hirsh V, Park K et al (2012) Vandetanib Versus placebo in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer after prior therapy with an epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor: a randomized, double-blind phase III trial (ZEPHYR). J Clin Oncol 30:1114–1121
80. Natale RB, Thongprasert S, Greco FA et al (2011) Phase III trial of vandetanib compared with erlotinib in patients with previously treated advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 29:1059–1066
81. Lee J, Hirsh V, Park K (2010) Vandetanib versus placebo in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) after prior therapy with an EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI): a randomized, double-blind phase III trial (ZEPHYR). J Clin Oncol 28:7525
82. Hilberg F, Roth GJ, Krssak M et al (2008) BIBF 1120: triple angiokinase inhibitor with sustained receptor blockade and good antitumor efficacy. Cancer Res 68:4774–4782
83. Reck M, Kaiser R, Eschbach C et al (2011) A phase II double-blind study to investigate efficacy and safety of two doses of the triple angiokinase inhibitor BIBF 1120 in patients with relapsed advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 22:1374–1381
84. Ellis PM, Kaiser R, Zhao Y, Stopfer P, Gyorffy S, Hanna N (2010) Phase I open-label study of continuous treatment with BIBF 1120, a triple angiokinase inhibitor, and pemetrexed in pretreated non-small cell lung cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res 16:2881–2889
85. Hanna NH, Kaiser R, Sullivan RN et al (2013) Lume-lung 2: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, phase III study of nintedanib plus pemetrexed versus placebo plus pemetrexed in patients with advanced nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) after failure of first-line chemotherapy. ASCO Meet Abstr 31:8034
86. Reck M, Kaiser R, Mellemgaard A et al (2014) Docetaxel plus nintedanib versus docetaxel plus placebo in patients with previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer (LUME-Lung 1): a phase 3, double-blind, randomised controlled trial. Lancet Oncol 15:143–155
87. Gadgeel SM, Wozniak A, Edelman MJ et al (2009) Cediranib, a VEGF receptor 1, 2, and 3 inhibitor, and pemetrexed in patients (pts) with recurrent non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr 27, e19007
88. Albert DH, Tapang P, Magoc TJ et al (2006) Preclinical activity of ABT-869, a multitargeted receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor. Mol Cancer Ther 5:995–1006
89. Tan E, Goss GD, Salgia R et al (2010) A phase 2 trial of linifanib treatment in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients. Ann Oncol 21:416P
90. Shepherd FA, Giaccone G, Seymour L et al (2002) Prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of marimastat after response to first-line chemotherapy in patients

with small-cell lung cancer: a trial of the National Cancer Institute of Canada-Clinical Trials Group and the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer. J Clin Oncol 20:4434–4439
91. Dy GK, Miller AA, Mandrekar SJ et al (2005) A phase II trial of imatinib (ST1571) in patients with c-kit expressing relapsed small-cell lung cancer: a CALGB and NCCTG study. Ann Oncol 16:1811–1816
92. Johnson FM, Krug LM, Tran HT et al (2006) Phase I studies of imatinib mesylate combined with cisplatin and irinotecan in patients with small cell lung carcinoma. Cancer 106:366–374
93. Langer CJ, Albert I, Kovacs P et al (2011) A randomized phase II study of carboplatin (C) and etoposide (E) with or without pan-BCL-2 antagonist obatoclax (Ob) in extensive-stage small cell lung cancer (ES-SCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr 29:7001
94. Lara PNJ, Chansky K, Davies AM et al (2006) Bortezomib (PS-341) in relapsed or refractory extensive stage small cell lung cancer: a Southwest Oncology Group phase II trial (S0327). J Thorac Oncol 1:996–1001
95. Ellis PM, Shepherd FA, Laurie SA, et al. (2014) Brief report: NCIC CTG IND.190 phase I trial of dalotuzumab (MK-0646) in combination with cisplatin and etoposide in extensive stage small cell lung cancer (ES SCLC). J Thorac Oncol 9:410–413
96. Sattler M, Salgia R (2003) Molecular and cellular biology of small cell lung cancer. Semin Oncol 30:57–71
97. Wistuba II, Gazdar AF, Minna JD (2001) Molecular genetics of small cell lung carcinoma. Semin Oncol 28:3–13
98. Ready NE, Dudek AZ, Pang HH et al (2011) Cisplatin, irinotecan, and bevacizumab for untreated extensive-stage small-cell lung cancer: CALGB 30306, a phase II study. J Clin Oncol 29:4436–4441
99. Horn L, Dahlberg SE, Sandler AB et al (2009) Phase II study of cisplatin plus etoposide and bevacizumab for previously untreated, extensive-stage small-cell lung cancer: eastern cooperative oncology group study E3501. J Clin Oncol 27:6006–6011
100. Spigel DR, Townley PM, Waterhouse DM et al (2011) Randomized phase II study of bevacizumab in combination with chemotherapy in previously untreated extensive-stage small-cell lung cancer: results from the SALUTE trial. J Clin Oncol 29:2215–2222
101. Arnold AM, Seymour L, Smylie M et al (2007) Phase II study of vandetanib or placebo in small-cell lung cancer patients after complete or partial response to induction chemotherapy with or without radiation therapy: National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group Study BR.20. J Clin Oncol 25:4278–4284
102. Pujol JL, Breton JL, Gervais R et al (2007) Phase III double-blind, placebo-controlled study of thalidomide in extensive-disease small-cell lung cancer after response to chemotherapy: an intergroup study FNCLCC cleo04 IFCT 00–01. J Clin Oncol 25:3945–3951
103. Lee S-M, Woll PJ, James LE et al (2007) A phase III randomised, double blind, placebo controlled trial of etoposide/carboplatin with or without thalidomide in advanced small cell lung cancer (SCLC): PRS-04. J Thorac Oncol 2:S306–S307. doi:10.1097/01.JTO.0000283089.56099.79
104. Ellis PM, Jungnelius U, Zhang J, Fandi A, Beck R, Shepherd FA (2013) A phase I study of pomalidomide (CC-4047) in combination with cisplatin and etoposide in patients with extensive-stage small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 8:423–428
105. Han J, Lim KY, Kim HY et al (2011) Phase II study of sunitinib in patients with relapsed or refractory small cell lung cancer (SCLC). ASCO Meet Abstr 29:7084
106. Ready N, Pang H, Gu L et al (2013) Chemotherapy with or without maintenance sunitinib for untreated extensive-stage small cell lung cancer: a randomized, placebo controlled phase II study CALGB 30504 (ALLIANCE). ASCO Meet Abstr 31:7506
107. Gitlitz BJ, Glisson BS, Moon J, Reimers H, Gandara DR (2008) Sorafenib in patients with platinum (plat) treated extensive stage small cell lung cancer (E-SCLC): a SWOG (S0435) phase II trial. ASCO Meet Abstr 26:8039

108. Sharma N, Pennell NA, Halmos B, Ma PC, Dowlati A (2012) Phase II trial of sorafenib in conjunction with chemotherapy and as maintenance therapy in extensive-stage small cell lung cancer (SCLC): final results. ASCO Meet Abstr 30, e17563
109. Besse B, Mazieres J, Ribassin-Majed L et al (2013) Adjuvant pazopanib or placebo in resected stage I NSCLC patients: results of the NSCLC adjuvant randomized phase II trial (IFCT-0703) from the french collaborative intergroup. J Thorac Oncol 8(Suppl 2):MO08.2
110. Garon EB, Kabbinavar FF, Neidhart JA et al (2011) A randomized phase II trial of a vascular disrupting agent (VDA) fosbretabulin tromethamine (CA4P) with carboplatin (C), paclitaxel (P), and bevacizumab (B) in stage 3B/4 nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC): analysis of safety and activity of the FALCON trial. ASCO Meet Abstr 29:7559
111. O'Dwyer PJ, Papadopoulos KP, Tolcher AW et al (2012) MGCD265, a multitargeted oral tyrosine kinase receptor inhibitor of Met and VEGFR, in combination with erlotinib in patients with advanced solid tumors. ASCO Meet Abstr 30, e13602
112. Beeram M, Patnaik A, Amaravadi RK et al (2012) MGCD265, a multitargeted oral tyrosine kinase receptor inhibitor of Met and VEGFR, in combination with docetaxel. ASCO Meet Abstr 30, e13604
113. Bahleda R, Felip E, Herbst RS et al (2008) Phase I multicenter trial of BMS-690514: safety, pharmacokinetic profile, biological effects, and early clinical evaluation in patients with advanced solid tumors and non-small cell lung cancer. ASCO Meet Abstr 26:2564
114. Bahleda R, Soria J, Harbison C et al (2009) Tumor regression and pharmacodynamic (PD) biomarker validation in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients treated with the ErbB/VEGFR inhibitor BMS-690514. ASCO Meet Abstr 27:8098
115. Chow LQ, Laurie SA, Belani CP et al (2010) Phase I trial of BMS-690514 in combination with paclitaxel/carboplatin (PC) in patients with advanced or metastatic solid tumors. ASCO Meet Abstr 28:2547
116. Ratain MJ, Schwartz GK, Oza AM et al (2011) Brivanib (BMS-582664) in advanced solid tumors (AST): results of a phase II randomized discontinuation trial (RDT). ASCO Meet Abstr 29:3079
117. Altorki N, Lane ME, Bauer T et al (2010) Phase II proof-of-concept study of pazopanib monotherapy in treatment-naive patients with stage I/II resectable non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 28:3131–3137

Target Therapy in Lung Cancer

Stefano Cafarotti, Filippo Lococo, Patrizia Froesh, Francesco Zappa, and Dutly Andrè

Introduction

Lung cancer is an extremely heterogeneous disease, with well over 50 different histological variants recognized under the fourth revision of the World Health Organization (WHO) typing system [1]. Because these variants have differing genetic and biological properties correct classification of lung cancer is necessary to assure that lung cancer patients receive optimum management. Due to the recent understanding that histologic typing and *EGFR* mutation status are important for target the therapy in lung adenocarcinoma patients [2] there was a great need for a new classification that addresses diagnostic issues and strategic management to allow for molecular testing in small biopsy and cytology specimens. For this reason and in order to address advances in lung cancer treatment an international multidisciplinary classification was proposed by the International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer (IASLC), American Thoracic Society (ATS), and European Respiratory Society (ERS) [3],

S. Cafarotti (✉)
Unit of Thoracic Surgery, EOC-ORBV, Bellinzona, Switzerland
e-mail: cafarottistefano@gmail.com

F. Lococo
Unit of Thoracic Surgery, IRCCS-Arcispedale Santa Maria Nuova, Reggio Emilia, Italy

P. Froesh
Unit of Oncology, IOSI, Bellinzona, Switzerland

F. Zappa
Unit of Oncology, Clinica Luganese Moncucco, Lugano, Switzerland

D. Andrè
Unit of Thoracic Surgery, Chefarzt der neuen Klinik für Thoraxchirurgie am Kantonsspital St. Gallen, Switzerland

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_6

further increasing the histological heterogeneity and improving the existing WHO-classification. Is now the beginning of personalized therapy era that is ideally finalized to treat each individual case of lung cancer in different way.

Oncogenic EGFR Mutation

The EGFR family of TKs referred to as the HER or ErbB family, consists of four members – EGFR (HER1/ErbB1), HER2 (ErbB2), HER3 (ErbB3) and HER4 (ErbB4). These members regulate many physiological processes and are involved in the modulation of cell proliferation, apoptosis, cell motility and neovascularisation, thus being able to induce important mechanisms related to cancerogenesis [4, 5]. The EGFR tyrosine kinase works through the auto-activation of the receptor via its homo/heterodimerization and autophosphorylation on tyrosine-rich cytosolic domains after the binding of the ligand. This leads to the beginning of two main downstream intermediate pathways: the PIK3CA/AKT1/MTOR pathway and the RAS/RAF1/MAP2K1/MAPK1 kinases [6]. There is evidence that the activated EGFR can also mediate signals through the STAT transcription factors [7, 8]. Improper activation and over-expression of EGFR-TK results in increased cell proliferation, survival, invasion and metastasis. This has been implicated in the pathogenesis and progression of many malignancies as well as in the poor prognosis of patients [7, 9, 10]. In malignant cells, including NSCLC cells, the activity of the receptor may become dysregulated and no longer under the control of inherent inhibitory mechanisms [11]. Spontaneous EGFR mutations often are oncogenic; that is, they activate the EGFR-signalling pathway in the absence of ligand and promote cell proliferation, survival and anti-apoptotic signals. These signalling networks make EGFR-mutated cells dependent on a functional EGFR for their survival, rendering them addicted to the receptor. Inhibition of EGFR leads to up-regulation of pro-apoptotic molecules and finally results in cell death through the activation of the intrinsic mitochondrial apoptotic pathway [12, 13]. There are several described mutations in the EGFR gene. The two most common are: (1) short in-frame deletions around the LREA motif of exon 19 (~45–50 % of mutations); and (2) a point mutation (CTG to CGG) in exon 21 that results in substitution of leucine by arginine at codon 858, L858R (~45–50 % of mutations) [14, 15]. These mutations are more frequently found in NSCLC with an adenocarcinoma histology, tumors in women, East Asians and never smokers [14–16]. EGFR mutations in lung cancers constitute one of the major subsets among those molecular aberrations occurring in lung cancers. The incidence of EGFR mutations in tumors with non-small-cell histology ranges from ~15 % in Caucasians to ~50 % in East Asians [17]; 95 % of such mutations have been found in adenocarcinomas [18]. Patients bearing EGFR mutations have shown favourable clinical outcomes even with conventional chemotherapy suggesting that EGFR may serve as a predictive factor as well as a prognostic factor [19]. Over 50 % of patients diagnosed with NSCLC present with stage IIIB or IV disease is not amenable to curative treatment [20] and the only

pathologic material guiding systemic therapy may be small biopsy and cytology specimens. Until the recent use of TKIs, the standard first-line treatment for most patients with unresectable NSCLC and good performance status has involved the use of a combination of chemotherapy regimens (usually cisplatin-based), which from the 1970s and 1980s were shown to reproducibly achieve objective response in 20–30 % of advanced NSCLC patients. The most common combination regimens in use at present are gemcitabine with either cisplatin or carboplatin, followed by paclitaxel-carboplatin, vinorelbine-platinum and docetaxel-platinum combinations [21, 22]. The addition of the recombinant humanized monoclonal antibody bevacizumab that binds to vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) to carboplatin and paclitaxel for the treatment of non-squamous advanced NSCLC has demonstrated to increase RR, PFS and OS when compared to chemotherapy alone [23]. Disease progression affects almost all patients after initial treatment and requires additional therapy. The agents approved for second-line therapy in advanced NSCLC are docetaxel [24], pemetrexed [25] and erlotinib [26]. When tested in randomized trials [24–26], these agents have demonstrated a PFS below 2–3 months with a median overall survival no longer than 9 months in very few unselected patients. Despite recent advances with approval of more active chemotherapeutic and anti-angiogenesis agents for stage IV NSCLC, standard therapy can provide only modest clinical benefits with significant toxicities when used in unselected patients. In 2004, the identification of somatic mutations in the EGFR gene provided the first glimpse of a possible target for a treatment [27, 28] which could maximize clinical outcome in those patients who could benefit from a personalized therapy [29]. This implies the identification of certain characteristic molecular lesions meant to be causally responsible for maintenance of the malignant phenotype and also distinctive of the cancer cells. Therapies targeted to these molecular lesions offer the prospect for tumor control and selectivity with less toxicity than traditional chemotherapy.

Several phase III trials (IPASS; WJTOG 3405; NEJ 002; OPTIMAL; EURTAC) have by now demonstrated dramatic improvement in response rates, quality of life, symptoms, and median progression-free-survival (by 2–5 months) with first-line EGFR-TKI therapy compared with standard platinum-doublet chemotherapy in patients with EGFR mutation-positive NSCLC. Gefitinib and erlotinib were the first two agents to target the tyrosine kinase domain of the EGFR. Both these agents showed encouraging activity in patients with NSCLC who had been previously treated with chemotherapy in the phase I series and then in phase II trials [30, 31]. In order to determine whether an EGFR TKI or chemotherapy is the appropriate first-line therapy, the latest guidelines recommend mutation testing for all patients with advanced NSCLC tumor. All EGFR-mutated patients treated with gefitinib or erlotinib invariably develop acquired resistance to this kind of therapy [32, 33] (Fig. 1). The most common and first identified mutation is the threonine-790 to methionine (T790M) point mutation in exon 20 which represents approximately 50 % of all acquired resistance in NSCLC [34]. The development of such genetic alteration restores the EGFR TK affinity to ATP, rendering first-generation TKIs inactive [35, 36]. Other secondary resistance mutations within the same gene have been reported infrequently (L747S, D761Y,T854A). Other mechanisms of acquired

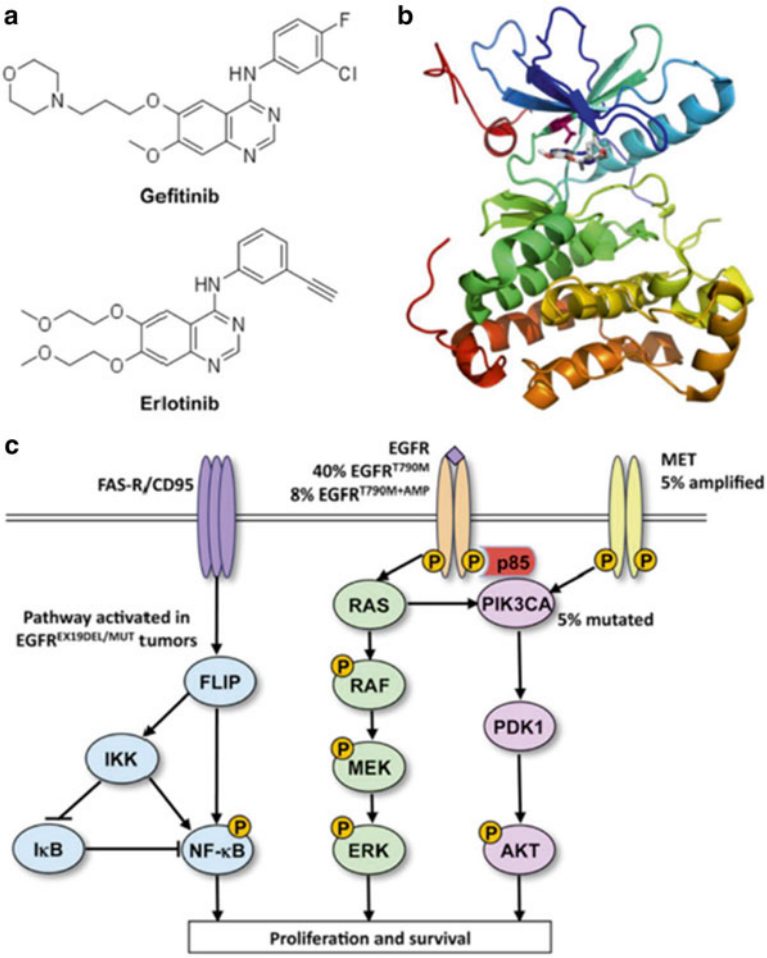


Fig. 1 Ways to leave your EGFR inhibitor: biochemical pathways leading to resistance to small molecule EGFR drugs such as gefitinib and erlotinib. (**a**) Structures of two approved EGFR TKIs, gefitinib and erlotinib, used in the treatment of NSCLC. (**b**) Ribbon diagram of wild-type human EGFR (PDB code 2ITY), illustrating binding of gefitinib to the active site of the kinase. The *magenta ball-stick* (located just above the gefitinib molecule in the active site) indicates the gatekeeper residue (threonine790) that is commonly mutated to methionine (T790M), resulting in reduced inhibitor binding and drug resistance. (**c**) Simplified pathway diagram of EGFR signaling through RAS/MEK/ERK and PI3K/PDK1/AKT indicating the points of mutation/amplification in EGFR TKI resistance as reported by Sequist and colleagues. The resistance mechanisms include the EGFR T790M gatekeeper mutation, amplification of EGFR T790M, MET amplification, and PI3KCA mutation (note that additional epithelial to mesenchymal transition changes and transformation from the NSCLC to the SCLC phenotype also lead to resistance but are not covered by this illustration). The illustration also shows the FAS/NF-kB signaling arm downstream of the FAS death receptor that was shown to be important in TKI resistance by Bivona and colleagues (*Reprinted from Cancer Cell, 19, Paul Workman and Paul A. Clarke, "Resisting Targeted Therapy: Fifty Ways to Leave Your EGFR", 437–440, 2011, with permission from Elsevier*)

resistance include MET gene amplification (also accounting for up to 20 % of pre-treatment tumoral resistances) [37], increased signalling through parallel pathways such as the ones of VEGF [38] and IGF1R [30], mutations and activation of PIK3CA [40] and transformation into a small-cell lung cancer phenotype [41]. Management of EGFR tumor resistance has become the next challenge in order to lengthen these patients' overall survival; identification of the molecular resistance mechanisms will allow for the treatment of TKI-resistant tumors. A new class of drugs, the so-called second-generation TKIs, may be able to overcome the T790M mutation resistant cell. Compared to first-generation TKIs, these molecules show higher affinity for the ATP-binding domain, form an irreversible covalent bond to the ATP-binding site and are able to stimulate other receptors (e.g. HER2). Neratinib (HKI-272), one of the three agents investigated, hasn't shown good RR when tested on patients with known T790M mutation [42], therefore further development of this drug in lung cancer has been halted.

Clinical and Surgical Implications of the EGFR-Mutations Pattern

1. **EGFR mutational profile in the pre-treatment assessment of NSCLC**

As the EGFR mutational profile of NSCLCs is a strong predictor of response to therapy with the highly effective TKIs the most recent algorithms for the management of advanced NSCLCs underline the importance of EGFR molecular testing prior to the initiation of therapy and in particular, EGFR mutations should be sought in those NSCLCs in which they occur most frequently such us in the adenocarcinomas. Due to the recent understanding that histologic typing and *EGFR* mutation status are important for target the therapy in lung adenocarcinoma patients [2] there was a great need for a new classification that addresses diagnostic issues and strategic management to allow for molecular testing in small biopsy and cytology specimens.

All previous WHO classifications have addressed histologic classification primarily based on resection specimens. Since only 30 % of lung cancers are resectable, the vast majority of lung cancer patients present with advanced disease and are diagnosed based on small biopsy and cytology specimens. In 2011, the International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer, American Thoracic Society, and European Respiratory Society proposed a new classification for lung adenocarcinoma that included a number of changes to previous classifications. This classification now considers resection specimens and small biopsies well as cytology specimens. For resection specimens, the new terms of adenocarcinoma in situ and minimally invasive adenocarcinoma are introduced for small adenocarcinomas with pure lepidic and predominantly lepidic growth, with invasion $\leq$5 mm, respectively. Invasive adenocarcinomas are now classified by their predominant pattern as lepidic, acinar, papillary, and solid; a micropapillary pattern is newly added.

This classification also provides guidance for small biopsies due to the recent understanding that histologic typing and EGFR mutation status are important for target the therapy in lung adenocarcinoma patients. Actually, the value of adenocarcinoma in situ or minimally invasive adenocarcinoma for early stage NSCLC and the value of EGFR expressed in patients with advanced NSCLC predicting a benefit in terms of survival.

In the near future more surgical biopsies (in early and advanced disease) may be needed to define the best therapeutic strategy.

2. **EGFR mutational profile in post-treatment assessment of locally-advanced NSCLC**

It seems that chemotherapy is able to modify the EGFR expression in NSCLCs by increasing or decreasing it [44].

This chemotherapy-related change may partially explain why chemotherapy resistant tumors are less sensitive to EGFR-TKI treatment than chemotherapy-naive tumors [45].

Moreover, the modification of the EGFR mutational pattern during chemotherapy may also explain why almost all clinical trials involving second-line TKI therapy have failed to show a positive correlation between EGFR mutation and progression-free or overall survival [26, 46].

Moreover, the shift in tumors from EGFR mutation status to wild-type status observed after first-line chemotherapy suggests that both mutant and nonmutant cancer cells coexist in the same tumor.

To identify intratumor heterogeneity, Bai and co-workers [47] microdissected and analyzed EGFR mutation status in more than 2506 tumor foci of 79 tumors from patients with NSCLC who underwent palliative surgery. Approximately 38 % of tumors contained both EGFR-mutant and wild-type foci. It is interesting to note that a majority of EGFRmutation changes after chemotherapy were from mutant state to wild type, suggesting that cancer cells harboring EGFR mutations might be more sensitive to chemotherapy than those without mutation. Furtherly, Bai and coll. analyzed the relationships between chemotherapy responses and the shift of EGFR mutation status and found patients who achieved PR were more likely to have had EGFR mutation shift than those achieving SD (Stable Disease) or PD (Progression Disease) after chemotherapy.

Therefore, it may be reasonable assumed that EGFR mutation shift could be related to the heterogeneity of intratumoral EGFR mutation and to different chemo-sensitivity levels of mutant and wild-type cells. These findings should be considered in future studies designed to elucidate the predictive role of EGFR mutation in second-line TKI therapy for patients with NSCLC.

Finally, no studies have been reported till now to investigate EGFR mutational pattern before and after chemotherapy administered with induction intent in locally-advanced potentially resectable (Stage IIIa) NSCLC. As the matter of fact, it may be interesting to investigate the effect of induction chemotherapy – usually based on cisplatinum derivates among with gemcitabine- on the EGFR

mutational pattern, this representing an extreme simplified model first of all to evaluate the clonal resistance of neoplastic cells to drugs and also to investigate the biological response of the disease and the theoretical response to TKIs agents in alternative or in combination with surgical resection of the tumor following the induction protocol.

3. **EGFR mutational profile in the evaluation of suspicious second primary NSCLC**

A better acknowledgement of the correlation between EGFR-mutations pattern and clonality in NSCLC may be extremely useful for other clinical scenarios.

As well, the assessment of multifocal lung tumours and the distinction of synchronous primary tumours from intrapulmonary metastases represents an important problem as this decision significantly influences tumour staging and subsequent treatment strategies.

In order to provide a basis for evidence-based treatment decisions in those patients, some Authors [48–50] have analysed the clonal relationship of multifocal NSCLC with indistinguishable histomorphology in a series of NSCLC patients.

In detail, Warth and co-workers have tested KRAS and EGFR mutations using polymorphic short tandem repeat markers in 78 suspicious multifocal NSCLC patients. Despite the limitation of the small sample, these preliminary data suggested a common clonal origin indicative of intrapulmonary metastases in almost two thirds (∼62 %) of the cases, while ∼36 % of multifocal NSCLC displayed unique molecular profiles suggesting separate primary tumours.

Therefore, as already suggested in 2 [51] although the IASLC/ATS/ERS classification recommended testing only patients with advanced adenocarcinomas for epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutations, we strongly advocate the assessment of EGFR mutations also in patients with synchronous/metachronous primary adenocarcinomas, because the eventual differences in clonality may indeed be a helpful tool for the differential diagnosis of pulmonary metastases vs secondary lung neoplasms.

Conclusion

It is reasonable to suggest that personalized therapy for NSCLC patients should include a genetic assessment of the EGFR mutational status for individual patients.

The appropriate role of an EGFR mutation routine analysis in the treatment of patients with NSCLC continues to evolve. In this context, preliminary evidences have emerged in the last decade, supporting the concept that EGFR mutation assessment may be a useful tool with clinically relevant implications in almost all settings of NSCLC treatment.

Further clinical trials should evaluate the ability of preoperative TKIs to achieve better results than can be obtained with platinum-based chemotherapy in locally advanced EGFRmut(+) NSCLC patients.

Finally, a close cooperation between clinicians, surgeons, molecular biologists and pathologists is crucial for a continuous improvement in the field of NSCLC target therapy.

References

1. Travis WD, Brambilla E, Muller-Hermelink HK, Harris CC (eds) (2004) World Health Organization classification of tumours. Pathology and genetics of tumours of the lung, pleura, thymus and heart. IARC Press, Lyon
2. Antonicelli A, Cafarotti S, Indini A, Galli A et al (2013) EGFR-targeted therapy for non-small cell lung cancer: focus on EGFR oncogenic mutation. Int J Med Sci 10(3):320–330
3. Travis WD et al (2011) IASLC/ATS/ERS international multidisciplinary classification of lung adenocarcinoma. J Thorac Oncol 6(2):244–285
4. Cheng L, Zhang S, Alexander R et al (2011) The landscape of EGFR pathways and personalized management of non-small-cell lung cancer. Future Oncol 7:519–541
5. Normanno N, De Luca A, Bianco C et al (2006) Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) signaling in cancer. Gene 366:2–16
6. Hynes NE, Lane HA (2005) ERBB receptors and cancer: the complexity of targeted inhibitors. Nat Rev Cancer 5:341–354
7. Hirsch FR, Varella-Garcia M, Capuzzo F (2009) Predictive value of EGFR and HER2 overexpression in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Oncogene 28:S32–S37
8. Quesnelle KM, Boehm AL, Grandis JR (2007) STAT-mediated EGFR signaling in cancer. J Cell Biochem 102(2):311–319
9. Wang X, Zhang S, MacLennan GT et al (2008) Epidermal growth factor receptor protein expression and gene amplification in the chemorefractory metastatic embryonal carcinoma. Mod Pathol 22:7–12
10. Wang X, Zhang S, MacLennan GT et al (2007) Epidermal growth factor receptor protein expression and gene amplification in small cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder. Clin Cancer Res 13:953–957
11. Herbst RS, Heymach JV, Lippman SM (2008) Lung cancer. N Engl J Med 359:1367–1380
12. Costa DB, Halmos B, Kumar A et al (2007) BIM mediates EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor-induced apoptosis in lung cancers with oncogenic EGFR mutations. PLoS Med 4:1669–1679
13. Sharma SV, Haber DA, Settleman J (2007) Epidermal growth factor receptor mutations in lung cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 7:169–181
14. Sequist LV, Bell DW, Lynch TJ et al (2007) Molecular predictor of response to epidermal growth factor receptor antagonists in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 25:587–595
15. Ladanyi M, Pao W (2008) Lung adenocarcinoma: guiding EGFR-targeted therapy and beyond. Mod Pathol 21(Suppl 2):S16–S22
16. Shigematsu H, Lin L, Takahashi T et al (2005) Clinical and biological features associated with epidermal growth factor receptor gene mutations in lung cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 97:339–346
17. Pao W, Girard N (2011) New driver mutations in non-small-cell lung cancer. Lancet Oncol 12:175–180
18. Yamamoto H, Toyooka S, Mitsudomi T (2009) Impact of EGFR mutation analysis in non-small-cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 63:315–321
19. Eberhard DA, Johnson BE, Amler LC et al (2005) Mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor and in KRAS are predictive and prognostic indicators in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer treated with chemotherapy alone and in combination with erlotinib. J Clin Oncol 23:5900–5909

20. Schrump DS, Altorki NK, Henschke CL et al (2005) Non-small cell lung cancer. In: DeVita VT (ed) Cancer: principles and practices of oncology. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, pp 753–810
21. Azzoli CG, Baker S Jr, Temin S et al (2009) American society of clinical oncology clinical practice guideline update on chemotherapy for stage IV non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 27:6251–6266
22. Fossella F, Pereira JR, von Pawel J et al (2003) Randomized, multinational phase III study of docetaxel plus platinum combinations versus vinorelbine plus cisplatin for advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: the TAX 326 study group. J Clin Oncol 21:3016–3022
23. Sandler A, Gray R, Perry MC et al (2006) Paclitaxel-carboplatin alone or with bevacizumab for non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 355:2542–2550
24. Shepherd FA, Dancey J, Ramlau R et al (2000) Prospective randomized trial of docetaxel *versus* best supportive care in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer previously treated with platinum-based chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 18:2095–2103
25. Hanna N, Shepherd FA, Fossella FV et al (2004) Randomized phase III trial of pemetrexed versus docetaxel in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer previously treated with chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 22:1589–1597
26. Shepherd FA, Rodrigues PJ, Ciuleanu T et al (2005) Erlotinib in previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 353:123–132
27. Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R et al (2004) Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. N Engl J Med 350:2129–2139
28. Paez JG, Janne PA, Lee JC et al (2004) EGFR mutations in lung cancer: correlation with clinical response to gefitinib therapy. Science 304:1497–1500
29. Fujita S, Katakami N, Masago K et al (2012) Customized chemotherapy based on epidermal growth factor receptor mutation status for elderly patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a phase II trial. BMC Cancer 12:185
30. Mok TS, Wu YL, Thongprasert S et al (2009) Gefitinib or carboplatin-paclitaxel in pulmonary adenocarcinoma. N Engl J Med 361:947–957
31. Maemondo M, Inoue A, Kobayashi K et al (2010) Gefitinib or chemotherapy for non-small-cell lung cancer with mutated EGFR. N Engl J Med 362:2380–2388
32. Nguyen KS, Kobayashi S, Costa DB (2009) Acquired resistance to epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors in non-small-cell lung cancers dependent on the epidermal growth factor receptor pathway. Clin Lung Cancer 10:281–289
33. Jackman D, Pao W, Riely GJ et al (2010) Clinical definition of acquired resistance to epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 28:357–360
34. Suda K, Onozato R, Yatabe Y et al (2009) EGFR T790M mutation: a double role in lung cancer survival? J Thorac Oncol 4:1–4
35. Pao W, Miller VA, Politi KA et al (2005) Acquired resistance of lung adenocarcinomas to gefitinib or erlotinib is associated with a second mutation in the EGFR kinase domain. PLoS Med 2:e73, Int J Med Sci (2013) Vol. 10 http://www.medsci.org 329
36. Yun CH, Mengwasser KE, Toms AV et al (2008) The T790M mutation in EGFR kinase causes drug resistance by increasing the affinity for ATP. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:2070–2075
37. Chen HJ, Mok TS, Chen ZH et al (2009) Clinicopathologic and molecular features of epidermal growth factor receptor T790M mutation and c-MET amplification in tyrosine kinase inhibitor-resistant Chinese non small cell lung cancer. Pathol Oncol Res 15:651–658
38. Viloria-Petit A, Crombet T, Jothy S et al (2001) Acquired resistance to the antitumor effect of epidermal growth factor receptor-blocking antibodies in vivo: a role for altered tumor angiogenesis. Cancer Res 61:5090–5101
39. Guix M, Faber AC, Wang SE et al (2008) Acquired resistance to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors in cancer cells is mediated by loss of IGF-binding proteins. J Clin Invest 118:2609–2619
40. Okudela K, Suzuki M, Kageyama S et al (2007) PIK3CA mutation and amplification in human lung cancer. Pathol Int 57:664–671

41. Yamamoto H, Shigematsu H, Nomura M et al (2008) PIK3CA mutations and copy number gains in human lung cancers. Cancer Res 68:6913–6921
42. Sequist LV, Waltman BA, Dias-Santagata D et al (2011) Genotypic and histological evolution of lung cancers acquiring resistance to EGFR inhibitors. Sci Transl Med 3, 75ra26
43. Sequist LV, Besse B, Lynch TJ et al (2010) Neratinib, an irreversible pan-ErbB receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor: results of phase II trial in patients with advanced non small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 28:3076–3083
44. Jakobsen JN, Sorensen JB (2012) Intratumor heterogeneity and chemotherapy-induced changes in EGFR status in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 69(2):289–299
45. Rosell R, Moran T, Queralt C et al (2009) Screening for epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutations in lung cancer. N Engl J Med 361:958–966
46. Thatcher N, Chang A, Parikh P et al (2005) Gefitinib plus best supportive care in previously treated patients with refractory advanced nonsmall-cell lung cancer: results from a randomised, placebo-controlled, multicentre study (Iressa Survival Evaluation in Lung Cancer). Lancet 366:1527–1537
47. Bai H, Wang Z, Chen K, Zhao J, Lee JJ, Wang S, Zhou Q, Zhuo M, Mao L, An T, Duan J, Yang L, Wu M, Liang Z, Wang Y, Kang X, Wang J (2012) Influence of chemotherapy on EGFR mutation status among patients with non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 30(25):3077–3083
48. Warth A, Macher-Goeppinger S, Muley T, Thomas M, Hoffmann H, Schnabel PA, Penzel R, Schirmacher P, Aulmann S (2012) Clonality of multifocal non-small cell lung cancer: implications for staging and therapy. Eur Respir J 39:1437–1442
49. Girard N, Deshpande C, Azzoli CG, Rusch VW, Travis WD, Ladanyi M, Pao W (2010) Use of epidermal growth factor receptor/Kirsten rat sarcoma 2 viral oncogene homolog mutation testing to define clonal relationships among multiple lung adenocarcinomas: comparison with clinical guidelines. Chest 137(1):46–52
50. Chung JH, Choe G, Jheon S, Sung SW, Kim TJ, Lee KW, Lee JH, Lee CT (2009) Epidermal growth factor receptor mutation and pathologic-radiologic correlation between multiple lung nodules with ground-glass opacity differentiates multicentric origin from intrapulmonary spread. J Thorac Oncol 4(12):1490–1495
51. Lococo F, Cesario A, Leuzzi G, Apolone G (2014) Second primary non-small-cell lung cancer: implications of the new adenocarcinoma classification in the challenging decision of the best surgical strategy. Eur J Cardiothorac Surg 45:1115–1116

Mechanisms of Resistance to EGFR Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors and Therapeutic Approaches: An Update

Aarif Ahsan

Abstract Resistance to epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) in non small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) is mediated by two major mechanisms namely secondary mutation T790M in EGFR and cMET amplification. Other molecular mediators which contribute towards TKI resistance include the activation of compensatory growth signaling, epithelial mesenchymal transition and microRNAs regulating EGFR and cMET levels. In this chapter, we have included the major mechanisms which contribute towards EGFR TKI resistance in NSCLC. Several therapeutic approaches to overcome TKI resistance are also presented which include second and third generation EGFR TKI inhibitors and cMET inhibitors. Further, the rationale to utilize the combination therapies to simultaneously target EGFR and other major oncogene addictive pathway such as ERBB2 and AXL kinase is outlined. Another promising approach to overcome TKI resistance is to potentiate EGFR protein for degradation. These studies will best be utilized when we can identify the oncogene addictions in an individual patient and tailor the therapy/therapies accordingly for the maximum benefits.

Keywords EGFR • Non small cell lung cancer • TKI resistance • cMET • Erlotinib

EGFR Activating (Drug Sensitive) Mutations

Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) is a receptor tyrosine kinase which belongs to the EGFR family, consisting of four members: EGFR, ERBB2, ERBB3, and ERBB4. Under physiological conditions, binding of ligands (e.g., epidermal growth factor, transforming growth factor-alpha, amphiregulin) activate the tyrosine

A. Ahsan (✉)
Department of Radiation Oncology, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI 48109, USA

Bioconjugate Drug Discovery, Oncology Research Unit, Pfizer Inc.,
401 N. Middletown Rd., Pearl River, NY 10965, USA
e-mail: aarif.ahsan@pfizer.com

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_7

kinase activity of EGFR via homo- or heterodimerization with EGFR family members [1]. In non small cell lung cancer (NSCLC), mutations in EGFR occur in exons encoding the ATP-binding pocket of the kinase domain (exons 18–21). In a cohort of nearly 1200 patients harboring EGFR mutations which are linked to clinical outcomes, more than 145 different types of nucleotide changes have been reported within the EGFR kinase domain [2]. However, the most clinically relevant and extensively studied drug-sensitive mutations are deletions in exon 19 that eliminate a common amino acid motif (LREA) and point mutations in exon 21 that lead to a substitution of arginine for leucine at position 858 (L858R). Together, these two classes of mutations account for approximately 85 % of *EGFR* mutations in NSCLC. They are constitutively active and oncogenic [3, 4] due to the disruption of autoinhibitory interactions in EGFR [5]. Biochemical studies indicate that these mutants preferentially bind to first generation tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) like gefitinib and erlotinib over ATP, which account for the dramatic response of patients harboring these mutations to TKIs [5, 6]. Other potential drug-sensitive mutations occur at much lower frequency: G719×(3 %), L861×(2 %), [2] and exon 19 insertions (1 %) [7]. The former two were associated with drug sensitivity in the original reports on EGFR mutations [8, 9], whereas the exon 19 insertions were recently reported as drug sensitive [7]. The rarity of clinical data associated with these less frequent mutants has made it more difficult to determine how drug sensitive they are in patients, however new data are emerging.

Mechanisms of Resistance to TKIs

T790M Mutation in EGFR

Despite initial response to EGFR first generation TKIs, patients with mutant *EGFR* NSCLC experience disease progression within 12 months of treatment [10]. The most common mechanism of acquired resistance is the emergence of a secondary mutation in exon 20, T790M, within the catalytic cleft of EGFR. T790M mutations are detected in approximately 50 % of NSCLCs that become resistant to first-generation EGFR TKIs [11]. The T790M mutation was identified in the germline of a family predisposed to NSCLC, indicating an important role in NSCLC genetic susceptibility [12]. An analysis of pretreatment biopsies from NSCLC patients with *EGFR* mutations who subsequently received erlotinib reported that the incidence of double *EGFR* mutations (L858R or exon 19 deletion as well as T790M) was 35 % (45 of 129) with no difference in the initial response to erlotinib (63.6 % versus 72.3 %) in patients with or without T790M mutations. However, those patients showed lower progression free survival where T790M mutation was present [13]. These findings suggest that the T790M mutation may be present in some patients prior to TKI therapy and may be selected during therapy because of the treatment resistance associated with the mutation, suggesting the possibility of intrinsic resistance in these patients. Initially, steric hindrance of TKIs by the

"gatekeeper" T790M mutation has been hypothesized as the basis for T790M induced TKI resistance. Furthermore, the presence of T790M mutation increases the ATP affinity of the oncogenic L858R mutant by approximately fivefold. Therefore, enhanced ATP affinity reduces the ability of reversible TKIs such as gefitinib and erlotinib to effectively compete with ATP binding. These factors lead to a dramatically reduced potency of TKIs in the setting of the L858R and T790M double mutation [6].

cMET Amplification

Amplification of Hepatocyte growth factor receptor (HGFR/cMET), a receptor tyrosine kinase, was detected in up to 20 % of NSCLC patients that developed acquired resistance to gefitinib or erlotinib. Although, cMET amplification can coexist with the EGFR T790M mutation, approximately 60 % of MET amplification is independent of T790M mutation [14, 15]. cMET amplification was originally identified in a laboratory model of gefitinib resistance using HCC827 human EGFR mutant NSCLC cells. In this gefitinib resistant model, cells with EGFR TKI resistance developed dependency on cMET signaling to activate phospho AKT through ERBB3-mediated activation of PI3K signaling in the presence of EGFR TKIs [15]. Additionally, the cMET ligand hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) is also shown to induce gefitinib resistance through activation of cMET-PI3K signaling [16]. As seen in case of T790M mutations, cMET amplification was also observed at a low frequency in NSCLC patients prior to treatment and was associated with the development of acquired resistance to EGFR TKIs [17]. Together these findings suggest that EGFR TKI treatment may select for preexisting cells with cMET amplification to develop EGFR TKI resistance.

Epithelial Mesenchymal Transition (EMT)

Another mechanism which is shown to confer the resistance to TKI is an increase in EMT in NSCLC [10, 18]. In one study, the erlotinib resistant HCC4006 cells were shown to acquire mesenchymal phenotype and exhibited significant down regulation of E-cadherin [19]. EMT in response to TKI conferring resistance was mediated by TGF Beta and IL-6 axis. Other studies suggest the involvement of ERK2 signaling in TGF Beta mediated EMT in non-transformed cells [20–24]. In these tumors, ERK2 amplification was speculated to be responsible for EMT and TKI resistance [25]. In a recent study, authors utilized tumor xenografts with acquired resistance to erlotinib and found alterations in the expression of several genes that are established biomarkers of erlotinib resistance. For example in resistant tumors, elevated levels of COL6A1 (encoding a type IV collagen), HMGA1 and HMGA2 and reduced levels of keratin genes were found. Importantly, a critical mediator of EMT, AXL kinase was found to be dramatically induced by erlotinib resistance [26]. AXL kinase is a tyrosine protein kinase receptor UFO, which is involved in

stimulation of cell proliferation [27]. In the TKI resistant tumors, up regulation of AXL kinase was found to be the second most prevalent mechanism by which resistance occurs followed by T790M mutation. Activation of AXL kinase occurred due to its over-expression as well as up regulation of its ligand GAS6 in the setting of resistant tumors. The up regulation of AXL kinase activity was a part of EMT associated transcriptional program and Vimentin was involved in it. In this study, AXL-overexpressing HCC827 erlotinib resistant cells showed increased migration and adhesion, the properties associated with EMT and the metastatic behavior of tumor cells. These findings are consistent with previous studies showing that over-expression of AXL is associated with increased metastasis in several types of cancers [28]. These findings also advocate that activation of multiple pathways involved in EMT may promote resistance to EGFR TKIs downstream of AXL upregulation. It is well studied that AXL can drive the growth of cancer cells through activation of several oncogenic pathways [28–30]. It will be important to determine the degree to which AXL activation may cooperate with other genetic and genomic alterations to induce resistance to EGFR inhibitors and other molecularly targeted therapies in NSCLC. The loss of E-cadherin can also be mediated by upregulation of Cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2) metabolite, Prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) [31–33]. PGE2 induces rapid ERK phosphorylayion, reduce E-cadherin levels and upregulate the transcriptional repressors zinc-finger E-box binding homeobox 1 (ZEB-1) and zinc-finger factor Snail homologue 1 (Snail) in NSCLC. COX-2 inhibitors were shown to reverse these effects. Therefore, PGE2 or other inflammatory cytokines in the tumor microenvironment may contribute to EGFR TKI resistance in NSCLC by suppressing E-cadherin expression. These findings also provide a strong rationale for simultaneously targeting EGFR and COX-2 for lung cancer treatment.

Epigenetic Mechanisms

The involvement of specific micro RNAs (miRNAs) in regulating the expression of EGFR and cMET receptor tyrosine kinases and consequently, the metastatic behavior and gefitinib resistance in NSCLC is also reported [34]. miR-221 and miR-222 is shown to be regulated by c-MET and miR-30b, miR-30c, miR-221 and miR222 are regulated by both EGFR and cMET. In response to gefitinib treatment, miR-30b, miR-30c, miR-221 and miR222 get down regulated and consequently, Apoptotic protease activating factor 1 (APAF-1) and B cell lymphoma 2 interacting mediator of cell death (BIM) get up regulated in TKI sensitive cells. In gefitinib resistant cells, the levels of these four miRNAs did not decrease suggesting for their involvement in TKI resistance. Further, cMET inhibitors down regulate miR-30b, miR-30c, miR-221 and miR222 in TKI resistant cells. Taken together, these findings indicate that modulation of miR-30b, miR-30c, miR-221 and miR222 could have therapeutic implications to sensitize TKI resistant tumors. miR-221 and miR-222 has also been shown to regulated Phosphatase and Tensin homolog (PTEN) expression which might contribute towards TKI resistance [35–37]. Loss of PTEN is shown to aberrantly activate EGFR and c-MET signaling.

Targeting the Resistance Mechanisms

Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors

To overcome the TKI resistance mediated by first generation TKIs, the second and third generation EGFR inhibitors are being developed which are outlined in Table 1.

Second Generations Inhibitors

The development of drugs that bind irreversibly to ERBB family members and/or inhibit multiple targets simultaneously, are being investigated to treat NSCLCs that are resistant to first-generation EGFR TKIs [11]. Unlike reversible TKIs, irreversible TKIs contain a reactive Michael-acceptor group that binds covalently with Cys797 present at the ATP-binding cleft of mutant EGFR. This approach provides greater presence at the ATP site and overcoming the competition with ATP [6, 38]. The ability of an irreversible TKI to overcome resistance was demonstrated in vitro in mutant EGFR cell lines [39]. Several investigational irreversible multitargeted HER family TKIs (Table 1) are being evaluated in patients with NSCLC. These include neratinib or HKI-272 (Wyeth, which was acquired by Pfizer in 2009, New London, CT), PF00299804 (Pfizer), and afatinib or BIBW 2992 (Boehringer Ingelheim, Ingelheim, Germany).

Table 1 Details and status of EGFR TKIs

Drug name	Generic name	Target	Status
Reversible			
ZD1839	Gefitinib	EGFR	Approved
OSI776	Erlotinib	EGFR	Approved
BPI-2009H	Icotinib	EGFR	Approved
TAK-165	Mubritinib	EGFR/ERBB2	Phase I
XL647	NA	EGFR/ERBB2/FLT-4	Phase II
ZD6474	Vandetanib	EGFR/ERBB2/RET	Phase III
GW572016	Lapatinib	EGFR/ERBB2	Preclinical
Irreversible			
EKB-569	Pelitinib	EGFR	Phase I
CI-1033	Canertinib	EGFR/ERBB2/ERBB4	Phase II
HKI-272	Neratinib	EGFR/ERBB2	Phase II
BIBW2992	Afatinib	EGFR/ERBB2/ERBB4	Phase III
PF-00299804	Daconitinib	EGFR/ERBB2/ERBB4	Phase III
Third generation			
CO-1686	NA	EGFR T790M	Phase I/II
WZ4002	NA	EGFR T790M	Preclinical

Neratinib (HKI-272)

Neratinib, an irreversible ERBB family inhibitor that targets EGFR/ERBB1, ERBB2, and ERBB4 [40, 41] (Table 1), was evaluated in a phase I trial of patients with advanced solid tumors [42]. Of 14 evaluable patients with NSCLC, stable disease (SD) for 24 weeks was observed in six (43 %) patients. Despite preclinical data suggesting a role for neratinib in overcoming resistance mediated by T790M [39], no patients with a known T790M mutation responded in another study. Based on overall results, neratinib is no longer in development for NSCLC (http://www.clinicaltrials.gov), although it is being investigated in ERBB-2 positive breast cancer [43].

PF00299804

PF00299804, an irreversible ERBB family inhibitor that targets EGFR/ERBB1, ERBB3, and ERBB4 [44] (Table 1), has demonstrated preclinical activity in gefitinib-resistant NSCLC models both in vitro and in vivo [45]. In a phase I/II trial of PF00299804 in patients with NSCLC who progressed following one or two prior chemotherapy regimens and erlotinib [46], 36 patients with adenocarcinoma and five patients with non-adenocarcinoma histology were evaluated for efficacy. Among patients with adenocarcinoma, 67 % had a clinical benefit (response), and among those with non-adenocarcinoma histology, the clinical benefit rate was 40 %.

Afatinib (BIBW 2992)

Afatinib is an oral irreversible ERBB family inhibitor that targets EGFR/ ERBB1, ERBB2 [47], and ERBB4 with preclinical data supporting a role in overcoming resistance to reversible EGFR TKIs [47]. Afatinib has been studied in multiple phase I clinical trials [47–52]. Three patients with NSCLC experienced PRs lasting 24, 18, and 34 months; their tumors were found to have mutations in EGFR, although none had received prior EGFR TKI treatment. Two additional patients (one with NSCLC and one with esophageal cancer) had unconfirmed partial responses (PRs). One of the NSCLC patients with an activating exon 19 mutation who had a PR was initially treated with afatinib (10 mg/day) but subsequently progressed and developed brain metastases. By investigator assessment, the objective relative risk (RR), disease control rate (DCR), median progression free survival (PFS) interval, and median OS time were 60 %, 86 %, 14 months, and 24 months, respectively, for all patients [49]. The objective RR, DCR, and median PFS were 59 %, 83 %, and 16.1 months, respectively, for patients with L858R mutations and 69 %, 93 %, and 13.7 months, respectively, for patients with exon 19 deletions.

Third Generation (T790M EGFR Specific) Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors

Despite the initial promise, the 4-anilinoquinazoline core structure that is common to the clinically available irreversible inhibitors, the second generation TKIs, do not show specificity towards T790M EGFR compared with wild-type EGFR. New structurally distinct irreversible ERBB family inhibitors, such as the pyrimidine-based inhibitors described were recently introduced by Zhou et al. [53]. This study screened a library of compounds to identify agents that inhibited growth of gefitinib-resistant and gefitinib-sensitive cell lines without producing toxicity in mutant KRAS cells at high concentrations. One such compound, WZ4002, is an irreversible inhibitor with chemical properties that favor 100-fold greater binding to the T790M mutant. WZ4002 also demonstrated a 100-fold weaker binding to wild-type EGFR than with neratinib and other quinazoline-based second generation EGFR inhibitors. Additionally, WZ4002 inhibited L858R/T790M EGFR kinase activity more potently than wild-type EGFR protein activity, whereas the opposite was true for neratinib and gefitinib. Such findings indicate that the concept of irreversible ERBB family inhibition is a very promising and may yet provide a solution to the problem of acquired resistance.

cMET Inhibitors

Multiple agents that inhibit the cMET signaling at various points have been studied. HGF-competitive analogs, such as NK4, have shown inhibitory activity in various cancer cell lines, [54–59]. Other compounds such as decoy cMET and the isolated Sema domain of cMET have the ability to simultaneously bind to both the ligand HGF and the receptor cMET [60, 61]. These agents have shown inhibition of cMET signaling in preclinical studies. Studies with specific antibodies against HGF/cMET have also shown encouraging results. Monoclonal antibodies against cMET, such as OA-5D5 and DN30, have been shown to cause tumor-cell growth inhibition [62–64]. In addition, monoclonal antibodies against HGF have also been developed (L2G7 and AMG102) and validated in several preclinical studies [65, 66]. Another way to inhibit the cMET pathway is through competitors for the ATP binding site in the TK domain of cMET. This type of inhibition is carried by the small molecule inhibitors such as PHA665752, ARQ 197, SGX523, JNJ-38877605, EXEL-2880, XL-184, MGCD265, MK2461, crizotinib (PF-02341066), K252a and MP470 (Table 2). Engelman et al. exposed the gefitinib resistant cells to the cMET inhibitor PHA665752, and restored tumor sensitivity to gefitinib by reducing EGFR phosphorylation and inducing apoptosis [15, 67]. In the model of immnodeficient mice with enhanced tumor growth due to increased production of HGF, the MET-specific small-molecule kinase inhibitor SGX523 partially inhibits the HGF-dependent growth of lung, breast and pancreatic tumors [68]. So far, the most relevant compound developed in this arena is crizotinib (PF02341066), which has been recently

Table 2 cMET inhibitors under development

Agent	Mechanism of action
PHA665752	Specific cMET inhibitor, ATP competitor
ARQ197	Selective cMET inhibitor, non-ATP competitor
SGX523	Selective cMET inhibitor, ATP competitor
JNJ-38877605	Selective cMET inhibitor, ATP competitor
EXEL-2880	TKI, targets HGF and VEGFR family members
XL-184	Pan TKI
MGLD-265	cMET, VEGFR 1/2/3, Tie 2, Ron
MK-2461	Multi TKIs
K252a	Multi TKIs
MP470	TKI targets cMET, PDGFR, c-Kit

approved by the US FDA for the treatment of EML4/ALK mutant NSCLC tumors, targets cMET and ALK receptor TK. In a panel of different tumor cell lines, crizotinib inhibited phosphorylation of wild-type cMET. In lung carcinoma cells, crizotinib inhibited HGF-stimulated cell migration and invasion [69].

Strategic Combination Therapies

In selected cases combination therapies have been utilized, specifically to inhibit the compensatory pathway which is activated and mediates TKI resistance.

Combining EGFR and c-MET Inhibitors

For tumors harboring cMET amplification as a determinant to cause TKI resistance, targeting cMET receptor in combination to EGFR inhibitors are likely to predict a better response compared with individual targeting of EGFR. Antibodies targeting the cMET ligand, antibodies targeting MET itself and small molecules inhibitors against cMET are the therapeutic options for these combination therapies. The simultaneous inhibition of EGFR and cMET was shown to suppress the proliferation of cells and anti-tumor efficacy in mice in HCC827 cells which develop gefitinib resistance [15, 17]. Another study was carried out in NCI-H820 cells which naturally harbor EGFR T790M mutation as well as cMET amplification. In this study, small molecule cMET inhibition or knockdown of cMET along with EGFR inhibition suppressed the compensatory ERBB3 signaling and compromised cell viability [14]. From these studies, it was not clear whether T790M EGFR and cMET amplification co-occur in the same cell and whether the cell type is dependent on both of these factors. To address these issues, Xu et al. carried out a study, where they

developed mouse model of adenocarcinoma harboring both T790M EGFR and cMET. In this study treatment with individual inhibitors of EGFR and cMET was un-affective and the combinatorial targeting of both these receptors caused significant tumor regression. Importantly, this study strengthened the notion that in tumors harboring both T790M and cMET amplifications, both these lesions are drivers for growth [70].

EGFR and ERBB2 Inhibitors

The rationale of combining EGFR and ERBB2 inhibitors is via various molecular interactions across their downstream signaling pathways. It is known that the ligand independent activation of EGFR can be mediated by ERBB2 amplification. Overexpression and amplification of ERBB2 decreased the degradation of EGFR and increases its recycling to the cell membrane [71]. For simultaneous targeting of EGFR and ERBB2, two classes of inhibitors have been developed: agents which bind reversibly and those that bind irreversibly (covalently) to the ATP binding site in the tyrosine kinase domain in EGFR and ERBB2. Due to the mechanisms governing the resistance to reversible TKI, irreversible inhibitors targeting both EGFR and ERBB2 are likely to be better therapeutic choices. Irreversible TKI such as BIBW 2992 is shown to inhibit the autophosphorylation of EGFR and ERBB2. This agent was more than 100-fold potent that gefitinib against cells harboring the T790M+L858R mutation [47]. Another irreversible inhibitor HKI-272 caused dramatic tumor regression in mice model of TKI resistance [72]. In a Phase I clinical trial of BIBW2992, out of 26 patients with adenocarcinoma, 2 showed partial response. Another Phase II single arm clinical trial using BIBW2992, recently reported partial response in 43 patients out of 67 in mutation positive patients. The disease control rate was 96 % and a median progression free survival was 10.2 months. A clinical trial utilizing HKI-272 showed stable disease in 42 % of 16 NSCLC patients previously treated with gefitinib.

EGFR and EMT Inhibitors

To overcome the EMT associated with TKI resistance several mediators have been targeted [73]. Due to the role of ERK1/2 in EMT, ERK1/2 blockade by U0126 led to a suppression of TGF-Beta mediated EMT in NSCLC, restored epithelial phenotype of these cells and sensitized the TKI resistant cells in combination with gefitinib [74]. E-cadherin re-expression is also utilized to target EMT in overcoming TKI resistance. ZEB1 is known to down regulate E-cadherin and promote EMT. ZEB1 was shown to be inhibited by utilizing Histone deacetylase inhibitors. In this study, the combination of HDAC inhibitors with erlotinib led to the reversal of TKI resistance in HCC4006ER cells [19]. Since the up regulation of AXL kinase was shown to be a critical determinant of TKI resistance in NSCLC, targeting of AXL kinase sensitized HCC827ER cells. In this study, knockdown of AXL kinase

in HCC827 parental cells did not affect survival, however, the knockdown decreased the survival of HCC827ER cells, suggesting the specific role of AXL kinase in mediating erlotinib resistance in these cells. Small molecule inhibitors of AXL kinase, MP-470 and XL-880 [28] in combination with erlotinib also decreased the viability of HCC827ER cells. The process of EMT is also governed by inflammatory signals [75]. The inflammatory enzyme COX-2 is frequently over-expressed in a variety of malignancies [76]. COX2 plays an important role in conferring malignant and metastatic phenotypes and its over-expression is involved in therapy resistance [77]. For instance, COX-2 over-expression in NSCLC is associated with apoptosis resistance, [78] angiogenesis, [79, 80] and metastasis [81, 82]. Most of these effects are mediated by prostaglandin E2 (PGE2). PGE2 and other inflammatory cytokines in the tumor microenvironment may contribute to TKI resistance by downregulating the levels of E-cadherin. These findings suggest a strong rationale of combining COX inhibitors with TKI to overcome TKI resistance [83]. However the clinical trials combining COX2 inhibitors with EGFR inhibitors did not show additional benefits compared with the individual treatment of EGFR inhibitor. It seems possible that in these trials sufficient dose of COX2 inhibitor was not used to inhibit maximum COX2 activity [84, 85].

EGFR and mTOR Pathway Inhibitors

The rationale for combining EGFR inhibitors with mTOR inhibitors was based on studies suggesting an important survival function of mTOR-AKT axis as downstream effector of EGFR signaling [86]. The ability of the irreversible EGFR inhibitor HKI-272 and rapamycin combination to promote more effective suppression of EGFR signaling to S6 and AKT kinases was demonstrated both in cultured NSCLC cell lines harboring double mutant EGFR alleles as well as in lung tumors in TL mice. The investigators suggest that HKI-272 may not sufficiently overcome the biochemical drug resistance conferred by T790M and that further suppression of an essential AKT-mTOR signal downstream of EGFR is required to achieve a therapeutic response [87].

Promoting Oncogene Degradation

An interesting aspect by which TKI resistance has been targeted is via EGFR degradation. It is now well accepted that EGFR degradation is superior in causing cancer cell cyto-toxicity compared to simply inhibiting its tyrosine kinase activity. Weihua et al. reported that knockdown of EGFR caused autophagy and inhibition of EGFR only caused a transient cell cycle arrest [88]. Other findings in head and neck tumor models suggest that promoting EGFR degradation may lead to cell death [89, 90]. Chemotherapeutic agents such as gemcitabine and cisplatin caused EGFR degradation which correlated with cell death. The importance of targeting EGFR for degradation to overcome TKI resistance was shown by knocking down EGFR in

several EGFR mutant cell lines. In this study, knockdown of EGFR caused a decrease in survival of EGFR dependent cells including NCI-H1975 cells harboring EGFR-T790M mutation [91]. This approach was utilized recently to develop a peptide based therapy which caused EGFR degradation in TKI resistant cells harboring T790M mutant EGFR. The peptide, named as Disruptin was shown to decrease survival of TKI resistant NCI-H1975 cells by disrupting EGFR-Heat shock protein 90 interaction, inhibiting EGFR homodimerization and promoting EGFR degradation [92].

Conclusions and Future Perspectives

The main signaling pathways contributing towards TKI resistance and the therapeutic approaches to rationally target them are summarized in Fig. 1. In order to better target the EGFR TKI resistance, it will be critical to understand the driver oncogene mediating resistance in a specific patient. The prescreening of patients for the driver mutations and amplifications need to be carried out and the personalized therapies need to be tailored depending upon the driver oncogene. For example, in patients with AXL kinase amplification or COX2 over-expression, AXL or COX2 inhibitors

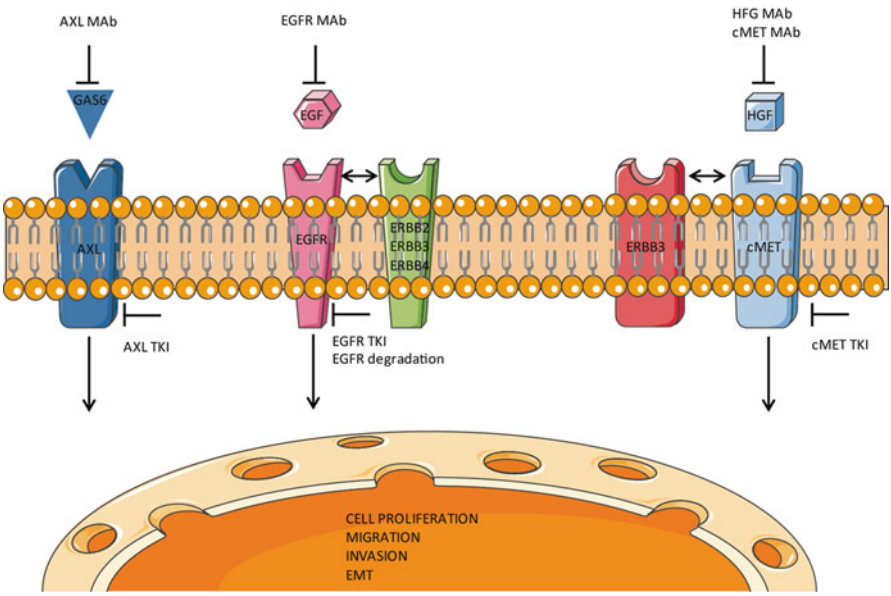


Fig. 1 Major signaling pathways which contribute towards the resistance to EGFR TKIs. In addition to EGFR family members, ERBB2, ERBB3 and ERBB4, AXL and cMET kinases have been reported to mediate EGFR TKI resistance in NSCLC patients. These compensatory pathways can be co-targeted by small molecule inhibitors and antibodies in combination with EGFR TKIs to overcome resistance as shown in the figure

need to be combined with EGFR TKI. Several preclinical studies suggest the re-emission of resistance due to another compensatory mechanism in response to individual therapies. As for instance, in case of irreversible EGFR inhibitors, resistance develops due to downstream signaling mediators. A more effective approach would be to combine the first generation EGFR inhibitor with the second or preferably third generation TKIs. Another promising approach is to target EGFR for degradation, which accounts for inhibition of other functions of EGFR apart from its tyrosine kinase activity which are important for cancer cell survival. These elusive functions of EGFR might be governing the activation of compensatory pathway or downstream signaling mediators imparting TKI resistance. Since the majority of NSCLC patients which harbor TKI sensitive mutations also contain T790M mutation, combining the T790M specific third generation inhibitors in combination with first generation inhibitors as a combined therapy could be a preferred therapeutic choice for these tumors. The Holy Grail to maximize the benefit of each NSCLC patient with EGFR activating mutation is to identify the oncogene addiction/s along with EGFR and provide a tailored combination therapy at the beginning of treatment before the resistance develops.

References

1. Schlessinger J (2002) Ligand-induced, receptor mediated dimerization and activation of EGF receptor. Cell 110:669–672
2. Horn L, Chen H, Lovly CM et al (2011) DIRECT: DNA-mutation inventory to refine and enhance cancer treatment—a catalogue of clinically relevant somatic mutations in lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 29(suppl; abstr 7575):494s
3. Greulich H, Chen TH, Feng W et al (2005) Oncogenic transformation by inhibitor-sensitive and -resistant EGFR mutants. PLoS Med 2, e313
4. Politi K, Zakowski MF, Fan PD et al (2006) Lung adenocarcinomas induced in mice by mutant EGF receptors found in human lung cancers respond to a tyrosine kinase inhibitor or to down-regulation of the receptors. Genes Dev 20:1496–1510
5. Yun CH, Boggon TJ, Li Y et al (2007) Structures of lung cancer-derived EGFR mutants and inhibitor complexes: mechanism of activation and insights into differential inhibitor sensitivity. Cancer Cell 11:217–227
6. Yun CH, Mengwasser KE, Toms AV et al (2008) The T790M mutation in EGFR kinase causes drug resistance by increasing the affinity for ATP. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:2070–2075
7. He M, Capelletti M, Nafa K et al (2012) EGFR exon 19 insertions: a new family of sensitizing EGFR mutations in lung adenocarcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 18:1790–1797
8. Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R et al (2004) Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. N Engl J Med 350:2129–2139
9. Paez JG, Janne PA, Lee JC et al (2004) EGFR mutations in lung cancer: correlation with clinical response to gefitinib therapy. Science 304:1497–1500
10. Sequist LV, Waltman B, Dias-Santagata D et al (2011) Genotypic and histological evolution of lung cancers acquiring resistance to EGFR inhibitors. Sci Transl Med 3:26–75
11. Sharma SV, Bell DW, Settleman J et al (2007) Epidermal growth factor receptor mutations in lung cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 7:169–181

12. Bell DW, Gore I, Okimoto RA et al (2005) Inherited susceptibility to lung cancer may be associated with the T790M drug resistance mutation in EGFR. Nat Genet 37:1315–1316
13. Rosell R, Molina MA, Costa C et al (2011) Pretreatment EGFR T790M mutation and BRCA1 mRNA expression in erlotinib-treated advanced nonsmall-cell lung cancer patients with EGFR. Clin Cancer Res 17(5):1160–1168
14. Bean J, Brennan C, Shih JY et al (2007) MET amplification occurs with or without T790M mutations in EGFR mutant lung tumors with acquired resistance to gefitinib or erlotinib. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:20932–20937
15. Engelman JA, Zejnullahu K, Mitsudomi T et al (2007) MET amplification leads to gefitinib resistance in lung cancer by activating ERBB3 signaling. Science 316:1039–1043
16. Yano S, Wang W, Li Q et al (2008) Hepatocyte growth factor induces gefitinib resistance of lung adenocarcinoma with epidermal growth factor receptor-activating mutations. Cancer Res 68:9479–9487
17. Turke AB, Zejnullahu K, Wu YL et al (2010) Preexistence and clonal selection of MET amplification in EGFR mutant NSCLC. Cancer Cell 17:77–88
18. Vuoriluoto K, Haugen H, Kiviluoto S et al (2011) Vimentin regulates EMT induction by Slug and oncogenic H-Ras and migration by governing Axl expression in breast cancer. Oncogene 30:1436–1448
19. Suda K, Tomizawa K, Fujii M et al (2011) Epithelial to mesenchymal transition in an epidermal growth factor receptor–mutant lung cancer cell line with acquired resistance to erlotinib. J Thorac Oncol 6:1152–1161
20. Yao Z, Fenoglio S, Gao DC et al (2010) TGF beta IL-6 axis mediates selective and adaptive mechanisms of resistance to molecular targeted therapy in lung cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:15535–15540
21. Grande M, Franzen A, Karlsson JO et al (2002) Transforming growth factor-beta and epidermal growth factor synergistically stimulate epithelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT) through a MEK-dependent mechanism in primary cultured pig thyrocytes. J Cell Sci 115:4227–4236
22. Xie L, Law BK, Chytil AM et al (2004) Activation of the Erk pathway is required for TGF-beta1-induced EMT in vitro. Neoplasia 6:603–610
23. Zavadil J, Bitzer M, Liang D et al (2001) Genetic programs of epithelial cell plasticity directed by transforming growth factor-beta. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:6686–6691
24. Shin S, Dimitri CA, Yoon SO et al (2010) ERK2 but not ERK1 induces epithelial-to-mesenchymal transformation via DEF motif dependent signaling events. Mol Cell 38:114–127
25. Ercan D, Xu C, Yanagita M et al (2012) Reactivation of ERK signaling causes resistance to EGFR kinase inhibitors. Cancer Discov 2:934–947
26. Zhang Z, Lee JC, Lin L et al (2012) Activation of the AXL kinase causes resistance to EGFR targeted therapy in lung cancer. Nat Genet 44:852–862
27. Gjerdrum C, Tiron C, Høiby T et al (2010) Dominant-negative inhibition of the Axl receptor tyrosine kinase suppresses brain tumor cell growth and invasion and prolongs survival. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(3):1124–1129
28. Linger RM, Keating AK, Earp HS et al (2010) Taking aim at Mer and Axl receptor tyrosine kinases as novel therapeutic targets in solid tumors. Expert Opin Ther Targets 14:1073–1090
29. Keating AK, Kim GK, Jones AE et al (2010) Inhibition of Mer and Axl receptor tyrosine kinases in astrocytoma cells leads to increased apoptosis and improved chemosensitivity. Mol Cancer Ther 9:1298–1307
30. Tai KY, Shieh YS, Lee CS et al (2008) Axl promotes cell invasion by inducing MMP-9 activity through activation of NF-κB and Brg-1. Oncogene 27:4044–4055
31. Charuworn B, Dohadwala M, Krysan K et al (2006) Inflammation-mediated promotion of EMT in NSCLC: IL-1b mediates a MEK/Erk- and JNK/SAPK-dependent downregulation of E-cadherin. Proc Am Thorac Soc 3:D96

32. Dohadwala M, Yang SC, Luo J et al (2006) Cyclooxygenase-2-dependent regulation of E-cadherin: prostaglandin E2 induces transcriptional repressors ZEB1 and snail in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 66:5338–5345
33. Krysan K, Lee JM, Dohadwala M et al (2008) Inflammation, epithelial to mesenchymal transition, and epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor resistance. J Thorac Oncol 3:107–110
34. Garofalo M, Di Leva G, Romano G et al (2009) MiR-221&222 regulate TRAIL resistance and enhance tumorigenicity through PTEN and TIMP3 downregulation. Cancer Cell 16:498–509
35. Garofalo M, Romano G, Di Leva G (2012) EGFR and MET receptor tyrosine kinase–altered microRNA expression induces tumorigenesis and gefitinib resistance in lung cancers. Nat Med 18:74–82
36. Meng F, Henson R, Wehbe-Janek H et al (2007) MicroRNA-21 regulates expression of the PTEN tumor suppressor gene in human hepatocellular cancer. Gastroenterology 133:647–658
37. Zhang JG, Wang JJ, Zhao F et al (2010) MicroRNA-21 (miR-21) represses tumor suppressor PTEN and promotes growth and invasion in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Clin Chim Acta 411:846–852
38. Suda K, Onozato R, Yatabe Y et al (2009) EGFR T790M mutation: a double role in lung cancer cell survival? J Thorac Oncol 4:1–4
39. Kwak EL, Sordella R, Bell DW et al (2005) Irreversible inhibitors of the EGF receptor may circumvent acquired resistance to gefitinib. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:7665–7670
40. Bose P, Ozer H (2009) Neratinib: an oral, irreversible dual EGFR/HER2 inhibitor for breast and nonsmall cell lung cancer. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 18:1735–1751
41. Rabindran SK, Discafani CM, Rosfjord EC et al (2004) Antitumor activity of HKI-272, an orally active, irreversible inhibitor of the HER-2 tyrosine kinase. Cancer Res 64:3958–3965
42. Wong KK, Fracasso PM, Bukowski RM et al (2009) A phase I study with neratinib (HKI-272), an irreversible pan ErbB receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor, in patients with solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res 15:2552–2558
43. Burstein HJ, Sun Y, Dirix LY et al (2010) Neratinib, can irreversible ErbB receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor, in patients with advanced ErbB2-positive breast cancer. J Clin Oncol 28:1301–1307
44. Janne PA, Boss DS, Camidge DR et al (2011) Phase I dose-escalation study of the pan-HER inhibitor, PF299804, in patients with advanced malignant solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res 17:1131–1139
45. Engelman JA, Zejnullahu K, Gale CM et al (2007) PF00299804, an irreversible pan-ERBB inhibitor, is effective in lung cancer models with EGFR and ERBB2 mutations that are resistant to gefitinib. Cancer Res 67:11924–11932
46. Janne PA, Reckamp K, Koczywas M et al (2009) A phase 2 trial of PF-00299804 (PF299), an oral irreversible HER tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI), in patients (pts) with advanced NSCLC after failure of prior chemotherapy and erlotinib: preliminary efficacy and safety results. J Thorac Oncol 4(suppl 1):S293–S294
47. Li D, Ambrogio L, Shimamura T et al (2008) BIBW2992, an irreversible EGFR/HER2 inhibitor highly effective in preclinical lung cancer models. Oncogene 27:4702–4711
48. Eskens FA, Mom CH, Planting AS et al (2008) A phase I dose escalation study of BIBW 2992, an irreversible dual inhibitor of epidermal growth factor receptor 1 (EGFR) and 2 (HER2) tyrosine kinase in a 2-week on, 2-week off schedule in patients with advanced solid tumours. Br J Cancer 98:80–85
49. Awada A, Dumez H, Wolter P et al (2009) A phase I dose finding study of the 3-day administration of BIBW 2992, an irreversible dual EGFR/HER2 inhibitor, in combination with

3-weekly docetaxel in patients with advanced solid tumors. Presented at the 45th annual meeting of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, Orlando, FL
50. Stavridi F, Kristeleit R, Forster M (2009) Activity of BIBW 2992, an oral irreversible EGFR/HER2 dual kinase inhibitor, in combination with weekly paclitaxel in non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 4(suppl 1):S444
51. Vermorken JB, Machiels JH, Rottey S et al (2010) Phase Ib study evaluating the combination of BIBW 2992 with two different standard chemotherapy regimens, cisplatin/paclitaxel (PT) and cisplatin/5-FU (PF), in patients with advanced solid tumors. J Clin Oncol 28, e13521
52. Yap TA, Vidal L, Adam J et al (2010) Phase I trial of the irreversible EGFR and HER2 kinase inhibitor BIBW 2992 in patients with advanced solid tumors. J Clin Oncol 28:3965–3972
53. Zhou W, Ercan D, Chen L et al (2009) Novel mutant selective EGFR kinase inhibitors against EGFR T790M. Nature 462:1070–1074
54. Hiscox S, Parr C, Nakamura T et al (2000) Inhibition of HGF/SF induced breast cancer cell motility and invasion by the HGF/SF variant, NK4. Breast Cancer Res Treat 59(3):245–254
55. Tomioka D, Maehara N, Kuba K et al (2001) Inhibition of growth, invasion, and metastasis of human pancreatic carcinoma cells by NK4 in an orthotopic mouse model. Cancer Res 61(20):7518–7524
56. Wen J, Matsumoto K, Taniura N et al (2004) Hepatic gene expression of *NK4*, an HGF-antagonist/angiogenesis inhibitor, suppresses liver metastasis and invasive growth of colon cancer in mice. Cancer Gene Ther 11(6):419–430
57. Heideman DA, van Beusechem VW, Bloemena E et al (2004) Suppression of tumor growth, invasion and angiogenesis of human gastric cancer by adenovirus-mediated expression of NK4. J Gene Med 6(3):317–327
58. Wen J, Matsumoto K, Taniura N et al (2007) Inhibition of colon cancer growth and metastasis by *NK4* gene repetitive delivery in mice. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 358(1):117–123
59. Suzuki Y, Sakai K, Ueki J et al (2010) Inhibition of Met/HGF receptor and angiogenesis by NK4 leads to suppression of tumor growth and migration in malignant pleural mesothelioma. Int J Cancer 127(8):1948–1957
60. Michieli P, Mazzone M, Basilico C et al (2004) Targeting the tumor and its microenvironment by a dual-function decoy Met receptor. Cancer Cell 6:61–73
61. Kong-Beltran M, Stamos J, Wickramasinghe D (2004) The Sema domain of Met is necessary for receptor dimerization and activation. Cancer Cell 6:75–84
62. Martens T, Schmidt NO, Eckerich C et al (2006) A novel one-armed anti-c-Met antibody inhibits glioblastoma growth in vivo. Clin Cancer Res 12:6144–6152
63. Jin H, Yang R, Zheng Z et al (2008) MetMAb, the one-armed 5D5 anti-c-Met antibody, inhibits orthotopic pancreatic tumor growth and improves survival. Cancer Res 68(11):4360–4368
64. Petrelli A, Circosta P, Granziero L et al (2006) Ab-induced ectodomain shedding mediates hepatocyte growth factor receptor down-regulation and hampers biological activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:5090–5095
65. Kim KJ, Wang L, Su YC et al (2006) Systemic anti-hepatocyte growth factor monoclonal antibody therapy induces the regression of intracranial glioma xenografts. Clin Cancer Res 12:1292–1298
66. Jun HT, Sun J, Rex K (2007) AMG 102, a fully human anti-hepatocyte growth factor/ scatter factor neutralizing antibody, enhances the efficacy of temozolomide or docetaxel in U-87 MG cells and xenografts. Clin Cancer Res 13:6735–6742
67. Yoshida T, Okamoto I, Okamoto W et al (2010) Effects of Src inhibitors on cell growth and epidermal growth factor receptor and Met signaling in gefitinib-resistant non-small cell lung cancer cells with acquired Met amplification. Cancer Sci 101(1):167–172
68. Zhang YW, Staal B, Essenburg C et al (2010) Met kinase inhibitor SGX523 synergizes with epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitor erlotinib in a hepatocyte growth factor-dependent fashion to suppress carcinoma growth. Cancer Res 70(17):6880–6890

69. Zou HY, Li Q, Lee JH et al (2007) An orally available small-molecule inhibitor of c-Met, PF-2341066, exhibits cytoreductive antitumor efficacy through antiproliferative and antiangiogenic mechanisms. Cancer Res 67:4408–4417
70. Xu L, Kikuchi E, Xu C et al (2012) Combined EGFR/MET or EGFR/HSP90 inhibition is effective in the treatment of lung cancers codriven by mutant EGFR containing T790M and MET. Cancer Res 72(13):3302–3311
71. Pinkas-Kramarski R, Soussan L, Waterman H et al (1996) Diversification of Neu differentiation factor and epidermal growth factor receptor signaling by combinatorial receptor interactions. EMBO J 15:2452–2467
72. Ji H, Li D, Chen L et al (2006) The impact of human EGFR kinase domain mutations on lung tumorigenesis and in vivo sensitivity to EGFR-targeted therapies. Cancer Cell 9:485–495
73. Witta SE, Gemmill RM, Hirsch FR et al (2006) Restoring E-cadherin expression increases sensitivity to epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in lung cancer cell lines. Cancer Res 66:944–950
74. Buonato JM, Lazzara MJ (2013) Transition in lung cancer cells and promotes their sensitivity to EGFR inhibition. Cancer Res
75. Huber MA, Kraut N, Beug H (2005) Molecular requirements for epithelial mesenchymal transition during tumor progression. Curr Opin Cell Biol 17:548–558
76. Soslow RA, Dannenberg AJ, Rush D et al (2000) COX-2 is expressed in human pulmonary, colonic, and mammary tumors. Cancer 89:2637–2645
77. Riedl K, Krysan K, Pold M et al (2004) Multifaceted roles of cyclooxygenase-2 in lung cancer. Drug Resist Updat 7:169–184
78. Krysan K, Dalwadi H, Sharma S et al (2004) Cyclooxygenase 2-dependent expression of survivin is critical for apoptosis resistance in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 64:6359–6362
79. Pold M, Zhu LX, Sharma S et al (2004) Cyclooxygenase-2-dependent expression of angiogenic cxc chemokines ena-78/cxc ligand (cxcl) 5 and interleukin-8/cxcl8 in human non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 64:1853–1860
80. Leahy KM, Koki AT, Masferrer JL (2000) Role of cyclooxygenases in angiogenesis. Curr Med Chem 7:1163–1170
81. Dohadwala M, Luo J, Zhu L et al (2001) Non-small cell lung cancer cyclooxygenase-2-dependent invasion is mediated by CD44. J Biol Chem 276:20809–20812
82. Dohadwala M, Batra RK, Luo J et al (2002) Autocrine/paracrine prostaglandin E2 production by non-small cell lung cancer cells regulates matrixmetalloproteinase-2 and CD44 in cyclooxygenase-2-dependent invasion. J Biol Chem 277:50828–50833
83. Dannenberg AJ, Lippman SM, Mann JR et al (2005) Cyclooxygenase-2 and epidermal growth factor receptor: pharmacologic targets for chemoprevention. J Clin Oncol 23:254–266
84. Gadgeel SM, Ruckdeschel JC, Heath EI et al (2007) Phase II study of gefitinib, an epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor (EGFRTKI), and celecoxib, a cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibitor, in patients with platinum refractory non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). J Thorac Oncol 2:299–305
85. O'Byrne KJ, Danson S, Dunlop D et al (2007) Combination therapy with gefitinib and rofecoxib in patients with platinum-pretreated relapsed non small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 25:3266–3273
86. Adjei AA (2006) Novel combinations based on epidermal growth factor receptor inhibition. Clin Cancer Res 12:4446–4450
87. Li D, Shimamura T, Ji H et al (2007) Bronchial and peripheral murine lung carcinomas induced by T790M-L858R mutant EGFR respond to HKI-272 and rapamycin combination therapy. Cancer Cell 12(1):81–93
88. Weihua Z, Tsan R, Huang WC et al (2008) Survival of cancer cells is maintained by EGFR independent of its kinase activity. Cancer Cell 13(5):385–393

89. Ahsan A, Hiniker SM, Ramanand SG et al (2010) Role of epidermal growth factor receptor degradation in cisplatin-induced cytotoxicity in head and neck cancer. Cancer Res 70(7):2862–2869
90. Feng FY, Varambally S, Tomlins SA et al (2007) Role of epidermal growth factor receptor degradation in gemcitabine-mediated cytotoxicity. Oncogene 26(23):3431–3439
91. Chen G, Kronenberger P, Teugels E et al (2012) Targeting the epidermal growth factor receptor in non-small cell lung cancer cells: the effect of combining RNA interference with tyrosine kinase inhibitors or cetuximab. BMC Med 10:28
92. Ahsan A, Ray D, Ramanand SG et al (2013) Destabilization of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) by a peptide that inhibits EGFR binding to heat shock protein 90 and receptor dimerization. J Biol Chem 288(37):26879–26886

KRAS-Mutant Lung Cancers in the Era of Targeted Therapy

Jarushka Naidoo and Alexander Drilon

Abstract *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers account for approximately 25 % of non-small cell lung carcinomas, thus representing an enormous burden of cancer worldwide. *KRAS* mutations are clear drivers of tumor growth and are characterized by a complex biology involving the interaction between mutant KRAS, various growth factor pathways, and tumor suppressor genes. While *KRAS* mutations are classically associated with a significant smoking history, they are also identified in a substantial proportion of never-smokers. These mutations are found largely in lung adenocarcinomas with solid growth patterns and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes. A variety of tools are available for diagnosis including Sanger sequencing, multiplex mutational hotspot profiling, and next-generation sequencing. The prognostic and predictive roles of *KRAS* status remain controversial. It has become increasingly clear, however, that *KRAS* mutations drive primary resistance to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition. Until recently, mutant *KRAS* was not thought of as a clinically-targetable driver in lung cancers. With the expansion of our knowledge regarding the biology of *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers and the role of MEK and PI3K/mTOR inhibition, the face of targeted therapeutics for this genomic subset of patients is slowly beginning to change.

Keywords KRAS mutation • Lung cancer • Lung adenocarcinoma • Erlotinib resistance • Targeted therapy • MEK inhibition • Selumetinib • PI3K inhibition • mTOR inhibition • Hsp90 inhibition

Introduction

It is without question that the discovery of driver oncogenes has revolutionized the field of lung cancer therapeutics. Since the description of activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor (*EGFR*) in 2004 and the demonstration of dramatic efficacy of EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition in large randomized trials,

J. Naidoo • A. Drilon (✉)
Department of Medicine, Thoracic Oncology Service, Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center, New York, NY, USA
e-mail: naidooj@mskcc.org; drilona@mskcc.org

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_8

treatment paradigms have quickly shifted towards an emphasis on molecularly-targeted therapy in genomic subsets of patients. With the increase in scope and sensitivity of molecular diagnostic testing, a putative driver is now identified in the majority of lung cancer patients.

KRAS mutations are perhaps the most infamous of these genomic aberrations. While these drivers were first reported in lung cancers in the mid-80s and remain the most commonly mutated oncogenes in unselected patients, they have risen to fame as elusive targets in a rapidly-evolving field of molecular therapeutics [1]. As our knowledge regarding the biology of *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers grows, the latter is slowly beginning to change. Recent data on the efficacy of combinatorial therapy in *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers has sparked renewed interest in developing therapies for patients with these tumors.

In this chapter, we discuss the biology of *KRAS* mutations and tackle their predictive and prognostic roles in lung cancers. We then go on to detail the various molecularly-targeted strategies that have been employed to treat patients with these cancers.

The Biology of RAS

Activated RAS (short for 'rat sarcoma') proteins are key regulators of cell growth across a variety of malignancies. They act to integrate signals from external growth factors with a variety of downstream effectors such as members of the RAF-MEK-ERK and PI3K-AKT-mTOR pathways [2].

RAS proteins are farnesylated via post-translational modifications. This results in localization to the cell membrane that is thought to be essential for activity. RAS proteins shuttle between inactive and active states, during which they are bound to GDP and GTP, respectively. These states are depicted in Fig. 1. GDP bound to inactive RAS is exchanged for GTP by GEFs or guanine nucleotide exchange factors, thus resulting in RAS activation [3]. Conversely, in activated RAS, the hydrolysis of GTP to GDP results in signal termination. This step is catalyzed by GAPs or GTPase-activating proteins [4]. In addition, RAS proteins have intrinsic GTPase activity. GTP-bound activated RAS engages effector molecules belonging to multiple signal transduction cascades that, in addition to cell proliferation and survival, control other processes such as apoptosis, cell cycling, motility, and endocytosis.

Three different RAS genes have been described in humans: *KRAS*, *HRAS*, and *NRAS*. The former two were first identified in the 1960s in studies of cancer-causing sarcoma viruses, namely the Kristen sarcoma virus and the Harvey sarcoma virus. *NRAS* was subsequently identified in human neuroblastoma cells. Activating point mutations in *RAS* lead to mutant RAS proteins that acquire transforming potential. This occurs secondary to impaired GTPase activity and constitutive activation of signaling.

Structurally, these mutations result in replacement of an amino acid at position 12, 13, or 61 [5]. The standard nomenclature used to describe these mutations denotes an amino acid change that occurs at one of these positions. For example,

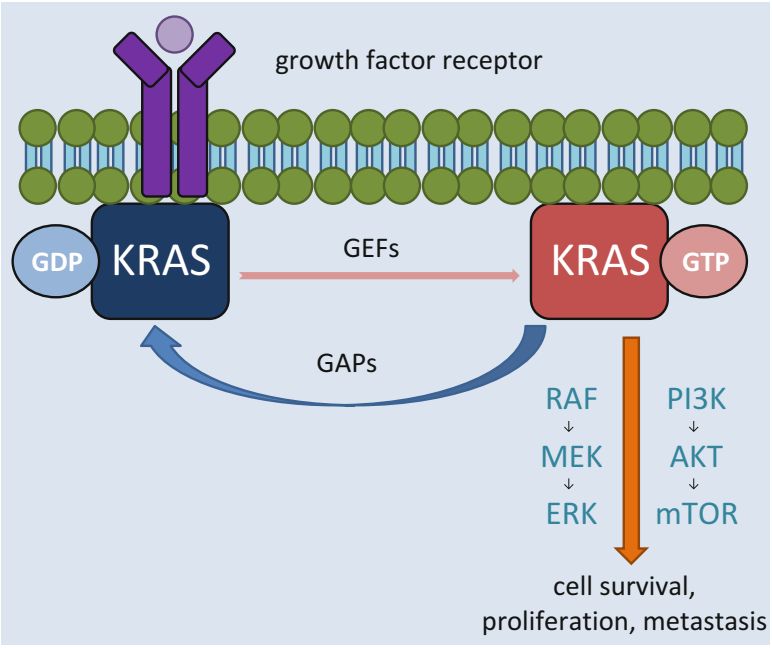


Fig. 1 KRAS signaling. KRAS acts to integrate external signals from extracellular ligands that bind transmembrane growth factor receptors. The KRAS protein is localized to the cell membrane via farnesylation and shuttles between inactive and active states in response to these upstream signals. In its inactive state, KRAS is bound to GDP. Guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs) catalyze the exchange of GDP for GTP, thereby activating KRAS. Activated KRAS results in increased downstream signaling of growth factor pathways involved in cellular proliferation, survival, and metastasis (e.g. RAF-MEK-ERK and PI3K-AKT-mTOR). GTPase-activating proteins (GAPs) hydrolyze GTP to GDP and result in signal termination

KRAS G12D refers to a point mutation resulting in the substitution of the amino acid glycine (G) that is found in the wild-type state at position 12 of the KRAS protein, with the amino acid asparate (D). Preclinical work in *KRAS*-mutant lung cancer cell lines has suggested that the type of amino acid substitution (e.g. G12C vs G12D) may affect downstream signaling differently, leading to a differential response to cytotoxic therapy [6]. Further studies are required to confirm this hypothesis.

KRAS-Mutant Lung Cancers: Clinicopathologic and Molecular Features

KRAS mutations account for the majority of RAS mutations in human malignancies. They are implicated in the pathogenesis of a variety of solid tumors. *KRAS* mutations have been identified in 60–90 % of pancreatic cancers, 35 % of colorectal cancers, 20 % of serous ovarian cancers, and 15 % of thyroid cancers [7].

KRAS mutations were first described in lung cancers in 1984 [8]. Santos et al. reported that an activating *KRAS* mutation was found in a human lung cancer specimen and not in normal tissue from the same patient, demonstrating that the mutation was somatically acquired. We have since come to learn that *KRAS* is the most commonly mutated oncogene in non-small cell lung carcinomas (NSCLCs), occurring with a frequency of approximately 25 % of unselected cases [9].

A variety of molecular diagnostics are used to identify mutations in *KRAS*. Testing can involve standard Sanger sequencing of the *KRAS* gene, or multiplex testing for specific mutational hotspots (e.g. Sequenom or SnapShot platforms). While these diagnostics have been extremely valuable over the last few decades, we are quickly moving into an era of massively-parallel high throughput or next-generation sequencing. In contrast to mutational hotspot testing that interrogates only specific mutations in *KRAS*, next generation sequencing affords the advantage of both the identification of mutations along the length of the gene and elucidation of aberrations in other tumor suppressor genes or oncogenes (Table 1).

KRAS mutations are largely found in lung adenocarcinomas although they have been infrequently described in squamous cell lung carcinomas where rigorous pathologic review was conducted [10, 11]. Rekhtman and colleagues tested 180 lung adenocarcinomas for mutations in *KRAS* and *EGFR* and assessed these

Table 1 ***KRAS*-mutant lung cancers**. Methods used to diagnose *KRAS* mutations in non-small cell lung cancer specimens are listed here. In addition, the various clinicopathologic and molecular features associated with *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers are described

KRAS mutations in non-small cell lung cancers	
Diagnosis	Traditional Sanger sequencing Multiplex mutational hotspot profiling Sequenom SnapShot Next-generation sequencing
Clinical features	Classically associated with a significant history of current or former smoking While less common, can be found in a substantial proportion of never or former light smokers Reported to be more common in Caucasians compared to Asians
Pathologic features	Found largely in lung adenocarcinomas Pathologic associations Solid growth pattern Mucinous tumors Tumor-infiltrating leukocytes
Molecular features	Tend to be mutually exclusive with other lung cancer drivers (e.g. *EGFR* mutations, *ALK* fusions) Can coexist with various tumor suppressor gene aberrations Point mutation profile varies **Transitions** (G12D, G13D, G12S): more common in never or former light smokers **Transversions** (G12C, G12A, G12V, G13C): more common in patients with a significant smoking history

specimens for the proportion of standard histologic patterns (acinar, lepidic, solid, mucinous, papillary, and micropapillary). In comparison to *EGFR*-mutant and *KRAS/EGFR*-wild-type tumors, the solid growth pattern was significantly over-represented in *KRAS*-mutant tumors. *KRAS*-mutations were also more commonly seen in mucinous adenocarcinomas that were significantly associated with the presence of tumor-infiltrating leukocytes [12].

Classically, *KRAS* mutations are thought to be found more commonly in patients with a significant history of smoking [13, 14]. In 2008, however, work by Riely et al. established that *KRAS* mutations are found in up to 15 % of never-smokers with lung cancers. We are now aware that this phenomenon extends to other drivers in lung cancers. While driver oncogenes can be found more commonly in patients with specific smoking histories (e.g. *ALK* fusions in never-smokers, *BRAF* mutations in current or former smokers), molecular testing should not be withheld from patients regardless of their pack-year history as these aberrations are identified in patients with varying degrees of exposure to tobacco. There is some evidence to support ethnic differences in the frequency of KRAS mutations, with a higher frequency noted in Caucasians compared to Asians and potentially African Americans [15, 16].

While exceptions to the rule have been reported, *KRAS* mutations tend to be mutually exclusive with other known lung cancer drivers such as *EGFR* mutations and *ALK* fusions. Substantial heterogeneity exists in the specific type of point mutation found in *KRAS*. In an analysis of data from the Catalogue of Somatic Mutations in Cancer (COSMIC), G12C was the most common mutation (42 %), followed by G12V (21 %), and G12D (17 %) [5]. A number of other mutations in codons 12, 13, and 61 have been described at lower frequencies.

Similar to what has been described with *TP53*, the type of point mutation found in *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers varies by smoking history. Transition point mutations (where a purine is exchanged for a purine or a pyrimidine for a pyrimidine, e.g. A→G or T→C, respectively), are more commonly found in never-smokers. The transition *KRAS* G12D is the most common point mutation in never-smokers. Other examples of transitions include G13D and G12S. Transversion point mutations (where a purine is exchanged for a pyrimidine or vice-versa, e.g. G →C or A→T), on the other hand, are more common in former/current smokers. *KRAS* G12C is the most common transversion in this population [17, 18]. Other examples of transversions include G12A, G12V, and G13C.

The Prognostic Nature of *KRAS* Mutations

Soon after the description of *KRAS* mutations in lung cancer in 1984, a number of studies began to emerge addressing the potential prognostic nature of these aberrations. In the 1990s, the prevailing sentiment was that *KRAS* mutations represented a negative prognostic marker for survival in patients with lung adenocarcinomas [19]. This viewpoint has since come into question as data from both individual and pooled studies have generated conflicting results.

Table 2 ***KRAS* status as a prognostic marker in lung cancer**. Selected individual and pooled studies investigating the role of *KRAS* mutations as potential prognostic markers in non-small cell lung cancers are summarized here. While *KRAS* mutations were thought to be negative prognostic factors for survival, data remains conflicting

Reference	Patients tested for *KRAS*	Patients by *KRAS* status		Results *KRAS*-Mt vs *KRAS* WT
		Mt	WT	
Selected individual studies				
Kern et al. 1994 [20]	n = 44 Stage I–IV	16 (36 %)	28 (64 %)	HR for OS 1.7 (0.8–3.5), p = 0.16
Keohavong et al. 1996 [21]	n = 173 Stage I–IV	43 (25 %)	140 (75 %)	No difference in OS, p = 0.96
Graziano et al. 1999 [22]	n = 213 Stage I–II	35 (16 %)	178 (84 %)	Median OS 39 mo vs 53 mo, p = 0.33
Schiller et al. 2001 [9]	n = 184 Stage II–IIIA	44 (24 %)	140 (76 %)	Median OS 30 mo vs 42 mo, p = 0.38
Lu et al. 2004 [23]	n = 94 Stage I	32 (34 %)	62 (66 %)	HR for OS 1.18 (0.71–1.95), p = 0.52
Grossi et al. 2003 [24]	n = 249 Stage I–IIIA	47 (19 %)	202 (81 %)	HR for OS 1.46 (0.96–2.22), p = 0.08
Tsao et al. 2007 [25]	n = 450 Stage IB–II	117 (26 %)	333 (74 %)	HR for OS 1.23 (0.76–1.97), p = 0.40
Pooled analyses				
Mascaux et al. meta-analysis, 2005 [26]	n = 3620 Stage I–IV	18 % by PCR	82 % by PCR	HR for OS 1.35 (1.16–1.56), p = 0.01 (*KRAS* mutation or p21 expression)
Shepherd et al. LACE-Bio, 2013 [27]	n = 1,532 Stage I–III	300 (19 %)	1,232 (80 %)	HR for OS 1.17 (0.96–1.42), p = 0.12

Mt mutant, *WT* wild-type, *HR* hazard ratio, *PFS* progression-free survival, *OS* overall survival, *mo* months

Individual Studies The role of *KRAS* mutations as a prognostic factor in lung cancer remains a controversial issue. While the prognostic nature of *KRAS* status has been studied widely in non-small cell lung carcinomas of all stages, patients with early-stage lung cancers represent a significant proportion of subjects. In comparison to studies in advanced-stage lung cancers, surgical specimens in early-stage studies afford the advantage of larger tumor samples on which molecular diagnostic testing can be more easily performed. These studies are summarized in Table 2.

The Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) E4592 study was a randomized control trial investigating the potential benefit of adjuvant thoracic radiation with or without four cycles of cisplatin/etoposide in patients with resected stage II-IIIA non-small cell lung cancers. This was the first large prospective study that assessed the role of *KRAS* mutations as determinants of prognosis. 184 tumors in this study were evaluated for *KRAS* status. Of the 44 *KRAS*-mutant tumors, 33 % were of non-squamous histology and 4.8 % were squamous cell carcinomas. While the overall survival of patients with *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers was numerically

inferior to patients with *KRAS* wild-type lung cancers, this finding was not statistically significant. The median overall survival of patients with *KRAS*-mutant tumors was 30 months, compared to 42 months for patients with KRAS wild-type tumors (p = 0.38). On multivariate analysis, only age and tumor stage were found to be significant prognostic factors, although a trend was observed bordering on statistical significance for KRAS status (p = 0.07) [9].

In the JBR.10 study of patients with resected stage IB-II NSCLC, patients were randomized to receive either four cycles of adjuvant cisplatin/vinorelbine or observation. This was a positive trial that demonstrated a 15 % absolute improvement in 5-year survival in patients who received chemotherapy versus observation (HR, 0.78; 95 % CI, 0.61–0.99; p = 0.04). Overall, *RAS* mutations were detected in 24 % of patients, and this finding was not prognostic for overall survival (p = 0.40) [28].

The International Agency for Research on Cancer (IACR) examined the effect of *KRAS* status in early stage resected NSCLCs in the European Early Lung Cancer trial. *KRAS* mutations were identified in 18.5 % of tumors, 30.6 % of which were lung adenocarcinomas (n = 41/134) and 4.3 % squamous cell carcinomas (n = 5/115). *KRAS* status was not shown to be prognostic for progression-free survival (p = 0.26) [29].

The Cancer and Leukemia Group B-9633 (CALGB-9633) trial was a phase III study that randomized patients with stage IB NSCLC to either four cycles of adjuvant carboplatin/paclitaxel or observation. The study was a negative trial that failed to meet its primary endpoint. *KRAS* mutations were detected in 27 % of tumors (n = 71/258), and no prognostic effect of *KRAS* status was demonstrated (HR for OS 1.1, p = 0.747) [30].

Pooled Analyses The individual studies discussed in the previous section have largely been limited by small numbers and insufficient power to draw conclusions on the prognostic nature of *KRAS* status in non-small cell lung cancers. Thus, a number of meta-analyses have been performed in attempt to answer this question.

Mascaux and colleagues published a meta-analysis of 28 studies and 3620 patients aimed at assessing the prognostic significance of *KRAS* status on both disease-free survival and overall survival in the adjuvant setting. The study demonstrated that the presence of a *KRAS* mutation was a negative prognostic factor for overall survival (HR for OS 1.35, CI 1.16–1.56, p = 0.01, random effect model), although this took into account both patients with a *KRAS* mutation and p21 expression. Similarly, *KRAS* mutations portended poorer overall survival in patients with lung adenocarcinomas (HR 1.52, CI 1.30–1.78, p = 0.02). These findings were not seen in the subset of patients with squamous cell lung carcinomas (HR 1.49, CI 0.88–2.52, p = 0.48). *KRAS* status was a significant prognostic marker when polymerase chain reaction sequencing was employed as the method of assessment (HR 1.39, CI 1.22–1.58, p = 0.03). In contrast, immunohistochemistry (IHC) to detect p21 status was not found to be significantly prognostic (1.08, CI 0.86–1.34, p = 0.21) [26].

Pooled data from 1721 patients from four randomized control trials comparing adjuvant chemotherapy versus observation (ANITA, IALT, JBR.10, and

CALGB-9633) were analyzed as part of the LACE-Bio (Lung Adjuvant Cisplatin Evaluation-Biomarker) study. *KRAS* status was tested by restriction fragment length polymorphism, allelic specific oligonucleotide hybridization, or allelic refractory mutation system analysis and mass spectrometry. These detection methods were employed as they were deemed to demonstrate greater sensitivity than direct sequencing techniques [27].

KRAS status was successfully determined in 1532 patients. 20 % of these samples were found to be *KRAS*-mutant, of which 34 % were adenocarcinomas (n = 206/602), 6 % were squamous cell carcinomas (n = 44/705.) and 23 % were from non-squamous, non-adenocarcinoma histologies (n = 53/229.) *KRAS* mutations were found to be more frequent in women, younger patients, and early stage disease. In a multivariate analysis, only age ($p = 0.04$) and histology ($p < 0.0001$) were significant prognostic indicators.

There was no significant difference in overall survival based on *KRAS* status (HR for OS 1.17, CI 0.96–1.42, $p = 0.12$) with no heterogeneity among trials ($p = 0.47$). Similarly, there was no significant difference in disease-free survival based on *KRAS* status (HR for DFS 1.15, CI 0.96 = 1.39, $p = 0.14$). No prognostic difference for overall survival was demonstrated between different types of *KRAS* mutations, such as those involving codon 12 (HR: 1.04, CI 0.77–1.40) or codon 13 (HR 1.01, CI, 0.47–2.17, $p = 0.96$). There was no significant difference in prognosis for codon 12 subgroups for both disease-free ($p = 0.98$) and overall survival ($p = 0.99$).

The Predictive Nature of *KRAS* Mutations

Benefit of Adjuvant Chemotherapy in Early-Stage Lung Cancers A number of randomized studies have investigated whether *KRAS* status might predict for response to adjuvant chemotherapy in non-small cell lung cancers. Similar to what we have seen in the previous section on the prognostic value of *KRAS* status, these trials have demonstrated discordant results. To date, *KRAS* status has not served as a valuable criterion to determine if patients with resected non-small cell lung cancers should receive adjuvant platinum-based chemotherapy.

In the JBR.10 study of adjuvant cisplatin and vinorelbine in resected stage IB-II non-small cell lung cancers, no statistically significant benefit of chemotherapy over observation was observed in patients with *RAS* wild-type tumors (median survival 7.8 vs 6.6 years, HR, 0.84, CI 0.63–1.12; $p = 0.24$). Similar results were obtained for patients with *RAS*-mutant lung cancers (median survival 9.7 vs 7.8 years, HR 0.82, CI 0.50–1.35, $p = 0.44$). Although the interaction term was non-significant for disease-specific survival, *RAS* wild-type patients appeared to derive more benefit from chemotherapy (HR 0.72, CI 0.51–1.02, $p = 0.06$) compared with *RAS*-mutant patients (HR, 1.07, CI 0.61–1.88, $p = 0.82$) [28].

In the CALGB 9633 study of adjuvant carboplatin and paclitaxel for resected stage IB non-small cell lung cancers, 5-year overall survival was not significantly

different between *KRAS*-mutant and *KRAS* wild-type patients that received chemotherapy (55 % vs 62 %, HR 1.2, p = 0.58). Five-year overall survival was likewise not different between *KRAS*-mutant and *KRAS* wild-type patients who were randomized to observation (67 % vs 59 %, HR 1.1, p = 0.75). Adjuvant chemotherapy in patients with large tumors (>4 cm) was not significantly associated with benefit in patients with *KRAS* wild-type (HR 0.69, p = 0.18) or *KRAS*-mutant patients (HR 1.2, p = 0.55) [30].

Given the limitations of previous studies, investigators pooled data from three Lung Adjuvant Cisplatin Evaluation (LACE) platinum-based adjuvant chemotherapy trials to examine the role of *KRAS* status. The analysis revealed no significant effect of *KRAS* status on overall survival benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy over observation (*KRAS* wild-type tumors HR 0.89, CI 0.76–1.05, p = 0.15; *KRAS*-mutant tumors HR 1.05, CI 0.76–1.46, p = 0.77). Results were not different among trials (p = 0.52). Results were similar for disease-free survival (*KRAS* wild-type tumors HR 0.86, CI 0.74–1.00, p = 0.04; *KRAS*-mutant tumors HR 0.93, CI 0.68–1.27, p = 0.65) [27].

In terms of the different types of *KRAS* mutations, no benefit in overall survival was seen in patients with codon 12 mutations (HR 0.95, CI 0.67–1.35, p = 0.77). However, patients with codon 13 mutations had worse outcomes with adjuvant chemotherapy compared to patients who did not receive chemotherapy (HR for OS 5.78, CI 2.06–16.2, p < 0.01). A variable effect on overall survival was seen with codon 12 mutations: G12A or G12R (HR 0.66, p = 0.48), G12C or G12V (HR 0.94, p = 0.77) and G12D or G12S (HR 1.39, p = 0.48) but these differences were not significant (comparison of four HRs, including wild-type, p = 0.76). The authors concluded that *KRAS* status cannot be used to select patients with non-small cell lung cancer for adjuvant chemotherapy.

Benefit of Chemotherapy in Advanced Lung Cancers Little is known regarding the role of *KRAS* mutations as predictors of response or resistance to cytotoxic chemotherapy. As with adjuvant chemotherapy, currently available data do not support the use of *KRAS* status as a means of selecting patients for systemic chemotherapy.

In the phase III TRIBUTE (Tarceva Responses in Conjunction with Paclitaxel and Carboplatin trial in advanced NSCLC) trial, first-line chemotherapy with carboplatin, paclitaxel, and erlotinib was compared to carboplatin, paclitaxel, and placebo. *KRAS* mutations were present in 21 % of tumor samples tested. In patients that received carboplatin and paclitaxel alone, response rate was not different between patients with *KRAS*-mutant and *KRAS* wild-type tumors (23 % vs 26 %). Time to progression and overall survival in the *KRAS*-mutant and *KRAS* wild-type cohorts that received chemotherapy alone were as follows: TTP 6 mo vs 5.4 mo, OS 13.5 mo vs 11.3 mo [31].

Small retrospective studies have been reported that did not reveal statistically significant benefits for palliative chemotherapy based on *KRAS* status in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancers [32, 33]. In a retrospective study by Levy and colleagues of 16 patients with *KRAS*-mutant/*EGFR*-wild-type and 19 patients with *KRAS*/*EGFR*-wild-type non-small cell lung cancers who received first-line

platinum-based pemetrexed-containing chemotherapy, overall response rate was not significantly different (56 % vs 36 %, p=0.30). Within the limits of a small retrospective series and variable follow-up, median progression-free survival was improved in *KRAS*-mutant patients vs *KRAS* wild-type patients (10.3 vs 5.7 mo, p=0.03). Overall survival was not reported [34]. These results remain hypothesis-generating.

Benefit of EGFR-Directed Targeted Therapy The KRAS protein lies directly downstream of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Due to its position in the signaling cascade, mutant KRAS is hypothesized to cause persistent pathway activation independent of EGFR signaling, thus conferring resistance to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition (TKI). While activating *EGFR* mutations are recognized as the strongest predictors of benefit from EGFR TKI use, a number of trials in advanced non-small cell lung cancers have asked the question of whether or not *KRAS* mutations are negative predictors of response to EGFR TKI therapy (Table 3).

The potential role for *KRAS* status as a predictive marker, was investigated in two phase III clinical trials examining single agent EGFR TKI versus best supportive care. The NCIC BR.21 trial compared erlotinib with placebo in patients with stage IIIB/IV non-small cell lung cancers who received one or two prior chemotherapy regimens. Overall survival was improved from 4.7 to 6.7 months in patients who were randomized to placebo versus erlotinib (p<0.01). No significant difference in response rate was noted in patients who received erlotinib with *KRAS*-mutant vs

Table 3 ***KRAS* status as a predictive marker of EGFR TKI benefit**. Selected individual and pooled studies investigating the role of *KRAS* mutations as potential predictive markers of EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition (TKI) with gefitinib or erlotinib in non-small cell lung cancers are summarized here. In general, *KRAS* mutations are thought to confer resistance to therapy

Study	Arm	Endpoint	*KRAS*-Mt	*KRAS* WT
TRIBUTE Eberhard et al. [31]	Carboplatin, paclitaxel, and erlotinib	ORR	8 %	26 %
		TTP	3.4 mo	5.3 mo
		OS	4.4 mo	12.1 mo
Hirsch et al. [35]	Erlotinib	ORR	7 %	19 %
		PFS	3 mo	3 mo
		OS	12 mo	11 mo
Massarelli et al. [36]	Erlotinib or gefitinib	ORR	0 %	13 %
		TTP	1.7 mo	2.4 mo
		OS	5.0 mo	9.4 mo
TRUST Schneider et al. [37]	Erlotinib	ORR	0 %	9 %
BR.21 Zhu et al. [38]	Erlotinib	ORR	5 %	10 %
INTEREST Doulliard et al. [39]	Gefitinib	ORR	0 %	10 %
		PFS	1.4 mo	2.6 mo
		OS	7.8 mo	7.5 mo
Mao et al. pooled [14]	Erlotinib or gefitinib	RR	3 %	26 %

Mt mutant, *WT* wild-type, *HR* hazard ratio, *PFS* progression-free survival, *OS* overall survival, *TTP* time to progression, *mo* months

KRAS wild-type tumors (5 % vs 10 %, p = 0.69). An interaction test did not demonstrate a significant difference in survival based on *KRAS* status (interaction $p = 0.09$) [38]. A similar analysis was undertaken for the ISEL study (Iressa Survival Evaluation in Lung Cancer) of gefinitinib vs placebo in second- and third-line patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancers. A *KRAS* mutation was detected in 7.9 % ($n = 12$) of 152 tumor samples. Due to the limited number of cases detected, no reliable conclusion could be drawn from the impact of *KRAS* status on the benefit of gefitinib versus best-supportive care [35]. A number of other studies examining the role of *KRAS* status as a predictive marker of benefit from EGFR TKI inhibition are summarized in Table 3.

The TRIBUTE trial supports the potential role for *KRAS* as a negative predictor of response to erlotinib plus chemotherapy versus chemotherapy alone. In patients with *KRAS*-mutant tumors, overall response rate was lower in patients who received erlotinib and chemotherapy versus those that received erlotinib alone (ORR 8 % vs 23 %). Patients with *KRAS*-mutant tumors who were treated with erlotinib and chemotherapy had a shorter median time to progression (TTP 3.4 mo, CI 1.5–6.3) and overall survival (OS 4.4 mo, CI 3.4–12.9) compared to patients who received chemotherapy alone (TTP 6 mo, CI 4.9–7.1; OS 13.5 mo, CI 11.1–15.9). Among patients with *KRAS*-mutant tumors, the hazard ratio of erlotinib plus chemotherapy versus chemotherapy alone was 2.1 (CI 1.1–3.8) for OS and 1.9 (CI 1.1–3.6) for TTP [31].

Two meta-analyses have assessed the association between *KRAS* status and response to EGFR TKI in non-small cell lung cancers. Linardou and colleagues pooled data from 17 non-small cell lung cancer trials, representing a total of 165 patients with *KRAS* mutations. In this analysis, *KRAS* mutations were significantly associated with an absence of response to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition (sensitivity 0.21, specificity 0.94, positive likelihood ratio 3.52, negative likelihood ratio 0.84). A pooled sensitivity analysis demonstrated that no response was seen in some *KRAS* wild-type tumors, leading the authors to believe that resistance to EGFR TKIs is unlikely to be solely mediated by *KRAS* mutation status (0.21; 95 % CI: 0.16–0.28) [40].

Data from 22 trials in non-small cell lung cancer was pooled for a meta-analysis by Mao and colleagues. 16 % of these patients (n = 231/1470) harbored tumors with mutant *KRAS*. The response rate to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition was 26 % in patients with *KRAS* wild-type tumors compared to 3 % for *KRAS*-mutant tumors. The pooled relative risk for response was 0.29 (95 % CI: 0.18–0.47; $p < 0.01$). This analysis was mirrored in both Asian and Caucasian patients, with a relative risk of 0.22 in Asians (95 % CI: 0.07–0.63; p = 0.01) and 0.31 in Caucasians (95 % CI: 0.17–0.54; $p < 0.01$) [14].

No validated data exists regarding *KRAS* mutation type and differential response to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition. A small study (n = 14) by Metro and colleagues demonstrated that patients with codon 13 mutations had worse progression-free (p = 0.04) and overall survival (p < 0.01) compared to patients with codon 12 mutations [41].

Patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancers treated with the EGFR monoclonal antibody cetuximab were studied in the BMS099 and FLEX (First-Line Erbitux) trials [42, 43]. In BMS099, patients were randomized to either carboplatin

and taxane chemotherapy alone or with cetuximab. *KRAS* mutations were found in 17 % of tumors in this study, and no statistically significant association between *KRAS* status and response rate, progression-free survival, or overall survival was demonstrated [42]. The FLEX trial compared palliative cisplatin and vinorelbine with or without cetuximab in EGFR-expressing non-small cell lung cancers. *KRAS* mutations were detected in 19 % of tumors and were not significantly associated with response outcomes [43]. These findings are contrasted to data generated in colorectal cancers where *KRAS* mutations are predictive of poor response to cetuximab and panitumumab.

Therapeutic Targeting of *KRAS*-Mutant Lung Cancers

Cytotoxic chemotherapy remains the current standard of care for patients with advanced *KRAS*-mutant non-small cell lung cancers. While *KRAS* mutations in lung cancer have been known to us over the last three decades, many efforts at targeting these drivers have not yielded palpable results. Mutant KRAS plays a crucial role in the integration of extracellular growth signals with downstream signaling cascades, and approaches to targeted therapy have focused on inhibiting several steps along these pathways.

The landscape of potential targeted therapeutics for mutant KRAS, however, is slowly beginning to change as evidenced by reports of the efficacy of MEK inhibition in combination with chemotherapy. As our knowledge of the biology of *KRAS-mutant* lung cancers continues to expand, this space is likely to undergo significant evolution over time.

This evolution will involve a more granular understanding of synthetic lethal reactions that lead to cell death in *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers. While the more common KRAS-targeting strategies are discussed in this section (Figs. 2 and 3), other potential avenues of research include studies of the NF1, WT1, EZH2, Siah 2, GATA2, RBM5, IL-8, TWIST1, cyclin-dependent kinase, and propapoptotic pathways [5]. It is worth emphasizing that the biology of *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers is highly complex and involves a delicate interplay between various tumor suppressors and oncogenes.

Farnesyl Transferase Inhibition Earlier efforts at targeting KRAS in lung cancers focused on inhibiting mutant RAS with antisense oligonucleotides against RAS itself. Problems with administration and drug delivery have however, halted further studies in this area. Investigators then began to focus on inhibiting the association of mutant KRAS with the plasma membrane as this event was thought to be crucial for activity. The KRAS protein associates with the plasma membrane via a process called farnesylation. This step is catalyzed by the enzyme farnesyl transferase, resulting in the post translational modification of the C-terminal CAAX motif of KRAS by the addition of a farnesyl isoprenoid lipid [44].

Farnesyl transferase inhibitors (FTIs) were thus developed with the intent of abolishing signal transduction and cell growth via prevention of localization mutant

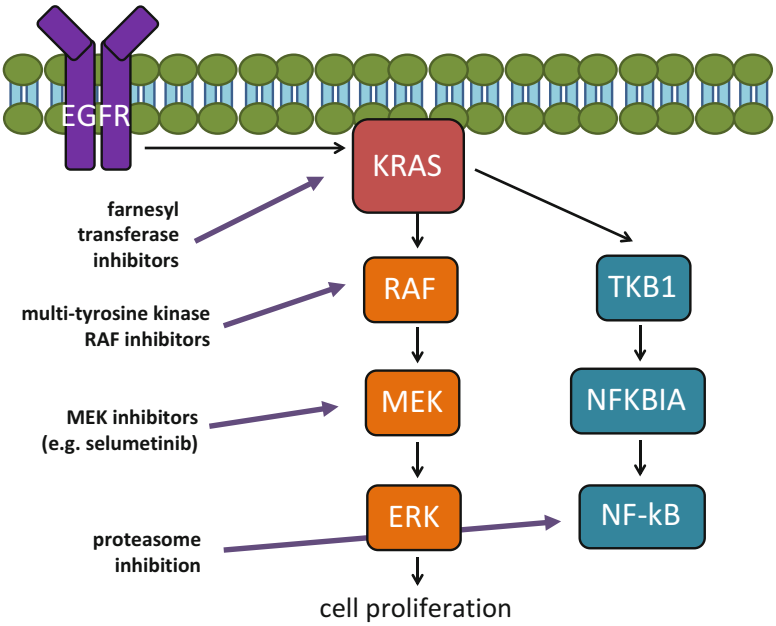


Fig. 2 Therapeutic targeting strategies in *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers. Mutant KRAS lies downstream of growth factor receptors such as EGFR. Constitutive activation of mutant KRAS results in subsequent activation of downstream signaling of downstream pathways (RAF-MEK-ERK, and NF-kB). Targeted therapies directed against various members of these pathways are depicted

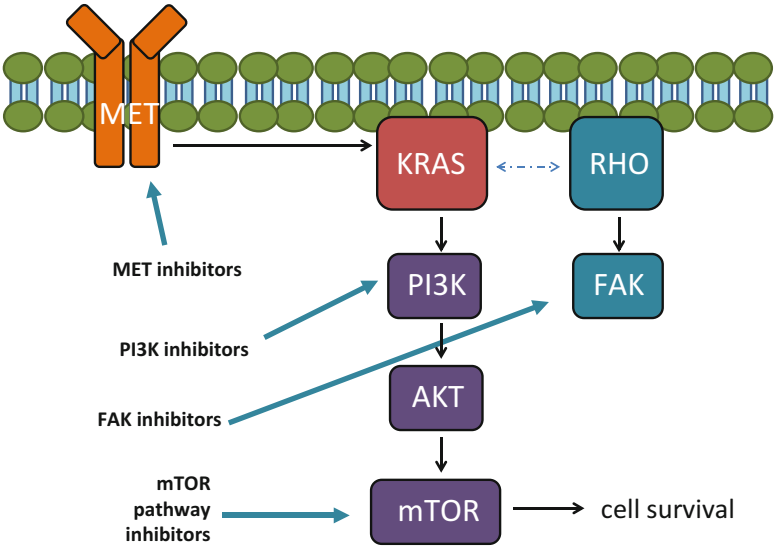


Fig. 3 Other strategies to target *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers. In addition to activation of the RAF-MEK-ERK and NF-kB pathways, *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers can be reliant on activation of MET or the PI3K-AKT-mTOR and RHO-FAK pathways. The various inhibitors used to potentially target these pathways are depicted

KRAS to the cell membrane. These drugs were developed based on rational design strategies and screening of combinatorial libraries. A number of FTIs have been tested including tiparfinib (R115777), lonafarnib, and FTI-277. In vitro experiments revealed activity against KRAS substrates in the low nanomolar range, and in vivo activity was demonstrated in chemically-induced *KRAS*-mutant lung tumors in mice [45, 46]. Unfortunately, the results of clinical testing of farnesyl transferase inhibitors in lung cancer have not yielded significant results.

Despite a large number of clinical trials investigating the use of these drugs as single agents, FTIs have not demonstrated significant activity against *KRAS*-mutant tumors. R115777 was studied by Adeji and colleagues in the first-line setting in a phase II study of an unselected population of patients with advanced NSCLC. The compound demonstrated minimal clinical activity and no objective responses were observed. Seven patients (16 %, CI 8–31 %) achieved stable disease for a period longer than 6 months [47].

Riely and colleagues investigated the FTI salirasib in a phase II trial of 30 patients with *KRAS*-mutant advanced non-small cell lung cancers. Again, no radiographic responses were observed. 30 % (n = 7/20) of patients achieved stable disease at 10 weeks. It is unclear whether the addition of standard chemotherapy to an FTI would result in greater activity, however, results in single-agent studies have been discouraging [48].

RAF Inhibition As RAF proteins lie immediately downstream of mutant KRAS, RAF inhibition was thought to represent a reasonable method of targeting *KRAS-mutant* lung cancers. Many RAF inhibitors that are available in the clinic are multi-tyrosine kinase inhibitors that lack specificity for RAF alone. Initial studies of these 'dirty' tyrosine kinase inhibitors included drugs such as sorafenib. In vitro work in non-small cell lung cancer cell lines with *KRAS* mutations revealed that sorafenib inhibited cell growth and induced G1 arrest secondary to C-RAF depletion [49].

Clinically, the use of sorafenib in patients with *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers was investigated in a single-arm phase II study. Patients with stage IIIB/IV non-small cell lung carcinomas with *KRAS*-mutations who had previously progressed on at least one platinum-containing regimen were treated with 400 mg of sorafenib twice daily until progression or unacceptable toxicity. The primary endpoint of the study was disease control rate at 6 weeks. A total of 57 patients with *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers were treated on this study. A disease-control rate at 6 weeks of 53 % was achieved, however only 5 of 57 patients (9 %) had a partial response to therapy [50].

While this study demonstrated clinical activity of the drug in this genotypic subset of lung cancers, the observed response rate was poor in comparison to the efficacy seen with other targeted therapeutics in driver-positive lung cancers where response rates well exceeding 60 % are noted. In addition, it is unclear whether the effects seen in this population were truly secondary to RAF inhibition versus the inhibition of other targets of the drug including VEGFR and PDGFR.

Drugs thought to have better activity against RAF such as vemurafenib and dabrafenib have since been tested widely in a variety of cancers including advanced *BRAF*-mutant melanomas where their use is FDA-approved. The utility of these

drugs in lung cancer has largely been limited to patients whose tumors harbor *BRAF* mutations, drivers that tend to be mutually exclusive with mutations in *KRAS*.

MEK Inhibition Similar to RAF, MEK lies downstream of KRAS in the RAS-RAF-MEK-ERK pathway. While RAF inhibitors are relatively non-specific, MEK inhibitors such as selumetinib were developed as allosteric inhibitors of the MEK protein via non-ATP-competitive binding and are relatively specific for MEK1 and MEK2.

Davies et al. performed in vitro screening for the activity of selumetinib (also known as AZD6244 or ARRY-142886) against a variety of cancer cell lines and found that cell lines harboring RAS or BRAF mutations were most sensitive to the drug [51]. Ji and colleagues studied the MEK inhibitor CI-1040 in a KRAS G12D-mutant murine lung cancer mouse model [52]. Treatment with CI-1040 resulted in a dramatic reduction of tumor burden (53 % ± 5 %) and histologic analysis of four of five mice revealed they were completely free of tumor. Tumor shrinkage was thought to be secondary to growth arrest and induction of apoptosis [52].

In a phase II study by Hainsworth and colleagues (n = 84), an unselected population of patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancers were randomized to receive either selumetinib at 100 mg orally twice daily or pemetrexed 500 mg/m^2 intravenously once every 3 weeks in the second or third-line setting [53]. No benefit in median PFS was seen between the two arms (67 vs 90 days, HR 1.08, CI 0.75–1.54, p = 0.79). Response rates were also similar between the arms (5 % vs 5 %). *KRAS* status was not reported in this series [53].

Preclinical work by Chen et al. established that the efficacy of docetaxel in *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers can be improved by the addition of a MEK inhibitor. The group demonstrated in vivo that loss of the tumor suppressor genes *TP53* and *LKB1* impaired the response of *KRAS*-mutant lung cancer mouse models to docetaxel. Response rates were significantly increased with the addition of selumetinib to docetaxel. In contrast, however, response in *KRAS*-mutant tumors with concomitant mutations in *TP53* and *LKB1* was significantly lower, emphasizing the importance of concomitant tumor suppressor gene alterations as co-determinants of efficacy of targeted therapy [54].

Janne and colleagues thus investigated the combination of selumetinib and docetaxel versus docetaxel alone in a phase II randomized study of *KRAS*-mutant non-small cell lung cancers in the second-line setting [55]. Forty-four patients received selumetinib and docetaxel, and 43 patients received docetaxel alone. A statistically significant improvement in response rate was seen in the selumetinib-containing arm compared to docetaxel monotherapy (32 % vs 0 %, p < 0.01), accompanied by a significant improvement in progression-free survival (HR 0.58, CI 0.42–0.79, p = 0.01). Median overall survival was not statistically different between the two arms (HR 0.80, CI 0.56–1.14, p = 0.21). Selumetinib is currently being investigated in combination with erlotinib in patients with *KRAS*-mutant tumors [56].

Trametinib (also known as GSK1120212) is a novel MEK inhibitor that has demonstrated activity in preclinical models [57]. This compound was investigated in the phase II setting in 30 heavily pre-treated patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancers. 22 patients of these patients had *KRAS*-mutant tumors [58]. Best radiologic

responses consisted of two patients with partial remission and 10 patients with stable disease. The median progression-free survival in the *KRAS*-mutant subgroup was 3.8 months (95 % CI 1.9–5.5) versus 2.1 months (95 % CI 1.8–5.2) in the *KRAS* wild-type group [58]. This compound is under investigation as a single agent compared to docetaxel in *KRAS*-mutant non-small cell lung cancers.

NF-kB Inhibition In an RNA interference screen of human cell lines, Barbie et al. demonstrated that knockdown of TKB1, an IkB kinase (IKK) that enhances NF-kB activity, resulted in the selective death of cells that harbor *KRAS* mutations [59]. In a separate paper, Meylan et al. demonstrated that the introduction of a nonphosphorylatable NF-kB super repressor, IkB, in *KRAS* G12D-mutant murine tumors resulted in loss of cell viability secondary to apoptosis [60]. This data supports the dependence of *KRAS* G12D-mutant tumors on the NF-kB pathway.

Proteasome inhibition by bortezomib leads to decreased NF-kB signaling by preventing degradation of the NF-kB inhibitor IkB [61]. Luo et al. demonstrated that both shRNA targeting of proteasome subunits and proteasome inhibition by bortezomib resulted in synthetic lethality in *KRAS*-mutant cells [62]. In $KRAS^{LSL\text{-}G12D/wt};p53^{flox/flox}$ mice (G12D-mutant), bortezomib induced in-vivo tumor regression of lung adenocarcinoma. After repeated treatment, however, acquired resistance invariably developed. Similar results were noted with Bay-117082, an NF-kB inhibitor [63].

These preclinical observations provide a compelling rationale to test the use of bortezomib in *KRAS*-mutant lung adenocarcinomas. The use of subcutaneous bortezomib is currently being studied in a phase II study of patients with advanced *KRAS*-mutant non-small cell lung cancers.

MET Inhibition MET aberrations are perhaps most well known in lung cancers in the setting of acquired resistance to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibition where *MET* amplification or overexpression is found in a subset of patients. MET has likewise been implicated in the cellular transformation induced by mutant RAS. Yang and colleagues studied the role of MET inhibition with PHA-665752 in a *KRAS*-mutant lung cancer mouse model. Short-term treatment with the drug induced apoptosis in tumor cells [64].

Sequist et al. investigated the activity of tivantinib (ARQ 197), a small molecule with activity against MET, in combination with erlotinib in a phase II study. Patients were randomized to erlotinib with or without tivantinib. Overall, the addition of tivantinib failed to improve progression-free survival (HR 0.81, CI 0.57–1.16, $p=0.24$), however a significant benefit in progression-free survival was demonstrated in the patients with KRAS-mutant tumors ($n=15$, HR 0.18, CI 0.05–0.70, $p<0.01$, interaction $p<0.01$) [65].

The MARQUEE study, a subsequent randomized phase III trial with a similar design randomizing patients to erlotinib with or without tivantinib, was stratified by *EGFR* and *KRAS* status. While an interim analysis demonstrated a significant progression-free survival benefit in the intention- to-treat population, the study was closed early by the Data Monitoring Committee as achievement of the primary endpoint of overall survival was unlikely to be met [66]. A subgroup analysis of the

patients with *KRAS*-mutant tumors from this study will be of interest and has yet to be reported.

FAK Inhibition *KRAS* mutations can occur in combination with inactivation of *CDKN2A* via mutations or epigenetic modifications. *CDKN2A* encodes the tumor suppressor genes ARF and INK4A. In combination, mutations in *KRAS* and deficiency of *CDKN2A* have been associated with aggressive non-small cell lung cancers. Konstantinidiou and colleagues reported that *CDKN2A* loss in *KRAS* G12D-mutant lung tumors resulted in aberrant activation of the small GTPase RHOA that is involved in the regulation of chemotaxis and cell migration. RHOA activation is driven by MEK1/2 and ERK/12 and is essential for cell survival [67].

While no specific drugs target RHOA, the group showed that knockdown of the downstream target focal adhesion kinase or FAK resulted in loss of cell viability. Similarly, the administration of the ATP-competitive FAK inhibitor PF562271 resulted in significant tumor regressions in vivo in a *KRAS* G12D-mutant and INK4A- and ARF-deficient model. An ongoing phase II study is looking at the use of the FAK inhibitor V2-6063 (defactinib) in patients with *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers.

PI3K Pathway Inhibition The PI3K (phosphatidyl 3-kinase) pathway is an important growth pathway in cancer cells that is responsible for cell survival, differentiation, motility, and proliferation. Preclinical evidence points to the reliance of *KRAS*-mutant lung cancers on PI3K pathway (PI3K-AKT-mTOR) activation in cooperation with activation of the RAS-RAF-MEK-ERK axis. PI3K signaling is thought to be essential for *KRAS*-induced tumorigenesis but not tumor maintenance.

Engleman and colleagues studied the effects of the dual pan-PI3K and mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibitor NVP-BEZ235 in genetically-engineered mouse models. No tumor shrinkage was observed when *KRAS* G12D-mutant transgenic mice were treated with NVP-BEZ235 despite a decreased in AKT phosphorylation. Treatment with selumetinib, however, produced only modest tumor regression. In contrast, treatment with both NVP-BEZ235 and selumetinib resulted in marked synergistic tumor regression and pathologic analysis at the end of treatment revealed a substantial pathologic response [68].

A number of phase I trials are now looking at a combination of MEK inhibition with PI3K-directed therapy, and radiographic responses have been reported by independent investigators. These findings will require validation in later-phase studies. In addition, however, the additive toxicity of two targeted therapies remains a significant concern.

mTOR Inhibition The mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) is a serine/threonine kinase that acts downstream of the PI3K/AKT pathway. mTOR inhibitors are thought to achieve their anti-tumor effect by arresting the tumor cells in the G1 phase of the cell cycle [69].

The mTOR inhibitor ridaforolimus was investigated in advanced KRAS-mutant non-small cell lung cancers in a phase II randomized discontinuation study in the second and third-line settings. Patients in this study received 8 weeks of ridaforolimus at 40 mg daily on a 5 day per week schedule and were subsequently randomized to

receive either ridaforolimus or placebo if they achieved stable disease. Overall response rate after 8 weeks of ridaforolimus was 1 %. The primary endpoint of progression-free survival after randomization was significantly improved to 2–4 months in patients who received ridaforolimus versus placebo (HR 0.36, p = 0.013). Median overall survival was 18 months in the ridaforolimus group compared to 5 months in the placebo group, although this finding was not statistically significant (HR: 0.46; p = 0.09) [70].

Heat Shock Protein Inhibition Heat shock proteins are chaperones that play a role in the post-translational modification of clients such as proteins encoded by mutated driver oncogenes, thereby promoting maintenance of the oncogenic phenotype [71]. Acquaviva and colleagues examined the activity of the Hsp90 inhibitor against a panel of lung cancer cell lines with a spectrum of *KRAS* mutations (G12, G13, and Q61 variants). Ganetespib potently reduced viability in all lines with IC50 values in the low nanomolar range. The drug resulted in a dose-dependent decrease in known Hsp90 clients such as EGFR and MET, and CRAF. This was accompanied by inactivation of MEK, ERK, and AKT and the induction of apoptosis [72].

Ganetespib has been investigated as a single agent in a phase II study of unselected non-small cell lung cancers. Fourteen patients were found to have tumors that harbored a *KRAS* mutation, of which one patient achieved partial response and seven patients demonstrated stable disease lasting greater than 16 weeks [73]. A phase IIB/III study combining ganetespib with docetaxel is ongoing, and will investigate potential synergy with these agents.

In the same study by Acquaviva, the combination of low doses of ganetespib with either the MEK inhibitor selumetinib or the PI3K/mTOR inhibitor NVP-BEZ235 resulted in a substantial increase in cell death compared to when the latter two targeted agents were used alone [72]. An ongoing phase Ib/II study is currently evaluating the role of the Hsp90 inhibitor retaspimycin (IPI-504) in combination with the mTOR inhibitor everolimus in the treatment of *KRAS*-mutant non-small cell lung cancers.

Conclusions

In the ever-changing world of targeted therapy for molecular drivers of lung cancer growth, *KRAS* mutations continue to represent a significant challenge for drug development. Despite advances in our understanding of the role of MEK and PI3K/mTOR inhibition in this genomic subset of tumors, responses have largely been observed with combination therapy and not with single agents. This is unlike the paradigm established for other drivers such as *EGFR* and *BRAF* mutations, and *ALK* and *ROS1* fusions where dramatic and durable responses occur with a single targeted therapeutic. Furthermore, combination therapy is plagued by an increase in treatment-related toxicities compounded by the length of time that these agents are used. Our challenge moving forward will be to find agents that are either active as

monotherapy, or relatively safe when used in combination with other targeted therapeutics. This can only be achieved by a more nuanced understanding of the intricate biology that drives these tumors.

References

1. Riely GJ, Marks J, Pao W (2009) KRAS mutations in non-small cell lung cancer. Proc Am Thorac Soc 6(2):201–205. doi:10.1513/pats.200809-107LC
2. Karnoub AE, Weinberg RA (2008) Ras oncogenes: split personalities. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 9(7):517–531. doi:10.1038/nrm2438
3. Boriack-Sjodin PA, Margarit SM, Bar-Sagi D, Kuriyan J (1998) The structural basis of the activation of Ras by Sos. Nature 394(6691):337–343. doi:10.1038/28548
4. Scheffzek K, Ahmadian MR, Kabsch W, Wiesmuller L, Lautwein A, Schmitz F, Wittinghofer A (1997) The Ras-RasGAP complex: structural basis for GTPase activation and its loss in oncogenic Ras mutants. Science 277(5324):333–338
5. Karachaliou N, Mayo C, Costa C, Magri I, Gimenez-Capitan A, Molina-Vila MA, Rosell R (2013) KRAS mutations in lung cancer. Clin Lung Cancer 14(3):205–214. doi:10.1016/j.cllc.2012.09.007
6. Garassino MC, Marabese M, Rusconi P, Rulli E, Martelli O, Farina G, Scanni A, Broggini M (2011) Different types of K-Ras mutations could affect drug sensitivity and tumour behaviour in non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 22(1):235–237. doi:10.1093/annonc/mdq680
7. Pylayeva-Gupta Y, Grabocka E, Bar-Sagi D (2011) RAS oncogenes: weaving a tumorigenic web. Nat Rev Cancer 11(11):761–774. doi:10.1038/nrc3106
8. Santos E, Martin-Zanca D, Reddy EP, Pierotti MA, Della Porta G, Barbacid M (1984) Malignant activation of a K-ras oncogene in lung carcinoma but not in normal tissue of the same patient. Science 223(4637):661–664
9. Schiller JH, Adak S, Feins RH, Keller SM, Fry WA, Livingston RB, Hammond ME, Wolf B, Sabatini L, Jett J, Kohman L, Johnson DH (2001) Lack of prognostic significance of p53 and K-ras mutations in primary resected non-small-cell lung cancer on E4592: a Laboratory Ancillary Study on an Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Prospective Randomized Trial of Postoperative Adjuvant Therapy. J Clin Oncol 19(2):448–457
10. Cancer Genome Atlas Research N (2012) Comprehensive genomic characterization of squamous cell lung cancers. Nature 489(7417):519–525. doi:10.1038/nature11404
11. Drilon A, Rekhtman N, Ladanyi M, Paik P (2012) Squamous-cell carcinomas of the lung: emerging biology, controversies, and the promise of targeted therapy. Lancet Oncol 13(10):e418–e426. doi:10.1016/S1470-2045(12)70291-7
12. Rekhtman N, Ang DC, Riely GJ, Ladanyi M, Moreira AL (2013) KRAS mutations are associated with solid growth pattern and tumor-infiltrating leukocytes in lung adenocarcinoma. Mod Pathol 26(10):1307–1319. doi:10.1038/modpathol.2013.74
13. Thu KL, Vucic EA, Chari R, Zhang W, Lockwood WW, English JC, Fu R, Wang P, Feng Z, MacAulay CE, Gazdar AF, Lam S, Lam WL (2012) Lung adenocarcinoma of never smokers and smokers harbor differential regions of genetic alteration and exhibit different levels of genomic instability. PLoS One 7(3), e33003. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0033003
14. Mao C, Qiu LX, Liao RY, Du FB, Ding H, Yang WC, Li J, Chen Q (2010) KRAS mutations and resistance to EGFR-TKIs treatment in patients with non-small cell lung cancer: a meta-analysis of 22 studies. Lung Cancer 69(3):272–278. doi:10.1016/j.lungcan.2009.11.020
15. Gao B, Sun Y, Zhang J, Ren Y, Fang R, Han X, Shen L, Liu XY, Pao W, Chen H, Ji H (2010) Spectrum of LKB1, EGFR, and KRAS mutations in Chinese lung adenocarcinomas. J Thorac Oncol 5(8):1130–1135. doi:10.1097/JTO.0b013e3181e05016
16. Hunt JD, Strimas A, Martin JE, Eyer M, Haddican M, Luckett BG, Ruiz B, Axelrad TW, Backes WL, Fontham ET (2002) Differences in KRAS mutation spectrum in lung cancer cases

between African Americans and Caucasians after occupational or environmental exposure to known carcinogens. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev 11(11):1405–1412
17. Riely GJ, Kris MG, Rosenbaum D, Marks J, Li A, Chitale DA, Nafa K, Riedel ER, Hsu M, Pao W, Miller VA, Ladanyi M (2008) Frequency and distinctive spectrum of KRAS mutations in never smokers with lung adenocarcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 14(18):5731–5734. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-0646
18. Dogan S, Shen R, Ang DC, Johnson ML, D'Angelo SP, Paik PK, Brzostowski EB, Riely GJ, Kris MG, Zakowski MF, Ladanyi M (2012) Molecular epidemiology of EGFR and KRAS mutations in 3,026 lung adenocarcinomas: higher susceptibility of women to smoking-related KRAS-mutant cancers. Clin Cancer Res 18(22):6169–6177. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-3265
19. Slebos RJ, Kibbelaar RE, Dalesio O, Kooistra A, Stam J, Meijer CJ, Wagenaar SS, Vanderschueren RG, van Zandwijk N, Mooi WJ et al (1990) K-ras oncogene activation as a prognostic marker in adenocarcinoma of the lung. N Engl J Med 323(9):561–565. doi:10.1056/nejm199008303230902
20. Kern JA, Slebos RJ, Top B, Rodenhuis S, Lager D, Robinson RA, Weiner D, Schwartz DA (1994) C-erbB-2 expression and codon 12 K-ras mutations both predict shortened survival for patients with pulmonary adenocarcinomas. J Clin Invest 93(2):516–520. doi:10.1172/jci117001
21. Keohavong P, DeMichele MA, Melacrinos AC, Landreneau RJ, Weyant RJ, Siegfried JM (1996) Detection of K-ras mutations in lung carcinomas: relationship to prognosis. Clin Cancer Res 2(2):411–418
22. Graziano SL, Gamble GP, Newman NB, Abbott LZ, Rooney M, Mookherjee S, Lamb ML, Kohman LJ, Poiesz BJ (1999) Prognostic significance of K-ras codon 12 mutations in patients with resected stage I and II non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 17(2):668–675
23. Lu C, Soria JC, Tang X, Xu XC, Wang L, Mao L, Lotan R, Kemp B, Bekele BN, Feng L, Hong WK, Khuri FR (2004) Prognostic factors in resected stage I non-small-cell lung cancer: a multivariate analysis of six molecular markers. J Clin Oncol 22(22):4575–4583. doi:10.1200/JCO.2004.01.091
24. Grossi F, Loprevite M, Chiaramondia M, Ceppa P, Pera C, Ratto GB, Serrano J, Ferrara GB, Costa R, Boni L, Ardizzoni A (2003) Prognostic significance of K-ras, p53, bcl-2, PCNA, CD34 in radically resected non-small cell lung cancers. Eur J Cancer 39(9):1242–1250
25. Tsao MS, Aviel-Ronen S, Ding K, Lau D, Liu N, Sakurada A, Whitehead M, Zhu CQ, Livingston R, Johnson DH, Rigas J, Seymour L, Winton T, Shepherd FA (2007) Prognostic and predictive importance of p53 and RAS for adjuvant chemotherapy in non small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 25(33):5240–5247. doi:10.1200/jco.2007.12.6953
26. Mascaux C, Iannino N, Martin B, Paesmans M, Berghmans T, Dusart M, Haller A, Lothaire P, Meert AP, Noel S, Lafitte JJ, Sculier JP (2005) The role of RAS oncogene in survival of patients with lung cancer: a systematic review of the literature with meta-analysis. Br J Cancer 92(1):131–139. doi:10.1038/sj.bjc.6602258
27. Shepherd FA, Domerg C, Hainaut P, Janne PA, Pignon JP, Graziano S, Douillard JY, Brambilla E, Le Chevalier T, Seymour L, Bourredjem A, Le Teuff G, Pirker R, Filipits M, Rosell R, Kratzke R, Bandarchi B, Ma X, Capelletti M, Soria JC, Tsao MS (2013) Pooled analysis of the prognostic and predictive effects of KRAS mutation status and KRAS mutation subtype in early-stage resected non-small-cell lung cancer in four trials of adjuvant chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 31(17):2173–2181. doi:10.1200/jco.2012.48.1390
28. Butts CA, Ding K, Seymour L, Twumasi-Ankrah P, Graham B, Gandara D, Johnson DH, Kesler KA, Green M, Vincent M, Cormier Y, Goss G, Findlay B, Johnston M, Tsao MS, Shepherd FA (2010) Randomized phase III trial of vinorelbine plus cisplatin compared with observation in completely resected stage IB and II non-small-cell lung cancer: updated survival analysis of JBR-10. J Clin Oncol 28(1):29–34. doi:10.1200/jco.2009.24.0333
29. Scoccianti C, Vesin A, Martel G, Olivier M, Brambilla E, Timsit JF, Tavecchio L, Brambilla C, Field JK, Hainaut P (2012) Prognostic value of TP53, KRAS and EGFR mutations in nonsmall celllungcancer:theEUELCcohort.EurRespirJ40(1):177–184.doi:10.1183/09031936.00097311

30. Capelletti M, Wang XF, Gu L et al. (2012) Impact of KRAS mutations on adjuvant carboplatin/paclitaxel in surgically resected stage IB NSCLC: CALGB 9633. J Clin Oncol 28 (Suppl; abstract 7008)
31. Eberhard DA, Johnson BE, Amler LC, Goddard AD, Heldens SL, Herbst RS, Ince WL, Janne PA, Januario T, Johnson DH, Klein P, Miller VA, Ostland MA, Ramies DA, Sebisanovic D, Stinson JA, Zhang YR, Seshagiri S, Hillan KJ (2005) Mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor and in KRAS are predictive and prognostic indicators in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer treated with chemotherapy alone and in combination with erlotinib. J Clin Oncol 23(25):5900–5909. doi:10.1200/jco.2005.02.857
32. Brady AK, McNeil JD, Judy B et al (2012) Survival outcome segregated by KRAS mutation status in newly diagnosed stage IV non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients (pts) treated with first-line chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 30 (Suppl; abstract 7595)
33. Levy B, Seetharama N, Richardson S et al (2012) KRAS mutations and outcomes for patients with stage IV NSCLC treated with frontline platinum/pemetrexed based chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 30 (Suppl; abstract e18139)
34. DA Levy B, Chachoua A, Seetharamu N, Richardson S, Lucido D, Legasto A, Grossbard A, Becker D (2013) KRAS mutations predict sensitivity to pemetrexed-based chemotherapy. Lung Cancer Manag 2(4):275–280
35. Hirsch FR, Varella-Garcia M, Bunn PA Jr, Franklin WA, Dziadziuszko R, Thatcher N, Chang A, Parikh P, Pereira JR, Ciuleanu T, von Pawel J, Watkins C, Flannery A, Ellison G, Donald E, Knight L, Parums D, Botwood N, Holloway B (2006) Molecular predictors of outcome with gefitinib in a phase III placebo-controlled study in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 24(31):5034–5042. doi:10.1200/jco.2006.06.3958
36. Massarelli E, Varella-Garcia M, Tang X, Xavier AC, Ozburn NC, Liu DD, Bekele BN, Herbst RS, Wistuba II (2007) KRAS mutation is an important predictor of resistance to therapy with epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors in non-small-cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 13(10):2890–2896. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-06-3043
37. Schneider CP, Heigener D, Schott-von-Romer K, Gutz S, Laack E, Digel W, Guschall WR, Franke A, Bodenstein H, Schmidtgen C, Reck M (2008) Epidermal growth factor receptor-related tumor markers and clinical outcomes with erlotinib in non-small cell lung cancer: an analysis of patients from German centers in the TRUST study. J Thorac Oncol 3(12):1446–1453. doi:10.1097/JTO.0b013e31818ddcaa
38. Zhu CQ, da Cunha SG, Ding K, Sakurada A, Cutz JC, Liu N, Zhang T, Marrano P, Whitehead M, Squire JA, Kamel-Reid S, Seymour L, Shepherd FA, Tsao MS (2008) Role of KRAS and EGFR as biomarkers of response to erlotinib in National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group Study BR.21. J Clin Oncol 26(26):4268–4275. doi:10.1200/jco.2007.14.8924
39. Douillard JY, Shepherd FA, Hirsh V, Mok T, Socinski MA, Gervais R, Liao ML, Bischoff H, Reck M, Sellers MV, Watkins CL, Speake G, Armour AA, Kim ES (2010) Molecular predictors of outcome with gefitinib and docetaxel in previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer: data from the randomized phase III INTEREST trial. J Clin Oncol 28(5):744–752. doi:10.1200/jco.2009.24.3030
40. Linardou H, Dahabreh IJ, Kanaloupiti D, Siannis F, Bafaloukos D, Kosmidis P, Papadimitriou CA, Murray S (2008) Assessment of somatic k-RAS mutations as a mechanism associated with resistance to EGFR-targeted agents: a systematic review and meta-analysis of studies in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer and metastatic colorectal cancer. Lancet Oncol 9(10):962–972. doi:10.1016/s1470-2045(08)70206-7
41. Metro G, Chiari R, Duranti S, Siggillino A, Fischer MJ, Giannarelli D, Ludovini V, Bennati C, Marcomigni L, Baldi A, Giansanti M, Minotti V, Crino L (2012) Impact of specific mutant KRAS on clinical outcome of EGFR-TKI-treated advanced non-small cell lung cancer patients with an EGFR wild type genotype. Lung cancer 78(1):81–86. doi:10.1016/j.lungcan.2012.06.005
42. Khambata-Ford S, Harbison CT, Hart LL, Awad M, Xu LA, Horak CE, Dakhil S, Hermann RC, Lynch TJ, Weber MR (2010) Analysis of potential predictive markers of cetuximab ben-

efit in BMS099, a phase III study of cetuximab and first-line taxane/carboplatin in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 28(6):918–927. doi:10.1200/jco.2009.25.2890
43. O'Byrne KJ, Gatzemeier U, Bondarenko I, Barrios C, Eschbach C, Martens UM, Hotko Y, Kortsik C, Paz-Ares L, Pereira JR, von Pawel J, Ramlau R, Roh JK, Yu CT, Stroh C, Celik I, Schueler A, Pirker R (2011) Molecular biomarkers in non-small-cell lung cancer: a retrospective analysis of data from the phase 3 FLEX study. Lancet Oncol 12(8):795–805. doi:10.1016/s1470-2045(11)70189-9
44. Appels NM, Beijnen JH, Schellens JH (2005) Development of farnesyl transferase inhibitors: a review. Oncologist 10(8):565–578. doi:10.1634/theoncologist.10-8-565
45. End DW, Smets G, Todd AV, Applegate TL, Fuery CJ, Angibaud P, Venet M, Sanz G, Poignet H, Skrzat S, Devine A, Wouters W, Bowden C (2001) Characterization of the antitumor effects of the selective farnesyl protein transferase inhibitor R115777 in vivo and in vitro. Cancer Res 61(1):131–137
46. Gunning WT, Kramer PM, Lubet RA, Steele VE, End DW, Wouters W, Pereira MA (2003) Chemoprevention of benzo(a)pyrene-induced lung tumors in mice by the farnesyltransferase inhibitor R115777. Clin Cancer Res 9(5):1927–1930
47. Adjei AA, Mauer A, Bruzek L, Marks RS, Hillman S, Geyer S, Hanson LJ, Wright JJ, Erlichman C, Kaufmann SH, Vokes EE (2003) Phase II study of the farnesyl transferase inhibitor R115777 in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 21(9):1760–1766. doi:10.1200/jco.2003.09.075
48. Riely GJ, Johnson ML, Medina C, Rizvi NA, Miller VA, Kris MG, Pietanza MC, Azzoli CG, Krug LM, Pao W, Ginsberg MS (2011) A phase II trial of Salirasib in patients with lung adenocarcinomas with KRAS mutations. J Thorac Oncol 6(8):1435–1437. doi:10.1097/JTO.0b013e318223c099
49. Takezawa K, Okamoto I, Yonesaka K, Hatashita E, Yamada Y, Fukuoka M, Nakagawa K (2009) Sorafenib inhibits non-small cell lung cancer cell growth by targeting B-RAF in KRAS wild-type cells and C-RAF in KRAS mutant cells. Cancer Res 69(16):6515–6521. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-1076
50. Dingemans AM, Mellema WW, Groen HJ, van Wijk A, Burgers SA, Kunst PW, Thunnissen E, Heideman DA, Smit EF (2013) A phase II study of sorafenib in patients with platinum-pretreated, advanced (Stage IIIb or IV) non-small cell lung cancer with a KRAS mutation. Clin Cancer Res 19(3):743–751. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-1779
51. Davies BR, Logie A, McKay JS, Martin P, Steele S, Jenkins R, Cockerill M, Cartlidge S, Smith PD (2007) AZD6244 (ARRY-142886), a potent inhibitor of mitogen-activated protein kinase/extracellular signal-regulated kinase kinase 1/2 kinases: mechanism of action in vivo, pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic relationship, and potential for combination in preclinical models. Mol Cancer Ther 6(8):2209–2219. doi:10.1158/1535-7163.mct-07-0231
52. Ji H, Wang Z, Perera SA, Li D, Liang MC, Zaghlul S, McNamara K, Chen L, Albert M, Sun Y, Al-Hashem R, Chirieac LR, Padera R, Bronson RT, Thomas RK, Garraway LA, Janne PA, Johnson BE, Chin L, Wong KK (2007) Mutations in BRAF and KRAS converge on activation of the mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway in lung cancer mouse models. Cancer Res 67(10):4933–4939. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.can-06-4592
53. Hainsworth JD, Cebotaru CL, Kanarev V, Ciuleanu TE, Damyanov D, Stella P, Ganchev H, Pover G, Morris C, Tzekova V (2010) A phase II, open-label, randomized study to assess the efficacy and safety of AZD6244 (ARRY-142886) versus pemetrexed in patients with non-small cell lung cancer who have failed one or two prior chemotherapeutic regimens. J Thorac Oncol 5(10):1630–1636. doi:10.1097/JTO.0b013e3181e8b3a3
54. Chen Z, Cheng K, Walton Z, Wang Y, Ebi H, Shimamura T, Liu Y, Tupper T, Ouyang J, Li J, Gao P, Woo MS, Xu C, Yanagita M, Altabef A, Wang S, Lee C, Nakada Y, Pena CG, Sun Y, Franchetti Y, Yao C, Saur A, Cameron MD, Nishino M, Hayes DN, Wilkerson MD, Roberts PJ, Lee CB, Bardeesy N, Butaney M, Chirieac LR, Costa DB, Jackman D, Sharpless NE, Castrillon DH, Demetri GD, Janne PA, Pandolfi PP, Cantley LC, Kung AL, Engelman JA, Wong KK (2012) A murine lung cancer co-clinical trial identifies genetic modifiers of therapeutic response. Nature 483(7391):613–617. doi:10.1038/nature10937

55. Janne PA, Shaw AT, Pereira JR, Jeannin G, Vansteenkiste J, Barrios C, Franke FA, Grinsted L, Zazulina V, Smith P, Smith I, Crino L (2013) Selumetinib plus docetaxel for KRAS-mutant advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a randomised, multicentre, placebo-controlled, phase 2 study. Lancet Oncol 14(1):38–47. doi:10.1016/s1470-2045(12)70489-8
56. Ramfidis VS, Syrigos KN, Saif MW (2013) New therapeutic strategies in the second line setting of advanced or metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. JOP 14(4):344–346. doi:10.6092/1590-8577/1650
57. Gilmartin AG, Bleam MR, Groy A, Moss KG, Minthorn EA, Kulkarni SG, Rominger CM, Erskine S, Fisher KE, Yang J, Zappacosta F, Annan R, Sutton D, Laquerre SG (2011) GSK1120212 (JTP-74057) is an inhibitor of MEK activity and activation with favorable pharmacokinetic properties for sustained in vivo pathway inhibition. Clin Cancer Res 17(5):989–1000. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-10-2200
58. Blumenschein GR, Smit EF, Planchard D et al (2013) MEK114653: a randomized, multicenter, phase II study to assess efficacy and safety of trametinib compared with docetaxel in KRKS-mutant advanced NSCLC. J Clin Oncol 31(Suppl):abstract 8029
59. Barbie DA, Tamayo P, Boehm JS, Kim SY, Moody SE, Dunn IF, Schinzel AC, Sandy P, Meylan E, Scholl C, Frohling S, Chan EM, Sos ML, Michel K, Mermel C, Silver SJ, Weir BA, Reiling JH, Sheng Q, Gupta PB, Wadlow RC, Le H, Hoersch S, Wittner BS, Ramaswamy S, Livingston DM, Sabatini DM, Meyerson M, Thomas RK, Lander ES, Mesirov JP, Root DE, Gilliland DG, Jacks T, Hahn WC (2009) Systematic RNA interference reveals that oncogenic KRAS-driven cancers require TBK1. Nature 462(7269):108–112. doi:10.1038/nature08460
60. Meylan E, Dooley AL, Feldser DM, Shen L, Turk E, Ouyang C, Jacks T (2009) Requirement for NF-kappaB signalling in a mouse model of lung adenocarcinoma. Nature 462(7269):104–107. doi:10.1038/nature08462
61. Escobar M, Velez M, Belalcazar A, Santos ES, Raez LE (2011) The role of proteasome inhibition in nonsmall cell lung cancer. J Biomed Biotechnol 2011:806506. doi:10.1155/2011/806506
62. Luo J, Emanuele MJ, Li D, Creighton CJ, Schlabach MR, Westbrook TF, Wong KK, Elledge SJ (2009) A genome-wide RNAi screen identifies multiple synthetic lethal interactions with the Ras oncogene. Cell 137(5):835–848. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2009.05.006, S0092-8674(09)00529-7 [pii]
63. Xue W, Meylan E, Oliver TG, Feldser DM, Winslow MM, Bronson R, Jacks T (2011) Response and resistance to NF-kappaB inhibitors in mouse models of lung adenocarcinoma. Cancer Discov 1(3):236–247. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.cd-11-0073
64. Yang Y, Wislez M, Fujimoto N, Prudkin L, Izzo JG, Uno F, Ji L, Hanna AE, Langley RR, Liu D, Johnson FM, Wistuba I, Kurie JM (2008) A selective small molecule inhibitor of c-Met, PHA-665752, reverses lung premalignancy induced by mutant K-ras. Mol Cancer Ther 7(4):952–960. doi:10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-07-2045
65. Sequist LV, von Pawel J, Garmey EG, Akerley WL, Brugger W, Ferrari D, Chen Y, Costa DB, Gerber DE, Orlov S, Ramlau R, Arthur S, Gorbachevsky I, Schwartz B, Schiller JH (2011) Randomized phase II study of erlotinib plus tivantinib versus erlotinib plus placebo in previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 29(24):3307–3315. doi:10.1200/jco.2010.34.0570
66. Scagliotti GV, Novello S, Schiller JH, Hirsh V, Sequist LV, Soria JC, von Pawel J, Schwartz B, Von Roemeling R, Sandler AB (2012) Rationale and design of MARQUEE: a phase III, randomized, double-blind study of tivantinib plus erlotinib versus placebo plus erlotinib in previously treated patients with locally advanced or metastatic, nonsquamous, non-small-cell lung cancer. Clin Lung Cancer 13(5):391–395. doi:10.1016/j.cllc.2012.01.003
67. Konstantinidou G, Ramadori G, Torti F, Kangasniemi K, Ramirez RE, Cai Y, Behrens C, Dellinger MT, Brekken RA, Wistuba II, Heguy A, Teruya-Feldstein J, Scaglioni PP (2013) RHOA-FAK is a required signaling axis for the maintenance of KRAS-driven lung adenocarcinomas. Cancer Discov 3(4):444–457. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0388
68. Engelman JA, Chen L, Tan X, Crosby K, Guimaraes AR, Upadhyay R, Maira M, McNamara K, Perera SA, Song Y, Chirieac LR, Kaur R, Lightbown A, Simendinger J, Li T, Padera RF, Garcia-Echeverria C, Weissleder R, Mahmood U, Cantley LC, Wong KK (2008) Effective use

of PI3K and MEK inhibitors to treat mutant Kras G12D and PIK3CA H1047R murine lung cancers. Nat Med 14(12):1351–1356. doi:10.1038/nm.1890
69. Gridelli C, Maione P, Rossi A (2008) The potential role of mTOR inhibitors in non-small cell lung cancer. Oncologist 13(2):139–147. doi:10.1634/theoncologist.2007-0171
70. Riely GJ BJ, Planchard D, Crino L, Doebele RC, Lopez L, Gettinger SN, Schumann C, Li X, McCormick Atkins B, Ebbinghaus S, Rosell R (2012) A randomized discontinuation phase II trial of ridaforolimus in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients with KRAS mutations. J Clin Oncol 30 (suppl; abstr 7531)
71. Ciocca DR, Calderwood SK (2005) Heat shock proteins in cancer: diagnostic, prognostic, predictive, and treatment implications. Cell Stress Chaperones 10(2):86–103
72. Acquaviva J, Smith DL, Sang J, Friedland JC, He S, Sequeira M, Zhang C, Wada Y, Proia DA (2012) Targeting KRAS-mutant non-small cell lung cancer with the Hsp90 inhibitor ganetespib. Mol Cancer Ther 11(12):2633–2643. doi:10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-12-0615
73. Wong K KM, Goldman JW, et al (2011) An open-label phase II study of the Hsp90 inhibitor ganetespib (STA-9090) as monotherapy in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). J Clin Oncol 29 (Suppl; abstract 7500)

Anaplastic Lymphoma Kinase (ALK) Signaling in Lung Cancer

Sai-Hong Ignatius Ou and Keisuke Shirai

Abstract Chromosomal rearrangement in the anaplastic lymphoma kinase (*ALK*) gene was identified as an oncogenic driver in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) in 2007. A multi-targeted ALK/ROS1/MET inhibitor, crizotinib, targeting this activated tyrosine kinase has led to significant clinical benefit including tumor shrinkage and prolonged survival without disease progression and has been approved by US FDA since 2011 for the treatment of advanced *ALK*-rearranged NSCLC (Ou et al. Oncologist 17:1351–1375, 2012). Knowledge gained from treating *ALK-rearranged* NSCLC patients including the presenting clinicopathologic characteristics, methods of detecting *ALK*-rearranged NSCLC, pattern of relapse and acquired resistance mechanisms while on crizotinib, and the clinical activities of more potent ALK inhibitors has led us to a detailed and ever expanding knowledge of the ALK signaling pathway in lung cancer but also raising many more questions that remained to be answered in the future. This book chapter will provide a concise summary of the importance of ALK signaling pathway in lung cancer. Understanding the ALK signaling pathway in lung cancer will likely provide the roadmap to the management of major epithelial malignancies driven by receptor tyrosine kinase rearrangement.

Keywords Anaplastic lymphoma kinase rearrangement non-small cell lung cancer • Receptor tyrosine kinase fusion positive tumors • Crizotinib • ALK breakapart FISH • Chromosomal rearrangement

S.-H.I. Ou (✉)
Chao Family Comprehensive Cancer Center, Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology-Oncology, University of California Irvine School of Medicine, 101 City Drive, Bldg 56, RT81, Rm 241, Orange, CA 92868, USA
e-mail: Ignatius.ou@uci.edu

K. Shirai
MUSC Hollings Cancer Center, Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology-Oncology, Medical University of South Carolina College of Medicine, Charleston, SC 29403, USA

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_9

Molecular Basis of *ALK* Rearrangement in NSCLC

Chromosomal rearrangements have long been recognized as oncogenic drivers in hematological malignancies. Although it has been predicted in early 2000 that chromosomal rearrangements will be found in solid malignancies there was no reports of such rearrangements well into the mid 2000s [1]. This all changed in 2007 when two research groups independently discovered the chromosomal rearrangement in the anaplastic lymphoma kinase gene in non-small cell lung cancer [2, 3]. These two initial reports revealed in NSCLC there was both intrachromosomal deletion and inversion of the echinoderm microtubule associated protein like 4 (EML4) gene to ALK on chromosomal 2 generating an EML4-ALK fusion protein containing the N-terminal portion of EML4 protein that retains the "coil-coiled" dimerization and the C-terminal portion of ALK which contains the kinase domain that is present in the cytoplasm and constitutively active [2]. Further elegant experiments demonstrated that transgenic mice expressing EML4-ALK in the lung results in multiple adenocarcinomas in the lung [4]. ALK is one of 58 human receptor tyrosine kinase receptors (RTKs) [5] and is the namesake rearrangement in anaplastic large cell lymphoma [6]. Although there are multiple pathways could be activated by the constitutively EML4-ALK [7], the common sequala of the ALK activation is the increase in survivin level and a decrease in pro-apoptotic BIM protein allowing lung cancer cells driven by ALK activation to escape apoptosis [8]. Since 2007, several different breakpoints in the *EML4* have been identified that have been fused to the *ALK* generating several EML4-ALK fusion variants [9]. Currently, there are three main EML4-ALK fusion variants. The most common variant among EML4-ALK fusion is variant 1 (54.5 %) followed by variant 3 (34 %) and variant 2 (10 %) [9, 10]. Additionally, other fusion partners to ALK kinase domain have been identified in NSCLC including TFG (Trk-fused gene), KIF5B (kinesin family member 5), and KLC1 (kinesin light chain 1) [9]. As recently as in 2014 new fusion partner, HIP1 (Huntington interacting protein 1), to ALK in NSCLC is continuously being discovered [11, 12]. Indeed any protein that contains a "coil-coiled" domain that can serve as a dimerization domain and can localize to the cytoplasm can potentially act as a fusion partner to ALK. Hence it is likely more fusion partners to ALK in lung cancer will be identified in the future. Hence *ALK*-rearranged NSCLC is a molecularly heterogeneous subset of lung cancer. In vitro experiments have shown that there are potential differential responses among the various EML4-ALK fusion variants to various ALK inhibitors [13]. Therefore is reasonable to hypothesize that these various ALK fusion variants will have subtle but different clinicopathologic characteristics and likely differential response to ALK inhibitors. Additionally activation of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutations have been identified in *ALK-rearranged* lung cancer; however, whether activation *EGFR* mutations and/or *ALK* rearrangement is the main oncogenic driver remained to be determined [9].

Clinicopathologic Presentations of *ALK*-Rearranged Lung Cancer

Despite being a molecularly heterogeneous disease, several general patterns can be ascribed to *ALK*-rearranged NSCLC. First, the median age of diagnosis of *ALK-rearranged* NSCLC is in the early to mid 50s which is about 15 years younger than the typical age of diagnosis of lung cancer in the US [14–16]. However the age of diagnosis can range from the early twenties to the eighties subtly underlining this is indeed a molecularly heterogeneous disease [15, 16]. Second, the vast majority (>95 %) of the *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer is adenocarcinoma [15, 16] with a portion of these adenocarcinoma also had signet ring features although signet ring features is not pathognomonic for *ALK* rearrangement [14, 17]. However, case reports have shown that ALK rearrangement has also been found in squamous cell carcinoma [11, 12, 18]. Interestingly, a recent report has shown that *EML4-ALK* fusion transcript is found in small cell lung cancer [19]. Thus as we broaden our screening of *ALK* rearrangement in all histologies of lung cancer, we may gain further knowledge about *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer. Third, similar to lung cancer driven by activating *EGFR* mutations, between two-thirds to three quarters of *ALK-rearranged* lung cancer patients were never-smokers (defined as <100 cigarettes lifetime) [20]. Therefore, smoking status should not be used as a clinical criterion to determine whether to screen for *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer. Fourth, unlike *EGFR* mutated lung cancer there does not seem to be a propensity for *ALK-rearranged* lung cancer to be more common in Asian patients although whether a specific variant of EML4-ALK is more prevalent among a certain racial/ethnic group remains to be determined [9]. Fifth, in terms of tumor burden and sites of metastasis at the time of initial presentation, there seems to be some differences between *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer and *EGFR* mutated lung cancer [21]. One particular interests among clinical oncologists treating *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer is whether there is an increase incidence of brain metastasis. This question arises from the observation that close to half of *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer patients who progressed on crizotinib had brain relapses. It does not seem that patients with *ALK-rearranged* lung cancer inherently presents with higher incidence of brain metastasis at the time of diagnosis [21].

Biology of *ALK*-Rearranged Lung Cancer

Our aggregate understanding of the biology of *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer come from differential responses *ALK*-rearranged lung cancers to various chemotherapy agents, the diagnostics methods used to identify *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer patients, patterns of relapse on crizotinib, acquired resistances during crizotinib treatment, and the clinical activity of more potent ALK inhibitors in clinical development.

A randomized trial (PROFILE1007) comparing crizotinib to single chemotherapy agent (docetaxel or pemetrexed) as second line treatment *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer have clearly demonstrated that crizotinib conferred statistically significant progression-free survival (PFS) [22]. However, the response rate of *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer patients treated with pemetrexed was much higher than those treated with docetaxel [22]. This observation is consistent with case series that reported ALK-rearranged lung cancer patients had a higher response rate to pemetrexed [23–26] likely due to a lower level of thymidylate synthase (TS) [26], which is a target of pemetrexed, in the *ALK*-rearranged tumor. It has been postulated that the aberrant activation of ALK lead to repressed transcription of the TS gene.

The current FDA approved companion diagnostic test which was approved simultaneously with the approval of crizotinib in August, 2011 was the Abbott Vysis breakapart fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) assay [9, 27]. However FISH is expensive, labor intensive, and requires certain technical competence to interpret the FISH signals [9]. Since 2011, it is becoming clear that immunohistochemistry (IHC) is a equally effective but much cheaper way to detect *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer [28]. ALK IHC test using a highly sensitive antibody D5F3 can now be automated taking the observer variability out of the testing component [29]. ALK protein is not expressed in normal tissues and thus any aberrant ALK expression represents rearrangement in *ALK*. IHC has been used to detect *ALK* rearrangement in ALCL for many years using the ALK-1 antibody from Daiko. However, the promoter of EML4 is less active than the promoter for nucleophosmin that is fused to ALK in ALCL hence ALK-1 from Daiko is not a sensitive antibody for detecting *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer [30]. Reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) [10] and target deep sequencing [31] have also been used to detect *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer. One of the major advantages of the sequencing approach is that the exact fusion variant is known [31] and that any unique clinicopathologic characteristics associated with each ALK fusion variant may be identified. Finally there are conflicting data on the prognostic significance of *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer ranging the wide spectrum as a poor prognostic factor [32, 33] to no significance [34] to being a favorable prognostic factor [35]. In the future when next generation sequencing is in wide use then the biology of each unique ALK fusion will be even better identified and the prognostic significance of *ALK* rearrangement can be answered also. It is now believed that most of the *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer reminds dependent on ALK signaling for its pathogenesis as a majority of *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer patients continued to derive clinical benefit with continual ALK inhibition with an overall survival close to 30 months [36]. Hence *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer is generally a favorable prognostic factor since currently there are several potent ALK inhibitors in clinical development and the motto of precision cancer medicine of “the right drug for the right disease” did certainly prolong life [34].

Treatment of *ALK*-Rearranged Lung Cancer

The discovery of *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer would have been a historical academic footnote for awhile had it not been the existence of a phase I trial of crizotinib, a multi-targeted MET/ALK/ROS1 inhibitor [15, 16]. Crizotinib was initially being developed as a MET inhibitor [37] but its anti-ALK activity was known [38]. The discovery of a RTK rearrangement in a common epithelial malignancy is unexpected but the crizotinib phase I investigators and Pfizer were able to modify the protocol to accommodate this newly discovery cohort of molecularly defined patients. Within 2 years crizotinib was able to show impressive anti-tumor activity with overall response rate of approximately 60 % and progression-free survival of approximately 9 months essentially independent of the line of therapy [15, 16]. Based on the expanded phase I and a global phase 2 study of crizotinib received US FDA approval on August 26, 2011 for the treatment of advanced *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer [9]. Subsequently crizotinib has been demonstrated to be superior to chemotherapy in first-line (Pfizer Press release, March 25, 2014) or second-line treatment of *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer [22] in terms of statistically significant improved progress-free survival.

Invariably, these patients develop disease progression while on crizotinib. Many of these patients are likely to be still dependent on ALK signaling as they can benefit from continuation of crizotinib beyond treatment especially if the new and/or progressing metastatic site can be controlled by loco-ablative therapy [36, 39]. Recent retrospective analysis of data of crizotinib trials suggested progression free survival from the date of progression among patients who continued crizotinib beyond progressive disease (CBPD) was 16.4 months comparing to 3.9 months who discontinued crizotinib at progression (Hazard ratio [HR] 0.27, 95 % confidence interval [CI]: 0.17–0.42; $p<0.0001$) [36] and an overall survival of 29.6 months among CBPD patients comparing to an overall survival of 10.8 months among patients who discontinued crizotinib on progression (HR 0.30, 95 % CI: 0.19–0.46; $p<0.0001$) [36]. Furthermore the continual dependence of ALK signaling was the phenomenon of "disease flare" where there is rapid tumor progression when crizotinib is discontinued after the patient has progressed on crizotinib [40]. We can generally view there are two major mechanisms that result in disease progression on crizotinib. First close to 50 % of patients on crizotinib will develop progression in the brain (new or existing) likely indicating a pharmacodynamics failure of crizotinib to reach adequate therapeutic level in the central nervous system (CNS) [41]. Second the *ALK* gene acquired secondary resistance mutations to crizotinib including gatekeeper mutation (L1196M) and solvent front mutations (G1202R) [31, 42–46]. There are other resistance mechanisms reported such as activating of other by-pass signaling pathway such as EGFR [46] or the loss of ALK dependence altogether [43]. There are now several more potent ALK inhibitors in clinical development (ceritinib, alectinib, AP26113, ASP3026, X396, TSR-011, PF0663922, RXDX101) [47]. Among these ALK inhibitors, alectinib [48, 49] and ceritinib [50] are the farthest along in clinic development where phase I results of both compounds

have been published or presented and global phase 2 trial of both compounds in crizotinib-resistant patients have been completed. In general most of the ALK inhibitors can overcome most of the acquired resistance mutations except the solvent-front mutation G1202R [31, 51]. Thus an ideal ALK inhibitor for the treatment of *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer should have two major properties: the ability to penetrate CNS and have clinical activity in existing brain metastasis and the ability to overcome secondary acquired *ALK* mutations especially the solvent front mutation G1202R. However there are evidence both in vitro and from patient series that these ALK inhibitors have differential sensitivity to the various secondarily acquired mutation [13, 31, 52]. Thus rebiopsying crizotinib resistant tumor to try to understand exactly the resistance mechanism(s) will be necessary to tailor the treatment and serve as a paradigm for precision cancer medicine. Crizotinib and other ALK inhibitors in clinical development have put *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer in the parlance of precision oncology medicine. We also gained insight into the biology of *ALK*-rearranged lung cancer when we understand the mechanism of resistance to these inhibitors.

Future Perspective

One of the most commonly asked questions is what cause(s) *ALK* rearrangement in lung cancer. While no one has generated specific scientific data that can answer this one particular question, one can speculate knowing that there are RTK rearrangements are found in other common solid epithelial malignancies and the same fusion partners are found in different RTK [52], there may be chromosomal breakpoints in the cancer genome that is susceptible for intra- and interchromosomal rearrangement during DNA replication. Nevertheless the exact triggering event still eludes us. *ALK* rearrangement has been found in colon, breast, [52] and even thyroid cancer where one thyroid cancer patient with *EML4-ALK* rearrangement has responded to crizotinib [53]. Thus ALK signaling in lung cancer serves as a paradigm for future understanding of ALK signaling in other common epithelial malignancies and in broader perspective RTK rearrangement in epithelial malignancies [52].

References

1. Mitelman F, Johansson B, Mertens F (2004) Fusion genes and rearranged genes as a linear function of chromosome aberrations in cancer. Nat Genet 36:331–334
2. Soda M, Choi YL, Enomoto M et al (2007) Identification of the transforming EML4-ALK fusion gene in non-small-cell lung cancer. Nature 448:561–566
3. Rikova K, Guo A, Zeng Q et al (2007) Global survey of phosphotyrosine signaling identifies oncogenic kinases in lung cancer. Cell 131:1190–1203
4. Soda M, Takada S, Takeuchi K et al (2008) A mouse model for EML4-ALK-positive lung cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:19893–19897

5. Blume-Jensen P, Hunter T (2001) Oncogenic kinase signalling. Nature 411:355–365
6. Morris SW, Kirstein MN, Valentine MB et al (1994) Fusion of a kinase gene, ALK, to a nucleolar protein gene, NPM, in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Science 263:1281–1284
7. Chiarle R, Voena C, Ambrogio C et al (2008) The anaplastic lymphoma kinase in the pathogenesis of cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 8:11–23
8. Takezawa K, Okamoto I, Nishio K et al (2011) Role of ERK-BIM and STAT3-survivin signaling pathways in ALK inhibitor-induced apoptosis in EML4-ALK-positive lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 17:2140–2148
9. Ou SH, Bartlett CH, Mino-Kenudson M et al (2012) Crizotinib for the treatment of *ALK*- rearranged non-small cell lung cancer: a success story to usher in the second decade of molecular targeted therapy in oncology. Oncologist 17:1351–1375
10. Li T, Maus MK, Desai SJ et al (2014) Large-scale screening and molecular characterization of EML4-ALK fusion variants in archival non-small-cell lung cancer tumor specimens using quantitative reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction assays. J Thorac Oncol 9:18–25
11. Fang DD, Zhang B, Gu Q et al (2014) HIP1-ALK, a novel ALK fusion variant that responds to crizotinib. J Thorac Oncol 9:285–294
12. Hong M, Kim RN, Song JY et al (2014) HIP1-ALK, a novel fusion protein identified in lung adenocarcinoma. J Thorac Oncol 9:419–422
13. Heuckmann JM, Balke-Want H, Malchers F et al (2012) Differential protein stability and ALK inhibitor sensitivity of EML4-ALK fusion variants. Clin Cancer Res 18:4682–4690
14. Shaw AT, Yeap BY, Mino-Kenudson M et al (2009) Clinical features and outcome of patients with non-small-cell lung cancer who harbor EML4-ALK. J Clin Oncol 27:4247–4253
15. Kwak EL, Bang YJ, Camidge DR et al (2010) Anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibition in non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 363:1693–1703
16. Camidge DR, Bang YJ, Kwak EL et al (2012) Activity and safety of crizotinib in patients with ALK-positive non-small-cell lung cancer: updated results from a phase 1 study. Lancet Oncol 13:1011–1019
17. Yoshida A, Tsuta K, Nakamura H et al (2011) Comprehensive histologic analysis of ALK-rearranged lung carcinomas. Am J Surg Pathol 35:1226–1234
18. Klempner SJ, Cohen DW, Costa DB (2011) ALK translocation in non-small cell lung cancer with adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma markers. J Thorac Oncol 6:1439–1440
19. Toyokawa G, Takenoyama M, Taguchi K et al (2013) An extremely rare case of small-cell lung cancer harboring variant 2 of the EML4-ALK fusion gene. Lung Cancer 81:487–490
20. Ou SH (2013) Lung cancer in never-smokers. Does smoking history matter in the era of molecular diagnostics and targeted therapy? J Clin Pathol 66:839–846
21. Doebele RC, Lu X, Sumey C et al (2012) Oncogene status predicts patterns of metastatic spread in treatment-naive nonsmall cell lung cancer. Cancer 118:4502–4511
22. Shaw AT, Kim DW, Nakagawa K et al (2013) Crizotinib versus chemotherapy in advanced ALK- positive lung cancer. N Engl J Med 368:2385–2394
23. Camidge DR, Kono SA, Lu X et al (2011) Anaplastic lymphoma kinase gene rearrangements in non-small cell lung cancer are associated with prolonged progression-free survival on pemetrexed. J Thorac Oncol 6:774–780
24. Shaw AT, Varghese AM, Solomon BJ et al (2013) Pemetrexed-based chemotherapy in patients with advanced, ALK-positive non-small cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 24:59–66
25. Berge EM, Lu X, Maxson D, Barón AE et al (2013) Clinical benefit from pemetrexed before and after crizotinib exposure and from crizotinib before and after pemetrexed exposure in patients with anaplastic lymphoma kinase-positive non-small-cell lung cancer. Clin Lung Cancer 14:636–643
26. Lee JO, Kim TM, Lee SH et al (2011) Anaplastic lymphoma kinase translocation: a predictive biomarker of pemetrexed in patients with non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 6:1474–1480
27. Ou SHI, Soo RA, Kubo A et al (2014) Will the requirement by the US FDA to simultaneously co- develop companion diagnostics (CDx) delay the approval of receptor tyrosine kinase

inhibitors for RTK-rearranged (ROS1-, RET-, AXL-, PDGFR-α-, NTRK1-) non-small cell lung cancer globally? Front Oncol. doi:10.3389/fonc.2014.00058
28. Paik JH, Choe G, Kim H et al (2011) Screening of anaplastic lymphoma kinase rearrangement by immunohistochemistry in non-small cell lung cancer: correlation with fluorescence in situ hybridization. J Thorac Oncol 6:466–472
29. Ying J, Guo L, Qiu T et al (2013) Diagnostic value of a novel fully automated immunochemistry assay for detection of *ALK* rearrangement in primary lung adenocarcinoma. Ann Oncol 24:2589–2593
30. Mino-Kenudson M, Chirieac LR, Law K et al (2010) A novel, highly sensitive antibody allows for the routine detection of ALK-rearranged lung adenocarcinomas by standard immunohistochemistry. Clin Cancer Res 16:1561–1571
31. Ou SH, Azada M, Hsiang D et al (2014) Next-generation sequencing reveals a novel NSCLC ALK F1174V mutation and confirms ALK G1202R mutation confers high-level resistance to alectinib (CH5424802/RO5424802) in ALK-rearranged NSCLC patients who progressed on crizotinib. J Thorac Oncol 9:549–553
32. Kim HR, Shim HS, Chung JH et al (2012) Distinct clinical features and outcomes in never-smokers with nonsmall cell lung cancer who harbor EGFR or KRAS mutations or ALK rearrangement. Cancer 118:729–739
33. Yang P, Kulig K, Boland JM et al (2012) Worse disease-free survival in never-smokers with ALK+ lung adenocarcinoma. J Thorac Oncol 7:90–97
34. Shaw AT, Yeap BY, Solomon BJ et al (2011) Effect of crizotinib on overall survival in advanced NSCLC harboring anaplastic lymphoma kinase gene rearrangement: a retrospective analysis. Lancet Oncol 11:1004–1012
35. Takeuchi K, Soda M, Togashi Y et al (2012) RET, ROS1 and ALK fusions in lung cancer. Nat Med 18:378–381
36. Ou SH, Janne PA, Bartlett CH et al (2014) Clinical benefit of continuing ALK inhibition with crizotinib beyond initial disease progression in patients with advanced ALK-positive NSCLC. Ann Oncol 25:415–422
37. Zou HY, Li Q, Lee JH et al (2007) An orally available small-molecule inhibitor of c-Met, PF-2341066, exhibits cytoreductive antitumor efficacy through antiproliferative and antiangiogenic mechanisms. Cancer Res 67:4408–4417
38. Christensen JG, Zou HY, Arango ME et al (2007) Cytoreductive antitumor activity of PF-2341066, a novel inhibitor of anaplastic lymphoma kinase and c-Met, in experimental models of anaplastic large-cell lymphoma. Mol Cancer Ther 6:3314–3322
39. Gan GN, Weickhardt AJ, Scheier B et al (2014) Stereotactic radiation therapy can safely and durably control sites of extra-central nervous system oligoprogressive disease in anaplastic lymphoma kinase-positive lung cancer patients receiving crizotinib. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 88:892–898
40. Pop O, Pirvu A, Toffart AC et al (2012) Disease flare after treatment discontinuation in a patient with EML4-ALK lung cancer and acquired resistance to crizotinib. J Thorac Oncol 7:e1–e2
41. Costa DB, Kobayashi S, Pandya SS et al (2011) CSF concentration of the anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibitor crizotinib. J Clin Oncol 29:e443–e445
42. Choi YL, Soda M, Yamashita Y et al (2010) EML4-ALK mutations in lung cancer that confer resistance to ALK inhibitors. N Engl J Med 363:1734–1739
43. Doebele RC, Pilling AB, Aisner DL et al (2012) Mechanisms of resistance to crizotinib in patients with ALK gene rearranged non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 18:1472–1482
44. Katayama R, Shaw AT, Khan TM et al (2012) Mechanisms of acquired crizotinib resistance in ALK-rearranged lung cancers. Sci Transl Med 4:120ra17
45. Lovly CM, Pao W (2012) Escaping ALK inhibition: mechanisms of and strategies to overcome resistance. Sci Transl Med 4:120ps2
46. Sasaki T, Koivunen J, Ogino A et al (2011) A novel ALK secondary mutation and EGFR signaling cause resistance to ALK kinase inhibitors. Cancer Res 71:6051–6060

47. Sasaki T, Janne PA (2011) New strategies for treatment of ALK rearranged non-small cell lung cancers. Clin Cancer Res 17:7213–7218
48. Seto T, Kiura K, Nishio M et al (2013) CH5424802 (RO5424802) for patients with ALK- rearranged advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (AF-001JP study): a single-arm, open- label, phase 1–2 study. Lancet Oncol 14:590–598
49. Ou S, Gadgeel S, Chiappori A et al (2013) Safety and efficacy analysis of RO5424802/CH5424802 in anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK)-positive non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients who have failed crizotinib in a dose-finding phase I study (AF-002JG, NCT01588028). Eur J Cancer 49(2):LBA44
50. Shaw AT, Kim DW, Mehra R et al (2014) Ceritinib in ALK-rearranged non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 370:1189–1197
51. Friboulet L, Li N, Katayama R et al (2014) The ALK inhibitor ceritinib overcomes crizotinib resistance in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Discov 4:662–673
52. Shaw AT, Hsu PP, Awad MM et al (2013) Tyrosine kinase gene rearrangements in epithelial malignancies. Nat Rev Cancer 13:772–787
53. Godbert Y, Henriques de Figueiredo B, Bonichon F et al. (2014) Remarkable response to crizotinib in woman with anaplastic lymphoma kinase-rearranged anaplastic thyroid carcinoma. J Clin Oncol. 2015 Jul 10;33(20):e84–7

Chemotherapy Resistance in Lung Cancer

Eric S. Kim

Abstract Despite a growing interest in development of non-cytotoxic targeted agents, systemic chemotherapy is still the mainstay of treatment for both non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) and small cell lung cancer (SCLC). However, chemotherapy resistance limits our ability to effectively treat advanced lung cancer. Some lung tumors are intrinsically resistant to chemotherapy, and in virtually all cases, even the initial responders rapidly develop acquired resistance. While targeting histology could result in enhanced tumor sensitivity to a particular chemotherapeutic agent, better understanding of molecular determinants of chemotherapy sensitivity/resistance would be critically important. Development of predictive biomarkers to personalize chemotherapeutic agents and combining novel agents targeting specific resistance pathways with standard chemotherapy could be some promising strategies to overcome chemotherapy resistance in lung cancer. In this chapter, we will discuss some key mechanisms of resistance for commonly used chemotherapeutic agents in lung cancer.

Keywords Chemotherapy resistance • Drug resistance • Lung cancer • Non-small cell lung cancer • Small cell lung cancer • Multidrug resistance

Platinum Drugs

Despite such a popularity of targeted agents across various solid tumors, targeted agents have rarely if at all cured any metastatic solid tumors. However, the truth is that platinum-based chemotherapy, also the main treatment regimen for advanced lung cancer, has cured many patients with metastatic testicular cancer [1]. There is a lack of understanding as to why testicular cancer cells but not other types of solid tumors such as lung cancer are exquisitely sensitive to platinum drugs.

E.S. Kim (✉)
Department of Medicine, James P. Wilmot Cancer Center, University of Rochester, Rochester, NY, USA
e-mail: eric_kim@urmc.rochester.edu

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_10

Despite the multifactorial nature of platinum resistance, reduced intracellular drug accumulation is one of the most consistently identified features of cisplatin-resistant cell lines [2, 3]. Reduced uptake of cisplatin has also been demonstrated in resistant NSCLC cells [4–6]. To clinically validate reduced drug accumulation as a significant mechanism of platinum resistance in NSCLC, a recent study established correlation between intratumoral tissue platinum concentrations and tumor response in NSCLC [7]. A significant relationship between tissue platinum concentrations and percent reduction in tumor size was demonstrated. The same relationship was seen individually in cisplatin and carboplatin groups. Patients with lower platinum concentration also had shorter time to recurrence, progression-free survival (PFS) and overall survival (OS) [7]. Furthermore, there was no significant impact of potential variables such as the type of platinum compound, number of cycles, cumulative dose and time lapse from last chemotherapy, which strongly suggests that certain resistance-inducing transport factors, are likely modulating intratumoral platinum accumulation.

CTR1 regulates uptake of copper which is a vital micronutrient for eukaryotic development and plays a significant role in platinum uptake. Deletion of the *Ctr1* gene in yeast and murine cells resulted in reduced accumulation of cisplatin and increased cisplatin resistance [8]. Conversely, enhanced uptake of carboplatin and oxaliplatin was seen when *Ctr1* gene was transfected into small cell lung cancer cell lines, supporting the importance of CTR1 in uptake of various platinum drugs [9]. In NSCLC patients, low expression of CTR1 was associated with poor prognosis in response to platinum-based therapy [10]. Given promising preclinical studies, there is a great potential for developing CTR1 into a therapeutic target. CTR1 and thus platinum uptake could potentially be manipulated using copper chelating drugs [11], the DNA demethylating agent decitabine [12] and a novel platinum-complex that does not rely on CTR1 for uptake.

Na+, K+ ATPase is also associated with increased intracellular accumulation and efficacy of cisplatin in lung cancer cell lines [13–15]. Inhibition of thromboxane A2 which antagonizes Na+, K+ ATPase increased cisplatin uptake and cytotoxicity by upregulating interleukin-1β-converting enzyme which is reduced in some platinum-resistant NSCLC cells [15, 16]. Furthermore, the glucose metabolite sorbitol decreased cisplatin cytotoxicity, Na+, K+−ATPase activity, and cisplatin uptake, suggesting a possible mechanism for cisplatin resistance in poorly controlled diabetes [17]. Tumor retention of Thallium-201 (T201) on SPECT scanning may reflect Na+, K+ ATPase activity. In a study involving SCLC patients who were treated with cisplatin-based chemotherapy, tumor response was associated with pre-treatment T201 retention [18], but this was not reproducible in an independent study in which patients with SCLC received a variety of chemotherapeutic agents [19]. Therefore, the role of T201 scanning in lung cancer is unclear.

There are also platinum export transporters such as the copper transporter ATP7B. Even though ATP7B mRNA and IHC expression significantly correlated with cisplatin resistance in NSCLC xenografts [20], ATP7B expression determined by IHC in clinical specimens did not correlate with PFS or OS following platinum-based chemotherapy [10]. It remains uncertain if ATP7B plays a role in

chemotherapy resistance in lung cancer. Breast cancer resistance protein (BCRP) is another drug efflux transporter (also known as ABCG2) that may be implicated in platinum resistance. Tumor IHC expression of BCRP was significantly associated with lack of tumor response and shortened survival in NSCLC patients undergoing platinum-based chemotherapy [21–23]. Furthermore, blood BCRP concentrations were significantly higher in chemo-resistant patients than in chemo-sensitive patients [24]. These findings support a possible role for BCRP in lung cancer chemotherapy resistance.

Drug detoxification may also contribute to intratumoral platinum concentration and platinum resistance in lung cancer. Glutathione (GSH) may bind cisplatin, thereby decreasing formation of platinum-DNA adducts. It may also contribute to increased repair of platinum-DNA adducts [25]. Several studies involving NSCLC and SCLC cell lines suggest that increase in GSH content was associated with decreased platinum-DNA binding [4, 26, 27] and intracellular platinum accumulation [28] which corresponded to increase in cisplatin resistance [4, 5, 26–32]. Conversely, factors that reduced cellular GSH increased sensitivity to cisplatin [4, 33] (Fig. 1 and Table 1).

Once platinum drugs enter the cell, they must form DNA adducts, which induce a cascade of signaling transduction pathways that lead to activation of p53-dependent and p53-independent cell death [34]. In NSCLC patients who were treated with concurrent cisplatin/XRT, low cisplatin-DNA-adduct staining in buccal cells was associated with worse survival [35]. While DNA adduct level is a

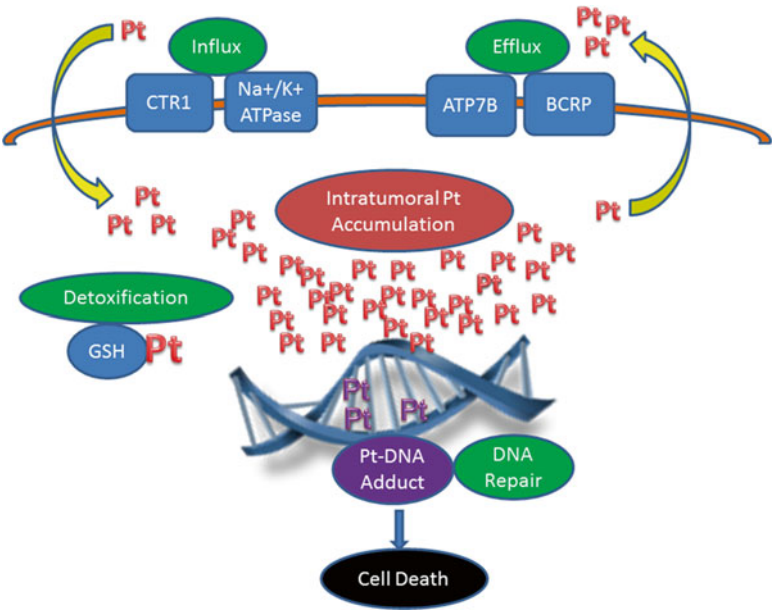


Fig. 1 A simplified overview of platinum resistance in lung cancer. *Pt* platinum, *CTR1* copper transporter 1, *GSH* glutathione, *BCRP* breast cancer resistance protein

Table 1 Tumor factors contributing to resistance to commonly used chemotherapeutic agents in lung cancer

Agents	Factors
Platinum	Drug accumulation Copper transporters (CTR1, ATP7B) Na+, K+ ATPase Breast cancer resistance protein Drug detoxification Glutathione DNA repair Nucleotide excision repair (ERCC1) Metallothioneins
Taxanes	Class III β-tubulin Expression levels Mutations Hypoxia inducible factor Histone deacetylase 6 Mitotic spindle checkpoint
Etoposide	Drug uptake Topoisomerase II alpha Rad51 Mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs) ERK1, ERK2 Metallothionein Non-homologous end-joining repair
Gemcitabine	Human equilibrative nucleoside transporter 1 (hENT-1) Ribonucleotide reductase M1 and M2 (RRM1 and RRM2)
Vinorelbine	Polo-like kinases (PLKs) Class III β-tubulin Delta2 α-tubulin RLIP76 Stathmin (oncoprotein 18) Mitotic spindle checkpoint
Pemetrexed	Drug transport Proton-coupled folate receptor Folate receptor-α

[a]There are also multidrug resistance proteins such as the multidrug resistance protein (MRP) family or the multidrug resistance (MDR) P-glycoprotein family which could promote resistance to multiple chemotherapeutic agents

critical determinant of cisplatin cytotoxicity, increased DNA adduct repair decreases the apoptotic process [34]. Nucleotide excision repair is the major pathway for platinum adduct repair. The excision repair cross-complementation group 1 (ERCC1) protein is involved in nucleotide excision repair pathway and its expression correlated with cisplatin resistance in NSCLC [36]. There was a major interest in further developing ERCC1 as a potential biomarker for platinum sensitivity in NSCLC when Olaussen and colleagues demonstrated that ERCC1-negative NSCLC specimens determined by IHC correlated with significantly

longer OS following adjuvant chemotherapy [37]. There have been several studies with conflicting results since then. For example, a phase III trial designed to determine the influence of ERCC1 mRNA on tumor response following chemotherapy failed to show a correlation between ERCC1 expression and treatment response [38]. Furthermore, Friboulet and colleagues failed to validate the predictive effect of ERCC1 protein expression by IHC in two independent phase III trials (the National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group JBR.10 and the Cancer and Leukemia Group B 9633 trial from the Lung Adjuvant Cisplatin Evaluation Biology project) [39]. The authors concluded that currently available ERCC1 antibodies do not have adequate discrimination for clinical decision making regarding cisplatin-containing treatment regimens in patients with NSCLC, which requires the specific detection of the unique functional isoform of ERCC1 [39]. Furthermore, the results from the randomized international phase III trial of ERCC1 and RRM1 expression-based chemotherapy versus gemcitabine/carboplatin demonstrated no significant difference between the experimental arm and the control arm in PFS or OS [40]. Therefore, utility of ERCC1 as a predictive marker for platinum-based chemotherapy appears to be limited at this moment.

Metallothioneins are low molecular weight proteins that are involved in zinc homeostasis and may also be involved in chemotherapy binding and detoxification. Increased metallothionein expression was noted in some cisplatin-resistant NSCLC [5] and SCLC [41] cell lines. In patients with SCLC receiving cisplatin-based therapy, metallothionein expression determined by IHC correlated significantly with short survival [42].

Taxanes

The taxanes such as paclitaxel and docetaxel stabilize microtubules inhibiting the disassembly process, resulting in cell death due to large numbers of spurious asters forming throughout the cytoplasm [43]. Taxane-resistant NSCLC cell lines had significantly increased expression of class III β-tubulin [44–46]. Furthermore, the expression level of endogenous hypoxia inducible factor (HIF)-1 alpha appears to modulate taxane sensitivity in vitro by influencing the conformation and dynamics of microtubules [47]. In NSCLC cell lines that are resistant to taxanes, there was increased microtubule instability [48]. In addition, histone deacetylase 6 (HDAC6) decreased microtubule stability and antagonized the effect of paclitaxel on NSCLC cells. On the other hand, the farnesyl transferase inhibitor lonafarnib blocked the effect of HDAC6 on tubulin and was synergistic with paclitaxel [49]. The specimens from NSCLC patients demonstrated that a majority of the tumor samples expressed class II and class III tubulins, although the percentage of positive cells varied significantly among tumors [50]. NSCLC patients whose tumors expressed low levels of class III beta-tubulin isotype had a better response rate, longer PFS, and OS. However, this variable was not predictive in patients receiving regimens without tubulin-binding agents [51]. A multivariate analysis demonstrated that low-level

class III beta-tubulin expression was independently associated with PFS and OS, suggesting that the expression levels of class III beta-tubulin in tumor cells are predictive of response to therapy and patient outcome in patients with NSCLC receiving paclitaxel-based chemotherapy [51].

In addition to the expression levels of beta-tubulin, the mutations in beta-tubulin gene may also predict response to the taxanes. Beta-tubulin mutations in exons 1 or 4 were found in 33 % of NSCLC patients, and none of these patients had an objective response to paclitaxel treatment [52]. In the same study, median survival was 3 months for the patients with beta-tubulin mutations and 10 months for the patients without mutations [52]. Overall, the available data suggest that elevated expression and mutations in class III β-tubulin may predict resistance to taxanes in lung cancer, offering an opportunity for personalization.

Another potential mechanism of taxane resistance in lung cancer is through dysregulation of the mitotic spindle checkpoint. The mitotic spindle checkpoint, which blocks segregation of abnormal chromosomes, is often defective in human lung cancer cell lines [53]. Anti-microtubule agents such as taxanes activate the mitotic spindle checkpoint [53]. In NSCLC cell lines, impairment of the mitotic spindle checkpoint was associated with marked reduction in the ability of docetaxel to induce apoptosis, compared to cell lines with an intact mitotic spindle checkpoint [53].

Etoposide

Etoposide is an inhibitor of topoisomerase II enzyme that prevents re-ligation of the DNA strands leading to potentially lethal DNA breakage [54]. There is relatively little information available on the potential role of decreased drug uptake in etoposide resistance, although etoposide uptake is significantly higher in sensitive SCLC cell lines than in more resistant NSCLC lines [55]. The nonionic detergent Tween-80 increased etoposide uptake and cytotoxicity in NSCLC cells [56]. On the other hand, some etoposide-resistant cell lines have significantly increased level of cholesterol [57], which is thought to increase cell membrane rigidity.

As expected, SCLC cell lines are generally more sensitive to topoisomerase II inhibitors than NSCLC cell lines are [55, 58]. Kasahara and colleagues reported that nuclear topoisomerase II activity was twofold higher in SCLC cells than in NSCLC cells [55]. On a similar note, the expression of topoisomerase II-α mRNA and the protein levels in lung cancer cell lines were lower in the resistant variants compared to the sensitive variants [59]. Other etoposide-resistant SCLC cells derived from a patient who developed acquired resistance after initial response to etoposide demonstrated reduced topoisomerase II unknotting activity and reduced topoisomerase II-α expression [60]. In clinical tumor specimens, there was a significantly greater topoisomerase II-α expression by IHC in SCLC than in NSCLC [61, 62], and topoisomerase II-α IHC expression decreased significantly in SCLC tumors after therapy with etoposide [62]. Overall, these data suggest that reduced expression of topoisomerase II-α may increase resistance to etoposide.

Rad51 protein expression may play a role in etoposide resistance. In SCLC cells, resistance to etoposide correlated with protein levels of RAD51. Also, aberrant RAD51 gene expression altered both the efficacy of etoposide and repair of etoposide-induced DNA breaks [63]. Rad51 was expressed in 41 % of clinical NSCLC tumor samples but it did not correlate with resistance to etoposide [36]. Hence, the role of Rad51 in etoposide resistance will need further investigation in clinical setting.

ERK1 and ERK2 are examples of mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs), and are downstream from Ras, Raf and MEK in the Ras pathway. Some etoposide-resistant SCLC cell lines had markedly increased MAPK activity [64]. Etoposide is less effective in hypoxic tumor cells [65]. A hypoxic environment activated the ERK pathway and increased resistance of NSCLC cells to etoposide. Conversely, inhibiting the ERK pathway reversed the hypoxia-induced resistance [65].

Other potential mechanisms for etoposide resistance in lung cancer include increased metallothionein expression and non-homologous end-joining (NEJH) repair. In addition to increased metallothionein expression seen in some cisplatin-resistant cell lines as discussed in Sect. 1, metallothionein expression also correlated with resistance to etoposide [66]. Exposure of lung cancer cell lines to cadmium or zinc increased metallothionein synthesis and increased resistance to etoposide [66]. NHEJ is a pathway that repairs double-strand breaks in DNA without the need for a homologous template. DNA-dependent protein kinase (DNA-PK) plays a crucial role in this pathway [67]. The efficacy of etoposide and etoposide-induced double strand breaks in SCLC cell lines varied with expression of DNA-PK proteins, suggesting a role for NHEJ repair in etoposide resistance [63].

Gemcitabine

Gemcitabine is a deoxycytidine analogue that, following uptake through nucleoside transporters, undergoes complex intracellular conversion to gemcitabine diphosphate and triphosphate that are important for cytotoxic effects [68]. Human equilibrative nucleoside transporter 1 (hENT-1) plays a role in cellular uptake, and hENT-1-deficient cells were demonstrated to be resistant to gemcitabine [69]. Liposome encapsulation may enhance gemcitabine uptake and cytotoxicity [70]. One NSCLC study reported that pretreatment hENT-1 expression did not directly correlate with tumor response or survival following gemcitabine-based chemotherapy, but only 16 % of the tumor specimens expressed hENT-1 by IHC [69]. In a separate study, none of the NSCLC patients who lacked hENT-1 expression determined by IHC responded to gemcitabine-based therapy [71].

Ribonucleotide reductase M1 (RRM1) encodes the regulatory subunit for ribonucleotide reductase which is a target of gemcitabine [72]. Ribonucleotide reductase plays an important role in cell growth and DNA repair [72]. Over-expression of RRM1 mRNA [72, 73] and genetic variations in RRM1 gene [74] correlated with resistance to gemcitabine in NSCLC cells. Bexarotene which counteracts RRM1

gene amplification [75] and RRM1 siRNA [76] both decreased resistance to gemcitabine. Furthermore, a significantly higher RRM1 mRNA expression was found in SCLC cell lines compared to NSCLC cells [77]. In clinical setting, NSCLC patients who were treated with gemcitabine alone or in combination with a platinum drug, RRM1 mRNA expression levels inversely correlated with tumor response [72, 78], time to progression [79] or survival [78–81]. Furthermore, RRM2, a related factor, also correlated inversely with response. Patients whose tumors had high expression of both RRM1 and RRM2 had significantly lower response rates, shorter time to progression and OS, compared to those whose tumors had low expression of both [82]. RRM1 expression appears to be a promising biomarker for gemcitabine-based therapy in NSCLC. However, a recent phase III study comparing ERCC1 and RRM1 expression-based chemotherapy with gemcitabine/carboplatin in advanced NSCLC demonstrated that there was no statistically significant difference in PFS and OS between the experimental arm and the control arm [40]. Further investigation is warranted.

Vinorelbine

Vinorelbine is an amphiphilic Vinca alkaloid with superior activity in NSCLC compared with other drugs in the same category [83]. It exerts its antitumor activity by binding to tubulin and inhibiting microtubule assembly, thereby preventing cell mitosis [84].

Stuckler and colleagues reported a potential role of RLIP76, a non-ATP binding transport protein, in facilitating the efflux of vinorelbine in NSCLC [83]. They demonstrated that RLIP76 catalyzes the transport of vinorelbine in a saturable manner that is dependent on vinorelbine and ATP [83]. Furthermore, threefold overexpression of RLIP76 in NSCLC and SCLC confers increased resistance to vinorelbine by decreasing intracellular vinorelbine concentration [83].

Polo-like kinases (PLKs) play a role in mitotic entry, spindle pole function and cytokinesis [85]. Expression of PLK 1 was elevated in NSCLC, and inhibiting it disrupted microtubule polymerization while potentiating the efficacy of vinorelbine [86]. NSCLC patients who had low class III β-tubulin mRNA expression in their tumors had significantly longer time to progression and OS than patients with high expression of class III β-tubulin following treatment with vinorelbine/cisplatin [79, 87]. Low Delta2 α-tubulin expression was also associated with significantly longer OS in advanced NSCLC patients treated with cisplatin/vinorelbine [87]. Conversely, when NSCLC patients received cisplatin/vinorelbine in adjuvant setting after undergoing surgical resection of their tumors, a greater benefit of the therapy was seen in patients with high versus low class III β-tubulin. Furthermore, the adjuvant therapy appeared to overcome the negative prognostic effect of high β-tubulin [88]. It is unclear why there is a discrepancy between adjuvant and metastatic setting in the influence of tubulin expression on vinorelbine efficacy.

Stathmin (oncoprotein 18) is a protein that plays an important regulatory role in tubulin dynamics. Transfection of the gene into lung cancer cells increased sensitivity to vinca alkaloids [89]. However, in patients with advanced NSCLC treated with vinorelbine plus cisplatin, time to progression was shorter in patients with high stathmin than with low stathmin mRNA expression [79]. Hence, its role in resistance remains unclear.

Similar to docetaxel as discussed in section "Taxanes", impairment of the mitotic spindle checkpoint was also associated with significant reduction in the ability of vinorelbine to induce apoptosis, compared to cell lines with an intact mitotic spindle checkpoint [53].

Pemetrexed

Pemetrexed is one of the newer agents that is commonly used to treat advanced non-squamous NSCLC based on a phase III study by Scagliotti and colleagues that showed survival differences based on histologic type [90]. In this study, OS was superior for pemetrexed/cisplatin versus gemcitabine/cisplatin in patients with non-squamous NSCLC only [90]. Like all other chemotherapeutic agents, virtually all tumors develop resistance to pemetrexed.

The proton-coupled folate receptor [91], the reduced folate carrier [91, 92] and the folate receptor-α [93] all appear to play a role in transport of pemetrexed. As discussed above, pemetrexed is more active in non-squamous carcinomas than in squamous cell carcinomas [90], possibly related to the fact that adenocarcinomas in particular have significantly higher expression of folate receptor-α compared to squamous cell carcinomas [94]. Cytotoxicity due to pemetrexed occurs by inhibiting thymidylate synthase (TS), dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR), and glycinamide ribonucleotide formyltransferase (GARFT). Increased expression of these enzymes was associated with reduced cytotoxicity of pemetrexed in NSCLC cell lines [95]. Moreover, a recent meta-analysis evaluated the predictive value of TS and reported that NSCLC patients with lower TS expression could potentially benefit from pemetrexed-based chemotherapy [96]. High extracellular folate pools also markedly reduced pemetrexed cytotoxicity [97]. Further clinical investigation is warranted.

Multidrug Resistance Protein (ABCC, ABCB)

The factors that confer resistance to one agent may render tumors resistant to several other agents [98]. Alternating multiple agents with different mechanisms of action including cisplatin and paclitaxel does not improve clinical outcome in NSCLC [99]. The multidrug resistance (MDR) phenotype can be caused by transporters of the multidrug resistance protein (MRP) family (also known as ABCC) or MDR P-glycoprotein family (also known as ABCB).

A high proportion of SCLC [100, 101] and NSCLC [100, 102] cell lines express MRP mRNA, with greater MRP protein and/or mRNA expression in NSCLC than in SCLC cell lines [103, 104]. MRP expression is associated with decreased cellular drug accumulation of cisplatin [105], paclitaxel [106] and other agents [107]. In both SCLC and NSCLC cell lines, MRP mRNA or protein expression correlated significantly with resistance to vinca alkaloids [102, 103, 105, 107, 108], etoposide [100, 103, 104, 108], docetaxel [109], paclitaxel [106], gemcitabine [76] and cisplatin [103, 105]. However, an association between MRP expression and resistance was not seen in some cell lines [110–112]. In clinical specimens, MRP mRNA and/or protein by IHC was found in 32–100 % of NSCLC tumor specimens [100, 113–115]. MRP expression was significantly higher in more differentiated tumors than in less differentiated tumors [113] and in squamous cell carcinomas than in other NSCLCs [115]. MRP expression was also reported in SCLC clinical tumor samples [101].

The clinical value of tumor MRP expression remains uncertain. Response rates to platinum-based combinations were significantly lower in patients with SCLC whose tumors express MRP1 [116, 117] or MRP2 [118] compared to those with tumors that do not express these factors. Furthermore, MRP1 expression in SCLC tumors was significantly higher at relapse after treatment with cisplatin/etoposide compared to untreated tumors [116], suggesting that chemotherapy may upregulate expression of MRP. Likewise, in autopsy NSCLC tumor specimens, mRNA expression levels of MRP3 [119] and MRP5 [120] were significantly higher in patients who had been exposed to platinum drugs *ante mortem* than in patients who had not received platinum agents.

In advanced NSCLC, response rates to cisplatin/irinotecan were higher and survival was longer in patients with some MRP2 host genotypes than with other genotypes [121]. However, there was lack of correlation between MRP IHC expression and response to platinum-based combinations in other studies [21, 122]. In a different study involving NSCLC patients, MRP mRNA expression only correlated negatively with tumor response only in adenocarcinomas, and not in squamous cell carcinomas [123]. Furthermore, tumor MRP1 or MRP2 IHC expression did not correlate with survival in patients with resected NSCLC receiving adjuvant cisplatin plus a vinca alkaloid or etoposide [124]. Overall, preclinical data support a role for MRP in resistance to several types of chemotherapy. However, clinical data remain inconclusive. Further study is necessary.

Like MRP, MDR/P-glycoprotein may also render tumors resistant to chemotherapy by transporting drugs out of cells. In NSCLC cells, increased MDR1 mRNA and/or protein expression levels were associated with resistance to vinca alkaloids [102, 125–128], etoposide [125, 127], and taxanes [125–127, 129, 130]. MDR1/P--glycoprotein expression did not correlate significantly with sensitivity to platinum drugs [5, 110, 125, 126] or intracellular platinum accumulation [5, 110]. Some NSCLC and SCLC cell lines transfected with the MDR1 gene had augmented sensitivity to gemcitabine, and this augmented sensitivity was reversed by the P-glycoprotein inhibitor verapamil [112]. MDR1 gene overexpression was also seen in SCLC cell lines selected for resistance by exposure to paclitaxel [106] or

etoposide [131, 132]. P-glycoprotein expression correlated with HIF-1 alpha expression in NSCLC cell lines [133] and in resected NSCLC tumors [134]. Its expression was higher in lung adenocarcinoma cells under hypoxia [133], but was reduced in tumors of patients who had nitroglycerin patches applied to improve tumor blood flow and oxygenation prior to surgical resection [134].

In clinical setting, MDR1 mRNA and/or P-glycoprotein were expressed in 11–32 % of chemo-naïve specimens [62, 135–138], but were expressed in 61 % of tumors that had been treated with chemotherapy [137]. However, MDR1 expression in NSCLC did not correlate with histology or with clinical characteristics [135]. In SCLC, MDR1 expression was seen in 13–60 % of tumor biopsy samples [62, 101, 138].

With MDR1/P-glycoprotein, there is stronger evidence of an association of expression with clinical outcome in SCLC than in NSCLC. In SCLC, there was a negative correlation between expression of P-glycoprotein and clinical outcome in patients treated with cisplatin-etoposide [116, 117, 138–141]. In addition, P-glycoprotein expression was significantly increased in tumors previously exposed to therapy compared to the expression in untreated tumors [62, 116]. Efficacy of cisplatin/etoposide in SCLC patients also correlated with MDR1 host polymorphisms, with a significantly better chemotherapy response in patients with the 3435 CC genotype (exon 26) compared with those who had both 3435 CT and TT genotypes [142].

In NSCLC, there was a significant correlation of tumor P-glycoprotein IHC expression with response in two studies using platinum and paclitaxel [143, 144]. Similar to the findings in SCLC, the MDR1 3435 CC host genotype was associated also in NSCLC with a better response to cisplatin-vinorelbine compared with the combined 3435 CT and TT genotypes [145]. However, in a number of other studies involving patients with advanced NSCLC [21, 138, 146], P-glycoprotein expression by IHC did not correlate with response to cisplatin-based regimens [21, 138, 146] that included vinca alkaloids [21, 138, 147], taxanes [21] or gemcitabine [21]. Furthermore, host MDR1 C3435T polymorphisms did not correlate with outcome in NSCLC patients who were treated with cisplatin/docetaxel [148].

P-glycoprotein antagonists have been assessed in both NSCLC and in SCLC. The P-glycoprotein antagonist verapamil enhanced paclitaxel accumulation and vinorelbine efficacy in P-glycoprotein overexpressing lung cancer cells [111]. The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) inhibitor gefitinib also reversed P-glycoprotein mediated taxane resistance in NSCLC cell lines [130, 149], but did not translate to improvement in efficacy of chemotherapy in randomized clinical trials involving NSCLC patients [150, 151]. A phase II study investigating cyclosporine A, another P-glycoprotein antagonist, in combination with paclitaxel in NSCLC patients suggested a possible positive impact of the cyclosporine on paclitaxel efficacy [152]. However, when cyclosporine was added to etoposide plus cisplatin in treatment-naive NSCLC, there was no evidence of clinical benefit [153]. Similarly, while hydroxyurea is thought to reverse *MDR1*-associated resistance in vitro [154], combining paclitaxel with hydroxyurea in previously-treated patients with advanced NSCLC did not appear to improve clinical outcome [155].

Based on the above, there is strong preclinical evidence of an association between MDR1/P-glycoprotein expression and resistance to several agents in lung cancer cells, but the clinical evidence is inconclusive for an association with outcome especially in NSCLC.

Conclusion

Despite rapid advances in diagnostic technology and better understanding of lung tumorigenesis which have led to development of targeted agents, chemotherapy continues to remain as the backbone of treatment for both SCLC and NSCLC. There are several chemotherapeutic agents with different mechanisms of action being currently used to treat lung cancer. However, virtually all tumors develop resistance to all these agents. Persistent investigation to understand the molecular mechanisms of chemotherapy resistance and identification of predictive biomarkers for chemotherapy sensitivity are necessary. Improved understanding of resistance mechanism at the molecular level may offer opportunities to combine chemotherapeutic agents with molecularly targeted agents, which may be a promising strategy to overcome chemotherapy resistance and to optimize therapy for lung cancer patients.

References

1. Feldman DR, Bosl GJ, Sheinfeld J, Motzer RJ (2008) Medical treatment of advanced testicular cancer. JAMA 299(6):672–684. doi:10.1001/jama.299.6.672
2. Gately DP, Howell SB (1993) Cellular accumulation of the anticancer agent cisplatin: a review. Br J Cancer 67(6):1171–1176
3. Andrews PA, Howell SB (1990) Cellular pharmacology of cisplatin: perspectives on mechanisms of acquired resistance. Cancer Cells 2(2):35–43
4. Shellard SA, Fichtinger-Schepman AM, Lazo JS, Hill BT (1993) Evidence of differential cisplatin-DNA adduct formation, removal and tolerance of DNA damage in three human lung carcinoma cell lines. Anticancer Drugs 4(4):491–500
5. Kawai H, Kiura K, Tabata M, Yoshino T, Takata I, Hiraki A, Chikamori K, Ueoka H, Tanimoto M, Harada M (2002) Characterization of non-small-cell lung cancer cell lines established before and after chemotherapy. Lung Cancer 35(3):305–314, S0169500 201004305 [pii]
6. Bungo M, Fujiwara Y, Kasahara K, Nakagawa K, Ohe Y, Sasaki Y, Irino S, Saijo N (1990) Decreased accumulation as a mechanism of resistance to cis-diamminedichloroplatinum(II) in human non-small cell lung cancer cell lines: relation to DNA damage and repair. Cancer Res 50(9):2549–2553
7. Kim ES, Lee JJ, He G, Chow CW, Fujimoto J, Kalhor N, Swisher SG, Wistuba II, Stewart DJ, Siddik ZH (2012) Tissue platinum concentration and tumor response in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 30(27):3345–3352. doi:10.1200/JCO.2011.40.8120
8. Ishida S, Lee J, Thiele DJ, Herskowitz I (2002) Uptake of the anticancer drug cisplatin mediated by the copper transporter Ctr1 in yeast and mammals. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99(22):14298–14302. doi:10.1073/pnas.162491399162491399 [pii]

9. Song IS, Savaraj N, Siddik ZH, Liu P, Wei Y, Wu CJ, Kuo MT (2004) Role of human copper transporter Ctr1 in the transport of platinum-based antitumor agents in cisplatin-sensitive and cisplatin-resistant cells. Mol Cancer Ther 3(12):1543–1549, 3/12/1543 [pii]
10. Chen HH, Yan JJ, Chen WC, Kuo MT, Lai YH, Lai WW, Liu HS, Su WC (2012) Predictive and prognostic value of human copper transporter 1 (hCtr1) in patients with stage III non-small-cell lung cancer receiving first-line platinum-based doublet chemotherapy. Lung Cancer 75(2):228–234. doi:10.1016/j.lungcan.2011.06.011
11. Ishida S, McCormick F, Smith-McCune K, Hanahan D (2010) Enhancing tumor-specific uptake of the anticancer drug cisplatin with a copper chelator. Cancer Cell 17(6):574–583. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2010.04.011, S1535-6108(10)00150-9 [pii]
12. Stewart DJ, Issa JP, Kurzrock R, Nunez MI, Jelinek J, Hong D, Oki Y, Guo Z, Gupta S, Wistuba II (2009) Decitabine effect on tumor global DNA methylation and other parameters in a phase I trial in refractory solid tumors and lymphomas. Clin Cancer Res 15(11):3881–3888. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-2196
13. Bando T, Fujimura M, Kasahara K, Ueno T, Matsuda T (2000) Selective beta2-adrenoceptor agonist enhances sensitivity to cisplatin in non-small cell lung cancer cell line. Oncol Rep 7(1):49–52
14. Bando T, Fujimura M, Kasahara K, Matsuda T (1998) Significance of Na+, K(+)-ATPase on intracellular accumulation of cis-diamminedichloroplatinum(II) in human non-small-cell but not in small-cell lung cancer cell lines. Anticancer Res 18(2A):1085–1089
15. Bando T, Fujimura M, Kasahara K, Matsuda T (1998) Role of thromboxane receptor on the intracellular accumulation of cis-diamminedichloroplatinum(II) in non-small-cell but not in small-cell lung cancer cell lines. Anticancer Res 18(2A):1079–1084
16. Fujimura M, Kasahara K, Shirasaki H, Heki U, Iwasa K, Ueda A, Matsuda T (1999) Up-regulation of ICH-1L protein by thromboxane A2 antagonists enhances cisplatin-induced apoptosis in non-small-cell lung-cancer cell lines. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 125(7):389–394
17. Bando T, Fujimura M, Kasahara K, Shibata K, Shirasaki H, Heki U, Iwasa K, Ueda A, Tomikawa S, Matsuda T (1997) Exposure to sorbitol induces resistance to cisplatin in human non-small-cell lung cancer cell lines. Anticancer Res 17(5A):3345–3348
18. Tokuchi Y, Isobe H, Takekawa H, Hanada T, Ishida T, Ogura S, Itoh K, Furudate M, Saito K, Kawakami Y (1998) Predicting chemotherapeutic response to small-cell lung cancer of platinum compounds by thallium-201 single-photon emission computerized tomography. Br J Cancer 77(8):1363–1368
19. Yamamoto Y, Nishiyama Y, Satoh K, Takashima H, Ohkawa M, Fujita J, Kishi T, Matsuno S, Tanabe M (1998) Comparative study of technetium-99m-sestamibi and thallium-201 SPECT in predicting chemotherapeutic response in small cell lung cancer. J Nucl Med 39(9):1626–1629
20. Nakagawa T, Inoue Y, Kodama H, Yamazaki H, Kawai K, Suemizu H, Masuda R, Iwazaki M, Yamada S, Ueyama Y, Inoue H, Nakamura M (2008) Expression of copper-transporting P-type adenosine triphosphatase (ATP7B) correlates with cisplatin resistance in human non-small cell lung cancer xenografts. Oncol Rep 20(2):265–270
21. Yoh K, Ishii G, Yokose T, Minegishi Y, Tsuta K, Goto K, Nishiwaki Y, Kodama T, Suga M, Ochiai A (2004) Breast cancer resistance protein impacts clinical outcome in platinum-based chemotherapy for advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 10(5):1691–1697
22. Ota S, Ishii G, Goto K, Kubota K, Kim YH, Kojika M, Murata Y, Yamazaki M, Nishiwaki Y, Eguchi K, Ochiai A (2009) Immunohistochemical expression of BCRP and ERCC1 in biopsy specimen predicts survival in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer treated with cisplatin-based chemotherapy. Lung Cancer 64(1):98–104
23. Hu Y, Lin DM, Cheng SJ, Liu YN, Feng FY (2006) Influences of PC cell-derived growth factor and breast cancer resistance protein on the curative effects of platinum-based chemotherapeutic regimens for advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi 86(37):2611–2614
24. Hu Y, Feng FY, Cheng SJ, Gao YN, Xiao T, Liu YN (2006) Expression of serum breast drug-resistance protein in predicting chemosensitivity of NSCLC. Zhonghua Zhong Liu Za Zhi 28(10):750–752

25. Meijer C, Mulder NH, Hospers GA, Uges DR, de Vries EG (1990) The role of glutathione in resistance to cisplatin in a human small cell lung cancer cell line. Br J Cancer 62(1):72–77
26. Jain N, Lam YM, Pym J, Campling BG (1996) Mechanisms of resistance of human small cell lung cancer lines selected in VP-16 and cisplatin. Cancer 77(9):1797–1808
27. Hospers GA, Meijer C, de Leij L, Uges DR, Mulder NH, de Vries EG (1990) A study of human small-cell lung carcinoma (hSCLC) cell lines with different sensitivities to detect relevant mechanisms of cisplatin (CDDP) resistance. Int J Cancer 46(1):138–144
28. Moritaka T, Kiura K, Ueoka H, Tabata M, Segawa Y, Shibayama T, Takigawa N, Ohnoshi T, Harada M (1998) Cisplatin-resistant human small cell lung cancer cell line shows collateral sensitivity to vinca alkaloids. Anticancer Res 18(2A):927–933
29. Fokkema E, Groen HJ, Helder MN, de Vries EG, Meijer C (2002) JM216-, JM118-, and cisplatin-induced cytotoxicity in relation to platinum-DNA adduct formation, glutathione levels and p53 status in human tumour cell lines with different sensitivities to cisplatin. Biochem Pharmacol 63(11):1989–1996
30. Oshita F, Fujiwara Y, Saijo N (1992) Radiation sensitivities in various anticancer-drug-resistant human lung cancer cell lines and mechanism of radiation cross-resistance in a cisplatin-resistant cell line. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 119(1):28–34
31. Meijer C, Mulder NH, Timmer-Bosscha H, Sluiter WJ, Meersma GJ, de Vries EG (1992) Relationship of cellular glutathione to the cytotoxicity and resistance of seven platinum compounds. Cancer Res 52(24):6885–6889
32. Kurokawa H, Ishida T, Nishio K, Arioka H, Sata M, Fukumoto H, Miura M, Saijo N (1995) Gamma-glutamylcysteine synthetase gene overexpression results in increased activity of the ATP-dependent glutathione S-conjugate export pump and cisplatin resistance. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 216(1):258–264
33. Zhan M, Liu X (1999) Schedule-dependent reversion of cisplatin resistance by 5-fluorouracil in a cisplatin-resistant human lung adenocarcinoma cell line A549DDP. Chin Med J (Engl) 112(4):336–339
34. Siddik ZH (2003) Cisplatin: mode of cytotoxic action and molecular basis of resistance. Oncogene 22(47):7265–7279. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1206933
35. van de Vaart PJ, Belderbos J, de Jong D, Sneeuw KC, Majoor D, Bartelink H, Begg AC (2000) DNA-adduct levels as a predictor of outcome for NSCLC patients receiving daily cisplatin and radiotherapy. Int J Cancer 89(2):160–166
36. Takenaka T, Yoshino I, Kouso H, Ohba T, Yohena T, Osoegawa A, Shoji F, Maehara Y (2007) Combined evaluation of Rad51 and ERCC1 expressions for sensitivity to platinum agents in non-small cell lung cancer. Int J Cancer 121(4):895–900. doi:10.1002/ijc.22738
37. Olaussen KA, Dunant A, Fouret P, Brambilla E, Andre F, Haddad V, Taranchon E, Filipits M, Pirker R, Popper HH, Stahel R, Sabatier L, Pignon JP, Tursz T, Le Chevalier T, Soria JC, IB Investigators (2006) DNA repair by ERCC1 in non-small-cell lung cancer and cisplatin-based adjuvant chemotherapy. N Engl J Med 355(10):983–991. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa060570
38. Booton R, Ward T, Ashcroft L, Morris J, Heighway J, Thatcher N (2007) ERCC1 mRNA expression is not associated with response and survival after platinum-based chemotherapy regimens in advanced non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 2(10):902–906. doi:10.1097/JTO.0b013e318155a637
39. Friboulet L, Olaussen KA, Pignon JP, Shepherd FA, Tsao MS, Graziano S, Kratzke R, Douillard JY, Seymour L, Pirker R, Filipits M, Andre F, Solary E, Ponsonnailles F, Robin A, Stoclin A, Dorvault N, Commo F, Adam J, Vanhecke E, Saulnier P, Thomale J, Le Chevalier T, Dunant A, Rousseau V, Le Teuff G, Brambilla E, Soria JC (2013) ERCC1 isoform expression and DNA repair in non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 368(12):1101–1110. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1214271
40. Bepler G, Williams C, Schell MJ, Chen W, Zheng Z, Simon G, Gadgeel S, Zhao X, Schreiber F, Brahmer J, Chiappori A, Tanvetyanon T, Pinder-Schenck M, Gray J, Haura E, Antonia S, Fischer JR (2013) Randomized international phase III trial of ERCC1 and RRM1 expression-based chemotherapy versus gemcitabine/carboplatin in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol. doi:10.1200/JCO.2012.46.9783

41. Kasahara K, Fujiwara Y, Nishio K, Ohmori T, Sugimoto Y, Komiya K, Matsuda T, Saijo N (1991) Metallothionein content correlates with the sensitivity of human small cell lung cancer cell lines to cisplatin. Cancer Res 51(12):3237–3242
42. Joseph MG, Banerjee D, Kocha W, Feld R, Stitt LW, Cherian MG (2001) Metallothionein expression in patients with small cell carcinoma of the lung: correlation with other molecular markers and clinical outcome. Cancer 92(4):836–842
43. Goodsell DS (2000) The molecular perspective: microtubules and the taxanes. Oncologist 5(4):345–346
44. Verdier-Pinard P, Wang F, Martello L, Burd B, Orr GA, Horwitz SB (2003) Analysis of tubulin isotypes and mutations from taxol-resistant cells by combined isoelectrofocusing and mass spectrometry. Biochemistry 42(18):5349–5357
45. Han EK, Gehrke L, Tahir SK, Credo RB, Cherian SP, Sham H, Rosenberg SH, Ng S (2000) Modulation of drug resistance by alpha-tubulin in paclitaxel-resistant human lung cancer cell lines. Eur J Cancer 36(12):1565–1571
46. Kavallaris M, Burkhart CA, Horwitz SB (1999) Antisense oligonucleotides to class III beta-tubulin sensitize drug-resistant cells to Taxol. Br J Cancer 80(7):1020–1025
47. Zeng L, Kizaka-Kondoh S, Itasaka S, Xie X, Inoue M, Tanimoto K, Shibuya K, Hiraoka M (2007) Hypoxia inducible factor-1 influences sensitivity to paclitaxel of human lung cancer cell lines under normoxic conditions. Cancer Sci 98(9):1394–1401
48. Goncalves A, Braguer D, Kamath K, Martello L, Briand C, Horwitz S, Wilson L, Jordan MA (2001) Resistance to Taxol in lung cancer cells associated with increased microtubule dynamics. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98(20):11737–11742
49. Marcus AI, Zhou J, O'Brate A, Hamel E, Wong J, Nivens M, El-Naggar A, Yao TP, Khuri FR, Giannakakou P (2005) The synergistic combination of the farnesyl transferase inhibitor lonafarnib and paclitaxel enhances tubulin acetylation and requires a functional tubulin deacetylase. Cancer Res 65(9):3883–3893
50. Dumontet C, Isaac S, Souquet PJ, Bejui-Thivolet F, Pacheco Y, Peloux N, Frankfurter A, Luduena R, Perol M (2005) Expression of class III beta tubulin in non-small cell lung cancer is correlated with resistance to taxane chemotherapy. Bull Cancer 92(2):E25–E30
51. Seve P, Mackey J, Isaac S, Tredan O, Souquet PJ, Perol M, Lai R, Voloch A, Dumontet C (2005) Class III beta-tubulin expression in tumor cells predicts response and outcome in patients with non-small cell lung cancer receiving paclitaxel. Mol Cancer Ther 4(12):2001–2007
52. Monzo M, Rosell R, Sanchez JJ, Lee JS, O'Brate A, Gonzalez-Larriba JL, Alberola V, Lorenzo JC, Nunez L, Ro JY, Martin C (1999) Paclitaxel resistance in non-small-cell lung cancer associated with beta-tubulin gene mutations. J Clin Oncol 17(6):1786–1793
53. Masuda A, Maeno K, Nakagawa T, Saito H, Takahashi T (2003) Association between mitotic spindle checkpoint impairment and susceptibility to the induction of apoptosis by anti-microtubule agents in human lung cancers. Am J Pathol 163(3):1109–1116. doi:10.1016/S0002-9440(10)63470-0
54. Pommier Y, Leo E, Zhang H, Marchand C (2010) DNA topoisomerases and their poisoning by anticancer and antibacterial drugs. Chem Biol 17(5):421–433. doi:10.1016/j.chembiol.2010.04.012
55. Kasahara K, Fujiwara Y, Sugimoto Y, Nishio K, Tamura T, Matsuda T, Saijo N (1992) Determinants of response to the DNA topoisomerase II inhibitors doxorubicin and etoposide in human lung cancer cell lines. J Natl Cancer Inst 84(2):113–118
56. Tsujino I, Yamazaki T, Masutani M, Sawada U, Horie T (1999) Effect of Tween-80 on cell killing by etoposide in human lung adenocarcinoma cells. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 43(1):29–34
57. Belanger MM, Gaudreau M, Roussel E, Couet J (2004) Role of caveolin-1 in etoposide resistance development in A549 lung cancer cells. Cancer Biol Ther 3(10):954–959
58. Yamazaki K, Isobe H, Hanada T, Betsuyaku T, Hasegawa A, Hizawa N, Ogura S, Kawakami Y (1997) Topoisomerase II alpha content and topoisomerase II catalytic activity cannot explain drug sensitivities to topoisomerase II inhibitors in lung cancer cell lines. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 39(3):192–198

59. Houlbrook S, Harris AL, Carmichael J, Stratford IJ (1996) Relationship between topoisomerase II levels and resistance to topoisomerase II inhibitors in lung cancer cell lines. Anticancer Res 16(4A):1603–1610
60. Andoh T, Nishizawa M, Hida T, Ariyoshi Y, Takahashi T, Ueda R (1996) Reduced expression of DNA topoisomerase II confers resistance to etoposide (VP-16) in small cell lung cancer cell lines established from a refractory tumor of a patient and by in vitro selection. Oncol Res 8(6):229–238
61. Guinee DG Jr, Holden JA, Benfield JR, Woodward ML, Przygodzki RM, Fishback NF, Koss MN, Travis WD (1996) Comparison of DNA topoisomerase II alpha expression in small cell and nonsmall cell carcinoma of the lung. In search of a mechanism of chemotherapeutic response. Cancer 78(4):729–735
62. Kreisholt J, Sorensen M, Jensen PB, Nielsen BS, Andersen CB, Sehested M (1998) Immunohistochemical detection of DNA topoisomerase IIalpha, P-glycoprotein and multidrug resistance protein (MRP) in small-cell and non-small-cell lung cancer. Br J Cancer 77(9):1469–1473
63. Hansen LT, Lundin C, Spang-Thomsen M, Petersen LN, Helleday T (2003) The role of RAD51 in etoposide (VP16) resistance in small cell lung cancer. Int J Cancer 105(4):472–479
64. Kraus AC, Ferber I, Bachmann SO, Specht H, Wimmel A, Gross MW, Schlegel J, Suske G, Schuermann M (2002) In vitro chemo- and radio-resistance in small cell lung cancer correlates with cell adhesion and constitutive activation of AKT and MAP kinase pathways. Oncogene 21(57):8683–8695
65. Lee SM, Lee CT, Kim YW, Han SK, Shim YS, Yoo CG (2006) Hypoxia confers protection against apoptosis via PI3K/Akt and ERK pathways in lung cancer cells. Cancer Lett 242(2):231–238
66. Shimoda R, Achanzar WE, Qu W, Nagamine T, Takagi H, Mori M, Waalkes MP (2003) Metallothionein is a potential negative regulator of apoptosis. Toxicol Sci 73(2):294–300
67. Smith GC, Jackson SP (1999) The DNA-dependent protein kinase. Genes Dev 13(8):916–934
68. Mini E, Nobili S, Caciagli B, Landini I, Mazzei T (2006) Cellular pharmacology of gemcitabine. Ann Oncol 17(Suppl 5):v7–v12. doi:10.1093/annonc/mdj941
69. Seve P, Mackey JR, Isaac S, Tredan O, Souquet PJ, Perol M, Cass C, Dumontet C (2005) cN-II expression predicts survival in patients receiving gemcitabine for advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 49(3):363–370
70. Kim MJ, Lee HJ, Lee IA, Kim IY, Lim SK, Cho HA, Kim JS (2008) Preparation of pH-sensitive, long-circulating and EGFR-targeted immunoliposomes. Arch Pharm Res 31(4):539–546
71. Oguri T, Achiwa H, Muramatsu H, Ozasa H, Sato S, Shimizu S, Yamazaki H, Eimoto T, Ueda R (2007) The absence of human equilibrative nucleoside transporter 1 expression predicts nonresponse to gemcitabine-containing chemotherapy in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Lett 256(1):112–119
72. Bepler G, Kusmartseva I, Sharma S, Gautam A, Cantor A, Sharma A, Simon G (2006) RRM1 modulated in vitro and in vivo efficacy of gemcitabine and platinum in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 24(29):4731–4737
73. Davidson JD, Ma L, Flagella M, Geeganage S, Gelbert LM, Slapak CA (2004) An increase in the expression of ribonucleotide reductase large subunit 1 is associated with gemcitabine resistance in non-small cell lung cancer cell lines. Cancer Res 64(11):3761–3766
74. Kwon WS, Rha SY, Choi YH, Lee JO, Park KH, Jung JJ, Kim TS, Jeung HC, Chung HC (2006) Ribonucleotide reductase M1 (RRM1) 2464G > A polymorphism shows an association with gemcitabine chemosensitivity in cancer cell lines. Pharmacogenet Genomics 16(6):429–438
75. Tooker P, Yen WC, Ng SC, Negro-Vilar A, Hermann TW (2007) Bexarotene (LGD1069, Targretin), a selective retinoid X receptor agonist, prevents and reverses gemcitabine resistance in NSCLC cells by modulating gene amplification. Cancer Res 67(9):4425–4433

76. Oguri T, Achiwa H, Sato S, Bessho Y, Takano Y, Miyazaki M, Muramatsu H, Maeda H, Niimi T, Ueda R (2006) The determinants of sensitivity and acquired resistance to gemcitabine differ in non-small cell lung cancer: a role of ABCC5 in gemcitabine sensitivity. Mol Cancer Ther 5(7):1800–1806
77. Shimizu J, Horio Y, Osada H, Hida T, Hasegawa Y, Shimokata K, Takahashi T, Sekido Y, Yatabe Y (2008) mRNA expression of RRM1, ERCC1 and ERCC2 is not associated with chemosensitivity to cisplatin, carboplatin and gemcitabine in human lung cancer cell lines. Respirology 13(4):510–517
78. Rosell R, Felip E, Taron M, Majo J, Mendez P, Sanchez-Ronco M, Queralt C, Sanchez JJ, Maestre J (2004) Gene expression as a predictive marker of outcome in stage IIB-IIIA-IIIB non-small cell lung cancer after induction gemcitabine-based chemotherapy followed by resectional surgery. Clin Cancer Res 10(12 Pt 2):4215s–4219s
79. Rosell R, Scagliotti G, Danenberg KD, Lord RV, Bepler G, Novello S, Cooc J, Crino L, Sanchez JJ, Taron M, Boni C, De Marinis F, Tonato M, Marangolo M, Gozzelino F, Di Costanzo F, Rinaldi M, Salonga D, Stephens C (2003) Transcripts in pretreatment biopsies from a three-arm randomized trial in metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer. Oncogene 22(23):3548–3553
80. Rosell R, Danenberg KD, Alberola V, Bepler G, Sanchez JJ, Camps C, Provencio M, Isla D, Taron M, Diz P, Artal A (2004) Ribonucleotide reductase messenger RNA expression and survival in gemcitabine/cisplatin-treated advanced non-small cell lung cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res 10(4):1318–1325
81. Ceppi P, Volante M, Novello S, Rapa I, Danenberg KD, Danenberg PV, Cambieri A, Selvaggi G, Saviozzi S, Calogero R, Papotti M, Scagliotti GV (2006) ERCC1 and RRM1 gene expressions but not EGFR are predictive of shorter survival in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer treated with cisplatin and gemcitabine. Ann Oncol 17(12):1818–1825
82. Souglakos J, Boukovinas I, Taron M, Mendez P, Mavroudis D, Tripaki M, Hatzidaki D, Koutsopoulos A, Stathopoulos E, Georgoulias V, Rosell R (2008) Ribonucleotide reductase subunits M1 and M2 mRNA expression levels and clinical outcome of lung adenocarcinoma patients treated with docetaxel/gemcitabine. Br J Cancer 98(10):1710–1715
83. Stuckler D, Singhal J, Singhal SS, Yadav S, Awasthi YC, Awasthi S (2005) RLIP76 transports vinorelbine and mediates drug resistance in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 65(3):991–998
84. Gregory RK, Smith IE (2000) Vinorelbine–a clinical review. Br J Cancer 82(12):1907–1913. doi:10.1054/bjoc.2000.1203
85. Archambault V, Glover DM (2009) Polo-like kinases: conservation and divergence in their functions and regulation. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 10(4):265–275. doi:10.1038/nrm2653, nrm2653 [pii]
86. Zhou Q, Bai M, Su Y (2004) Effect of antisense RNA targeting polo-like kinase 1 on cell cycle and proliferation in A549 cells. Chin Med J (Engl) 117(11):1642–1649
87. Seve P, Isaac S, Tredan O, Souquet PJ, Pacheco Y, Perol M, Lafanechere L, Penet A, Peiller EL, Dumontet C (2005) Expression of class III {beta}-tubulin is predictive of patient outcome in patients with non-small cell lung cancer receiving vinorelbine-based chemotherapy. Clin Cancer Res 11(15):5481–5486
88. Seve P, Lai R, Ding K, Winton T, Butts C, Mackey J, Dumontet C, Dabbagh L, Aviel-Ronen S, Seymour L, Whitehead M, Tsao MS, Shepherd FA, Reiman T (2007) Class III beta-tubulin expression and benefit from adjuvant cisplatin/vinorelbine chemotherapy in operable non-small cell lung cancer: analysis of NCIC JBR.10. Clin Cancer Res 13(3):994–999
89. Nishio K, Nakamura T, Koh Y, Kanzawa F, Tamura T, Saijo N (2001) Oncoprotein 18 overexpression increases the sensitivity to vindesine in the human lung carcinoma cells. Cancer 91(8):1494–1499
90. Scagliotti GV, Parikh P, von Pawel J, Biesma B, Vansteenkiste J, Manegold C, Serwatowski P, Gatzemeier U, Digumarti R, Zukin M, Lee JS, Mellemgaard A, Park K, Patil S, Rolski J, Goksel T, de Marinis F, Simms L, Sugarman KP, Gandara D (2008) Phase III study compar-

ing cisplatin plus gemcitabine with cisplatin plus pemetrexed in chemotherapy-naive patients with advanced-stage non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 26(21):3543–3551
91. Zhao R, Qiu A, Tsai E, Jansen M, Akabas MH, Goldman ID (2008) The proton-coupled folate transporter: impact on pemetrexed transport and on antifolates activities compared with the reduced folate carrier. Mol Pharmacol 74(3):854–862. doi:10.1124/mol.108.045443, mol.108.045443 [pii]
92. Chattopadhyay S, Wang Y, Zhao R, Goldman ID (2004) Lack of impact of the loss of constitutive folate receptor alpha expression, achieved by RNA Interference, on the activity of the new generation antifolate pemetrexed in HeLa cells. Clin Cancer Res 10(23):7986–7993. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-04-1225, 10/23/7986 [pii]
93. Theti DS, Jackman AL (2004) The role of alpha-folate receptor-mediated transport in the antitumor activity of antifolate drugs. Clin Cancer Res 10(3):1080–1089
94. Nunez MI, Behrens C, Woods DM, Lin H, Prudkin L, Suraokar M, Girard L, Minna JD, Lee JJ, Hofstetter W, Franklin W, Moran CA, Stewart DJ, Wistuba II (2009) Immunohistochemical expression of membrane transporters correlates with histology type of non-small cell lung carcinoma. In: Proceedings of the 100th annual meeting of the American Association of Cancer Research: Abstract #1594
95. Giovannetti E, Mey V, Nannizzi S, Pasqualetti G, Marini L, Del Tacca M, Danesi R (2005) Cellular and pharmacogenetics foundation of synergistic interaction of pemetrexed and gemcitabine in human non-small-cell lung cancer cells. Mol Pharmacol 68(1):110–118
96. Liu Y, Yin TJ, Zhou R, Zhou S, Fan L, Zhang RG (2013) Expression of thymidylate synthase predicts clinical outcomes of pemetrexed-containing chemotherapy for non-small-cell lung cancer: a systemic review and meta-analysis. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 72(5):1125–1132. doi:10.1007/s00280-013-2299-2
97. Chattopadhyay S, Tamari R, Min SH, Zhao R, Tsai E, Goldman ID (2007) Commentary: a case for minimizing folate supplementation in clinical regimens with pemetrexed based on the marked sensitivity of the drug to folate availability. Oncologist 12(7):808–815
98. Stewart DJ (2010) Tumor and host factors that may limit efficacy of chemotherapy in non-small cell and small cell lung cancer. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 75(3):173–234. doi:10.1016/j.critrevonc.2009.11.006, S1040-8428(09)00230-3 [pii]
99. Stewart DJ, Tomiak E, Shamji FM, Maziak DE, MacLeod P (2004) Phase II study of alternating chemotherapy regimens for advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 44(2):241–249. doi:10.1016/j.lungcan.2003.10.009, S0169500203005592 [pii]
100. Giaccone G, van Ark-Otte J, Rubio GJ, Gazdar AF, Broxterman HJ, Dingemans AM, Flens MJ, Scheper RJ, Pinedo HM (1996) MRP is frequently expressed in human lung-cancer cell lines, in non-small-cell lung cancer and in normal lungs. Int J Cancer 66(6):760–767
101. Campling BG, Young LC, Baer KA, Lam YM, Deeley RG, Cole SP, Gerlach JH (1997) Expression of the MRP and MDR1 multidrug resistance genes in small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 3(1):115–122
102. Bessho Y, Oguri T, Ozasa H, Uemura T, Sakamoto H, Miyazaki M, Maeno K, Sato S, Ueda R (2009) ABCC10/MRP7 is associated with vinorelbine resistance in non-small cell lung cancer. Oncol Rep 21(1):263–268
103. Young LC, Campling BG, Cole SP, Deeley RG, Gerlach JH (2001) Multidrug resistance proteins MRP3, MRP1, and MRP2 in lung cancer: correlation of protein levels with drug response and messenger RNA levels. Clin Cancer Res 7(6):1798–1804
104. Narasaki F, Oka M, Fukuda M, Ikeda K, Terashi K, Takatani H, Nakamura T, Soda H, Kohno S (1997) Multidrug resistance-associated protein gene expression and drug sensitivity in human lung cancer cells. Anticancer Res 17(5A):3493–3497
105. Henness S, Davey MW, Harvie RM, Davey RA (2002) Fractionated irradiation of H69 small-cell lung cancer cells causes stable radiation and drug resistance with increased MRP1, MRP2, and topoisomerase IIalpha expression. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 54(3):895–902
106. Oguri T, Ozasa H, Uemura T, Bessho Y, Miyazaki M, Maeno K, Maeda H, Sato S, Ueda R (2008) MRP7/ABCC10 expression is a predictive biomarker for the resistance to paclitaxel in non-small cell lung cancer. Mol Cancer Ther 7(5):1150–1155

107. Gonzalez Manzano R, Versanvoort C, Wright K, Twentyman PR (1996) Rapid recovery of a functional MDR phenotype caused by MRP after a transient exposure to MDR drugs in a revertant human lung cancer cell line. Eur J Cancer 32A(12):2136–2141
108. Zaman GJ, Lankelma J, van Tellingen O, Beijnen J, Dekker H, Paulusma C, Oude Elferink RP, Baas F, Borst P (1995) Role of glutathione in the export of compounds from cells by the multidrug-resistance-associated protein. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92(17):7690–7694
109. Liang Y, O'Driscoll L, McDonnell S, Doolan P, Oglesby I, Duffy K, O'Connor R, Clynes M (2004) Enhanced in vitro invasiveness and drug resistance with altered gene expression patterns in a human lung carcinoma cell line after pulse selection with anticancer drugs. Int J Cancer 111(4):484–493
110. Ikuta K, Takemura K, Sasaki K, Kihara M, Nishimura M, Ueda N, Naito S, Lee E, Shimizu E, Yamauchi A (2005) Expression of multidrug resistance proteins and accumulation of cisplatin in human non-small cell lung cancer cells. Biol Pharm Bull 28(4):707–712
111. van Ark-Otte J, Samelis G, Rubio G, Lopez Saez JB, Pinedo HM, Giaccone G (1998) Effects of tubulin-inhibiting agents in human lung and breast cancer cell lines with different multidrug resistance phenotypes. Oncol Rep 5(1):249–255
112. Bergman AM, Pinedo HM, Talianidis I, Veerman G, Loves WJ, van der Wilt CL, Peters GJ (2003) Increased sensitivity to gemcitabine of P-glycoprotein and multidrug resistance-associated protein-overexpressing human cancer cell lines. Br J Cancer 88(12):1963–1970
113. Xu M, Li J, Xia Q (1999) Expression of multidrug resistance-associated protein gene in non-small cell lung cancer. Zhonghua Jie He He Hu Xi Za Zhi 22(5):268–270
114. Oshika Y, Nakamura M, Tokunaga T, Fukushima Y, Abe Y, Ozeki Y, Yamazaki H, Tamaoki N, Ueyama Y (1998) Multidrug resistance-associated protein and mutant p53 protein expression in non-small cell lung cancer. Mod Pathol 11(11):1059–1063
115. Ota E, Abe Y, Oshika Y, Ozeki Y, Iwasaki M, Inoue H, Yamazaki H, Ueyama Y, Takagi K, Ogata T et al (1995) Expression of the multidrug resistance-associated protein (MRP) gene in non-small-cell lung cancer. Br J Cancer 72(3):550–554
116. Triller N, Korosec P, Kern I, Kosnik M, Debeljak A (2006) Multidrug resistance in small cell lung cancer: expression of P-glycoprotein, multidrug resistance protein 1 and lung resistance protein in chemo-naive patients and in relapsed disease. Lung Cancer 54(2):235–240
117. Yeh JJ, Hsu NY, Hsu WH, Tsai CH, Lin CC, Liang JA (2005) Comparison of chemotherapy response with P-glycoprotein, multidrug resistance-related protein-1, and lung resistance-related protein expression in untreated small cell lung cancer. Lung 183(3):177–183
118. Ushijima R, Takayama K, Izumi M, Harada T, Horiuchi Y, Uchino J, Hara N, Nakanishi Y (2007) Immunohistochemical expression of MRP2 and clinical resistance to platinum-based chemotherapy in small cell lung cancer. Anticancer Res 27(6C):4351–4358
119. Oguri T, Isobe T, Fujitaka K, Ishikawa N, Kohno N (2001) Association between expression of the MRP3 gene and exposure to platinum drugs in lung cancer. Int J Cancer 93(4):584–589
120. Oguri T, Isobe T, Suzuki T, Nishio K, Fujiwara Y, Katoh O, Yamakido M (2000) Increased expression of the MRP5 gene is associated with exposure to platinum drugs in lung cancer. Int J Cancer 86(1):95–100
121. Han JY, Lim HS, Yoo YK, Shin ES, Park YH, Lee SY, Lee JE, Lee DH, Kim HT, Lee JS (2007) Associations of ABCB1, ABCC2, and ABCG2 polymorphisms with irinotecan-pharmacokinetics and clinical outcome in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer 110(1):138–147
122. Dingemans AC, van Ark-Otte J, Span S, Scagliotti GV, van der Valk P, Postmus PE, Giaccone G (2001) Topoisomerase IIalpha and other drug resistance markers in advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 32(2):117–128
123. Wang J, Liu X, Jiang W (2000) Expression of LRP, MRP and MDR1 in non-small-cell lung cancer and its clinical significance. Zhonghua Zhong Liu Za Zhi 22(4):304–307
124. Filipits M, Haddad V, Schmid K, Huynh A, Dunant A, Andre F, Brambilla E, Stahel R, Pignon JP, Soria JC, Popper HH, Le Chevalier T, Pirker R (2007) Multidrug resistance proteins do not predict benefit of adjuvant chemotherapy in patients with completely resected

non-small cell lung cancer: International Adjuvant Lung Cancer Trial Biologic Program. Clin Cancer Res 13(13):3892–3898
125. NicAmhlaoibh R, Heenan M, Cleary I, Touhey S, O'Loughlin C, Daly C, Nunez G, Scanlon KJ, Clynes M (1999) Altered expression of mRNAs for apoptosis-modulating proteins in a low level multidrug resistant variant of a human lung carcinoma cell line that also expresses mdr1 mRNA. Int J Cancer 82(3):368–376
126. Yabuki N, Sakata K, Yamasaki T, Terashima H, Mio T, Miyazaki Y, Fujii T, Kitada K (2007) Gene amplification and expression in lung cancer cells with acquired paclitaxel resistance. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 173(1):1–9
127. Pesic M, Markovic JZ, Jankovic D, Kanazir S, Markovic ID, Rakic L, Ruzdijic S (2006) Induced resistance in the human non small cell lung carcinoma (NCI-H460) cell line in vitro by anticancer drugs. J Chemother 18(1):66–73
128. Sato H, Fukumoto K, Hada S, Hagiwara H, Fujimoto E, Negishi E, Ueno K, Yano T (2007) Enhancing effect of connexin 32 gene on vinorelbine-induced cytotoxicity in A549 lung adenocarcinoma cells. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 60(3):449–457
129. Ji D, Deeds SL, Weinstein EJ (2007) A screen of shRNAs targeting tumor suppressor genes to identify factors involved in A549 paclitaxel sensitivity. Oncol Rep 18(6):1499–1505
130. Kitazaki T, Oka M, Nakamura Y, Tsurutani J, Doi S, Yasunaga M, Takemura M, Yabuuchi H, Soda H, Kohno S (2005) Gefitinib, an EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor, directly inhibits the function of P-glycoprotein in multidrug resistant cancer cells. Lung Cancer 49(3):337–343
131. Glisson BS, Alpeter MD (1992) Multidrug resistance in a small cell lung cancer line: rapid selection with etoposide and differential chemosensitization with cyclosporin A. Anticancer Drugs 3(4):359–366
132. Takigawa N, Ohnoshi T, Ueoka H, Kiura K, Kimura I (1992) Establishment and characterization of an etoposide-resistant human small cell lung cancer cell line. Acta Med Okayama 46(3):203–212
133. Xia S, Yu SY, Yuan XL, Xu SP (2004) Effects of hypoxia on expression of P-glycoprotein and multidrug resistance protein in human lung adenocarcinoma A549 cell line. Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi 84(8):663–666
134. Yasuda H, Nakayama K, Watanabe M, Suzuki S, Fuji H, Okinaga S, Kanda A, Zayasu K, Sasaki T, Asada M, Suzuki T, Yoshida M, Yamanda S, Inoue D, Kaneta T, Kondo T, Takai Y, Sasaki H, Yanagihara K, Yamaya M (2006) Nitroglycerin treatment may enhance chemosensitivity to docetaxel and carboplatin in patients with lung adenocarcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 12(22):6748–6757
135. Oka M, Fukuda M, Sakamoto A, Takatani H, Fukuda M, Soda H, Kohno S (1997) The clinical role of MDR1 gene expression in human lung cancer. Anticancer Res 17(1B):721–724
136. Inoue Y, Gika M, Abiko T, Oyama T, Saitoh Y, Yamazaki H, Nakamura M, Abe Y, Kawamura M, Kobayashi K (2005) Bcl-2 overexpression enhances in vitro sensitivity against docetaxel in non-small cell lung cancer. Oncol Rep 13(2):259–264
137. Peng ZM, Luo J, Wang WB, Wang XH, Chen JH, Lan SM (2004) Predictive value of drug resistance-related genes expression in neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with non-small cell lung cancer of stage III. Ai Zheng 23(8):963–967
138. Kawasaki M, Nakanishi Y, Kuwano K, Takayama K, Kiyohara C, Hara N (1998) Immunohistochemically detected p53 and P-glycoprotein predict the response to chemotherapy in lung cancer. Eur J Cancer 34(9):1352–1357
139. Kao A, Shiun SC, Hsu NY, Sun SS, Lee CC, Lin CC (2001) Technetium-99m methoxyisobutylisonitrile chest imaging for small-cell lung cancer. Relationship to chemotherapy response (six courses of combination of cisplatin and etoposide) and p-glycoprotein or multidrug resistance related protein expression. Ann Oncol 12(11):1561–1566
140. Yeh JJ, Hsu WH, Huang WT, Wang JJ, Ho ST, Kao A (2003) Technetium-99m tetrofosmin SPECT predicts chemotherapy response in small cell lung cancer. Tumour Biol 24(3):151–155
141. Savaraj N, Wu CJ, Xu R, Lampidis T, Lai S, Donnelly E, Solomon J, Feun LG (1997) Multidrug-resistant gene expression in small-cell lung cancer. Am J Clin Oncol 20(4):398–403

142. Sohn JW, Lee SY, Lee SJ, Kim EJ, Cha SI, Kim CH, Lee JT, Jung TH, Park JY (2006) MDR1 polymorphisms predict the response to etoposide-cisplatin combination chemotherapy in small cell lung cancer. Jpn J Clin Oncol 36(3):137–141
143. Hsu WH, Yen RF, Kao CH, Shiun SC, Hsu NY, Lin CC, Lee CC (2002) Predicting chemotherapy response to paclitaxel-based therapy in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (stage IIIb or IV) with a higher T stage (>T2). Technetium-99m methoxyisobutylisonitrile chest single photon emission computed tomography and P-glycoprotein express ion. Oncology 63(2):173–179
144. Yeh JJ, Hsu WH, Wang JJ, Ho ST, Kao A (2003) Predicting chemotherapy response to paclitaxel-based therapy in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer with P-glycoprotein expression. Respiration 70(1):32–35
145. Pan JH, Han JX, Wu JM, Sheng LJ, Huang HN, Yu QZ (2008) MDR1 single nucleotide polymorphisms predict response to vinorelbine-based chemotherapy in patients with non-small cell lung cancer. Respiration 75(4):380–385
146. Miyatake K, Gemba K, Ueoka H, Nishii K, Kiura K, Tabata M, Shibayama T, Takigawa N, Kawaraya M, Tanimoto M (2003) Prognostic significance of mutant p53 protein, P-glycoprotein and glutathione S-transferase-pi in patients with unresectable non-small cell lung cancer. Anticancer Res 23(3C):2829–2836
147. Brooks KR, To K, Joshi MB, Conlon DH, Herndon JE 2nd, D'Amico TA, Harpole DH Jr (2003) Measurement of chemoresistance markers in patients with stage III non-small cell lung cancer: a novel approach for patient selection. Ann Thorac Surg 76(1):187–193, discussion 193
148. Isla D, Sarries C, Rosell R, Alonso G, Domine M, Taron M, Lopez-Vivanco G, Camps C, Botia M, Nunez L, Sanchez-Ronco M, Sanchez JJ, Lopez-Brea M, Barneto I, Paredes A, Medina B, Artal A, Lianes P (2004) Single nucleotide polymorphisms and outcome in docetaxel-cisplatin-treated advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 15(8): 1194–1203
149. Yang CH, Huang CJ, Yang CS, Chu YC, Cheng AL, Whang-Peng J, Yang PC (2005) Gefitinib reverses chemotherapy resistance in gefitinib-insensitive multidrug resistant cancer cells expressing ATP-binding cassette family protein. Cancer Res 65(15):6943–6949
150. Giaccone G, Herbst RS, Manegold C, Scagliotti G, Rosell R, Miller V, Natale RB, Schiller JH, Von Pawel J, Pluzanska A, Gatzemeier U, Grous J, Ochs JS, Averbuch SD, Wolf MK, Rennie P, Fandi A, Johnson DH (2004) Gefitinib in combination with gemcitabine and cisplatin in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a phase III trial–INTACT 1. J Clin Oncol 22(5):777–784
151. Herbst RS, Giaccone G, Schiller JH, Natale RB, Miller V, Manegold C, Scagliotti G, Rosell R, Oliff I, Reeves JA, Wolf MK, Krebs AD, Averbuch SD, Ochs JS, Grous J, Fandi A, Johnson DH (2004) Gefitinib in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a phase III trial–INTACT 2. J Clin Oncol 22(5):785–794
152. Kruijtzer CM, Schellens JH, Mezger J, Scheulen ME, Keilholz U, Beijnen JH, Rosing H, Mathot RA, Marcus S, van Tinteren H, Baas P (2002) Phase II and pharmacologic study of weekly oral paclitaxel plus cyclosporine in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 20(23):4508–4516
153. Ross HJ, Cho J, Osann K, Wong SF, Ramsinghani N, Williams J, Downey-Hurtado N, Slater LM (1997) Phase I/II trial of low dose cyclosporin A with EP for advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 18(2):189–198, S0169-5002(97)00061-5[pii]
154. Christen RD, Shalinsky DR, Howell SB (1992) Enhancement of the loss of multiple drug resistance by hydroxyurea. Semin Oncol 19(3 Suppl 9):94–100
155. Stewart DJ, Tomiak EM, Goss G, Gertler SZ, Logan D, Huan S, Yau J, Dulude H, Evans WK (1996) Paclitaxel plus hydroxyurea as second line therapy for non-small cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 15(1):115–123, 0169500296005764 [pii]

Current State of Metal-Based Drugs for the Efficient Therapy of Lung Cancers and Lung Metastases

Bernhard Biersack and Rainer Schobert

Abstract Lung cancer is the second most common cancer in both men and women and thus a leading cause of cancer-related deaths worldwide. New efficient treatments especially for its advanced stages and metastases are desperately needed, particularly with regard to overcoming the resistance which thwarts the efficacy of most clinically established drugs such as the platinum complexes. Glimpses of hope are new metal-based drugs that have emerged over the past decade which displayed efficacy in patients with platinum-resistant tumors and metastases. This chapter provides an overview of the latest developments of such metal-based drugs against lung cancer.

Keywords Platinum complexes • Ruthenium complexes • Gadolinium • Ferrocene derivatives • Anticancer agents • Lung cancer • Lung metastasis • Multi-drug resistance • Tumor targeting

Introduction

More than one million people die of lung cancer worldwide every year. While non-smokers are almost exclusively affected by non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC), small-cell lung cancer (SCLC) is characteristic of smoking patients [1, 2]. The platinum complex cisplatin is widely applied for the chemotherapy of a number of solid tumors including lung cancers. Second generation complexes like carboplatin and oxaliplatin entail less pronounced side effects and show significant activity in cisplatin-resistant cancer types [3]. These platinum(II) complexes kill cancer cells by modification of DNA and subsequent induction of apoptosis [4]. Today, cisplatin and carboplatin play a major role in the treatment of

B. Biersack (✉) • R. Schobert
Organic Chemistry Laboratory, University of Bayreuth, Universitätsstr. 30,
95447 Bayreuth, Germany
e-mail: bernhard.biersack@uni-bayreuth.de; bernhard.biersack@yahoo.com;
rainer.schobert@uni-bayreuth.de

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1_11

small-cell and non-small-cell lung cancers, customarily administered in combination with other drugs like gemcitabine, etoposide, vinorelbine or paclitaxel [1, 2]. The survival of patients could be improved significantly since the introduction of the platinum complexes into lung cancer therapy about 30 years ago. In 2004 the receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor erlotinib was approved for the treatment of advanced and metastatic NSCLC which leads to an average extension of the survival time of about 3.3 months.

The success of platinum complexes has also intensified the development of anticancer drugs derived from metals other then platinum, e.g., ruthenium. Ruthenium complexes broadened the spectrum of antitumoral effects since many of them are much less toxic than platinum drugs while selectively targeting tumor metastases. Some ruthenium complexes (e.g., NAMI-A, KP1019) already entered clinical trials and showed pronounced efficacy in lung and colon cancer patients [5].

In the following, an overview is presented of various metal–based anticancer agents including platinum, ruthenium, gadolinium and iron compounds at an advanced stage of preclinical evaluation or in clinical trials for the targeted treatment of lung cancer and lung metastases with an emphasis on those types associated with a poor prognosis.

Platinum Complexes

Cisplatin and carboplatin are approved worldwide for the treatment of lung cancer diseases in combination with other drugs. But there are more platinums which are approved locally in East Asia, namely in China and in Japan, for the treatment of lung cancer. Nedaplatin (**1**), diammine[hydroxyacetato(2−)-*O*,*O′*]platinum(II) (Fig. 1), is another second generation cisplatin analogue comparable with carboplatin [6, 7]. Nedaplatin was approved in Japan for the treatment of NSCLC and SCLC in 1995 at doses of up to 90 mg/m^2 [8]. Dose limiting toxicities are thrombocytopenia and neutropenia [8]. A recent study using nedaplatin with irinotecan followed by gefitinib revealed an overall response of 43 % [9]. The glycolate leaving group of nedaplatin hydrolyses more rapidly than the carboplatin oxo-ligand cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate giving the complex a reactivity comparable with that of cisplatin [6]. However, nedaplatin shows only slight interaction with serum proteins. Hence, nedaplatin is less nephrotoxic than cisplatin and carboplatin and is recommended for the treatment of patients with impaired renal functions instead of cisplatin. As expected, the DNA lesions caused by nedaplatin are comparable with those inflicted by cisplatin since the spectator ligands are the same (ammine ligands). Lobaplatin (**2**, Fig. 1) was developed in Germany (Astra Medica AG, Frankfurt) and was approved in China for the treatment of small-cell lung cancer (SCLC). It is given as a diastereomeric mixture of complexes derived from racemic lactic acid and shows no nephro-, neuro-, and ototoxicity [10–14]. In addition to these approved examples of platinum complexes against lung cancer diseases there are further Pt-based drugs that entered clinical trials. Zeniplatin

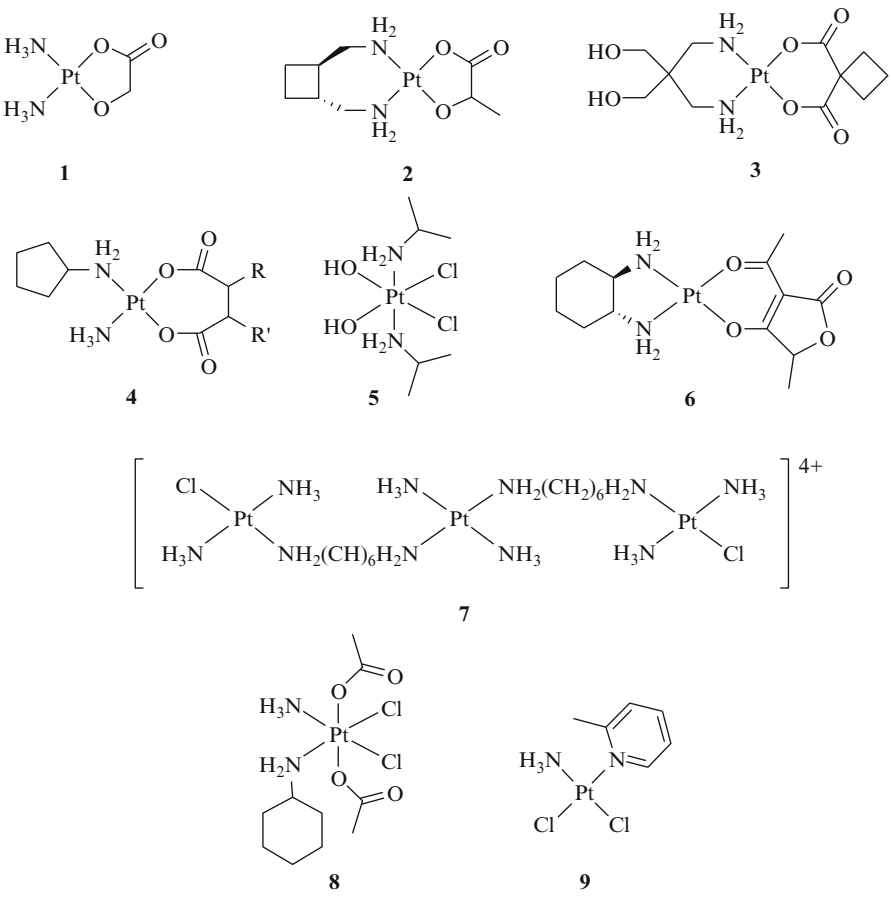


Fig. 1 Platinum complexes which entered clinical trials

(**3**), for instance, shows higher water solubility than cisplatin due to the additional hydroxyl groups (Fig. 1). It underwent phase II trials for advanced NSCLC patients but provoked only moderate response (10–14 %) [15]. Zeniplatin was eventually abandoned due to serious nephrotoxicity which had gone unnoticed during the phase I trials. Cycloplatam (**4**) was developed by Russian scientists and showed particularly high activity in lung cancer xenograft models (Fig. 1) [16]. Cycloplatam was investigated in a series of phase II trials in Russia against various solid tumor diseases, however, its development was stopped for unknown reasons. Iproplatin (**5**) is an octahedral platinum(IV) complex and actually a prodrug which undergoes reduction to cytotoxic Pt(II) complexes in vivo (activation by reduction) (Fig. 1) [17]. It underwent several phase II trials, also for NSCLC and SCLC, however, it could not surpass the activity of cisplatin in these trials and its development was discontinued [18, 19]. The complex TRK710 (**6**) features a

3-acyltetronate ligand coordinated to the Pt(II) center and showed higher activity and uptake rates in cisplatin-resistant cancer cells (Fig. 1). A distinct activity in NSCLC was confirmed and initial phase I clinical trials revealed lower nephrotoxicity and myelosuppression than cisplatin [20]. However, development was terminated for unknown reasons and there are no further reports of clinical trials with this interesting complex. BBR3463 (**7**) was the first non-classical platinum complex of clinical relevance (Fig. 1). This cationic trinuclear platinum complex consists of two functional *trans*-Pt moieties connected by a tetraamine-platinum bridge. This complex revealed an enhanced cellular uptake compared with cisplatin and caused a high degree of interstrand crosslinks in DNA which are not recognized by repair enzymes of the NER eventually leading to a p53-independent apoptosis induction [21, 22]. Although positive results were observed for NSCLC-patients of a phase II trial (2 OR and 11 PR from 33 patients) the drug never entered clinical phase III trials [23].

While most of the platinum drugs have to be administered intravenously, Satraplatin (**8**) was the first orally applicable platinum agent under clinical investigation (Fig. 1). Like iproplatin it is a Pt(IV) complex prodrug which is reduced in the organism to active Pt(II) complexes (activation by reduction) that build up DNA lesions similar to cisplatin [24]. Satraplatin when given alone rendered a partial response rate of 38 % in patients with SCLC. Clinical trials in combination with paclitaxel for patients with NSCLC are ongoing [25]. Picoplatin (**9**) is another orally applicable Pt(II) complex initially designed to meet the glutathione-mediated resistance towards platinum drugs (Fig. 1). The methyl group of the picoline ligand hinders the attack of deactivating bionucleophiles such as glutathione and metallothionein at the Pt(II) center, and an enhanced activity of picoplatin in resistant cancer cells was actually observed [26, 27].

Ruthenium Complexes

While primary solid tumors can be efficiently removed by surgery in many cases the emergence of metastases is frequently responsible for the lethal issue of cancer diseases. Hence, suitable treatments which prevent or reduce metastasis are in great demand. The promising ruthenium(III) based drug candidate NAMI-A ("New Antitumor Metastasis Inhibitor"), ImH[*trans*-Im(DMSO)$RuCl_4$] (Fig. 2) initially failed the common anticancer screens such as the NCI 60 cell lines screen yet prevented in additional animal studies the development and growth of lung metastases derived from lung and breast carcinomas [28–30]. The high efficacy of NAMI-A in the lungs is based on its eightfold longer half-life in lung tissue compared with other tissues and organs which is probably due to the high content of collagen which can interact with NAMI-A. In addition to its anti-invasive properties NAMI-A also possesses anti-angiogenic activity as to assays with blood vessels in the chorioallanthoic membrane (CAM) of chicken and in rabbit cornea probably by binding to NO released from the endothelial cells [31]. In contrast to platinum drugs NAMI-A

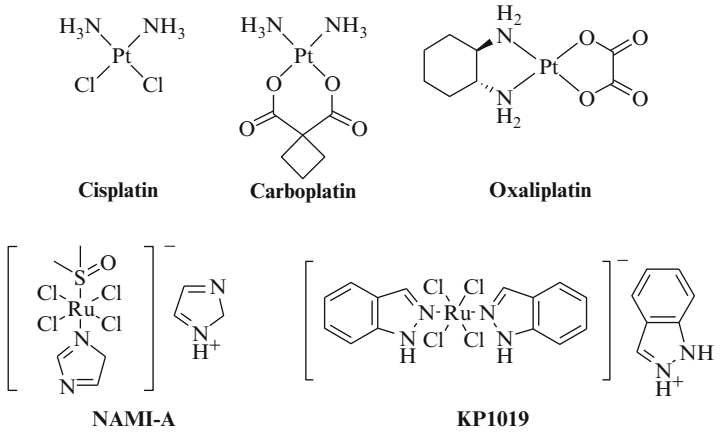


Fig. 2 Platinum and ruthenium complexes with proven anticancer activity

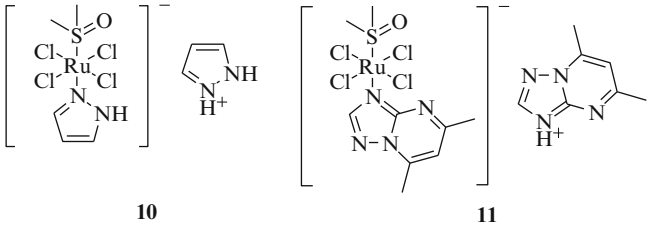


Fig. 3 NAMI-A-type Ru(III) complexes with high activity against lung cancer and lung metastases in lab animals

binds only weakly to DNA. NAMI-A inhibits the MAPK pathway by suppression of membrane PKC leading to apoptosis and it reduces cell migration as well as the release of gelatinase [32, 33]. A phase I study in 2004 revealed a high tolerance of the drug by patients with the appearance of blisters being the only dose-limiting toxic event [34].

Meanwhile NAMI-A type compounds with improved stability in aqueous solutions have emerged. Complex **10** (Fig. 3), for example, with a less basic pyrazole ligand distinctly reduced the number of lung metastases arising from Lewis lung carcinoma and MCa breast carcinoma [35]. In the lung cancer model **10** showed similar activity compared with NAMI-A while in the breast cancer model it was twice as active as NAMI-A with respect to the reduction of lung metastases. Thus, complex **10** behaves similarly to NAMI-A. However, it did not arrest the cell cycle at the G2/M checkpoint like NAMI-A. On the other hand, **10** inhibited tumor cell migration in matrigel more efficiently than NAMI-A. Another NAMI-like complex is (Hdmtp)

[*trans*-$RuCl_4$(DMSO)(dmtp)] (**11**) bearing a 5,7-dimethyl[1, 2, 4]triazolo[1,5-*a*] pyrimidine ligand (dmtp) (Fig. 3) [36]. Complex **11** exhibited antimetastatic properties comparable to those of NAMI-A, but also revealed a higher liver toxicity and caused edema. However, it showed a lower kidney toxicity than NAMI-A.

Organoruthenium complexes are usually more stable than NAMI-A-type coordination complexes concerning ligand exchange and were therefore identified as promising candidates for new anticancer drugs as well. RAPTA-C (**12**) is a ruthenium(II)-arene complex bearing a 1,3,5-triaza-7-phosphaadamantane (PTA) ligand (Fig. 4). The η^6-arene ligand (*p*-cymene) stabilizes the reactive Ru(II) state of the complex. Complex **12** showed pH dependent DNA damage, in particular at lower pH values which are typical of hypoxic tumor sites when the PTA ligand is protonated [37]. Despite of the structural differences between NAMI-A and RAPTA-C (**12**) their modes of action showed similarities. Like NAMI-A complex **12** is inactive against the primary tumor, yet highly efficacious against lung metastases. Treatment of MCa mammary carcinoma bearing CBA mice with 200 mg/kg/day of **12** for 2 days reduced the number of lung metastases by more than 50 % with two mice of the treated group turning entirely cancer free [38]. While the half-life of complex **12** is comparable with that of NAMI-A it showed enhanced distribution and blood clearance rates. Hence, complex **12** (RAPTA-C) appears a suitable candidate for further testing including clinical trials.

Sadler and co-workers prepared the ruthenium(II) complexes RM175 (**13**) and HC11 (**14**) which exhibit significant cytotoxic activity in cancer cells, including cisplatin-resistant cells (Fig. 4) [39]. These complexes coordinate selectively to the N7-site of guanine bases forming an additional hydrogen bond between an NH_2 group of the en ligand and the C6-carbonyl group of guanine. Both complexes were distinctly growth inhibitory in A549 lung non-small cell lung cancer xenografts at doses of 25 mg/kg. A significant liver toxicity was observed at higher doses for complex **14**. The authors suggest that liver toxicity is attributed to the arene ligand

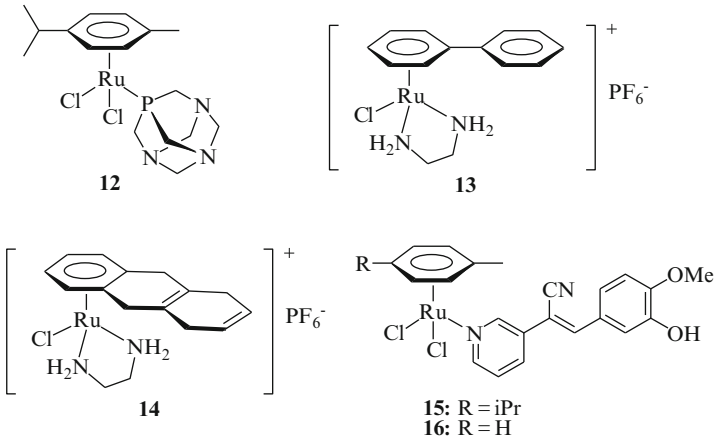
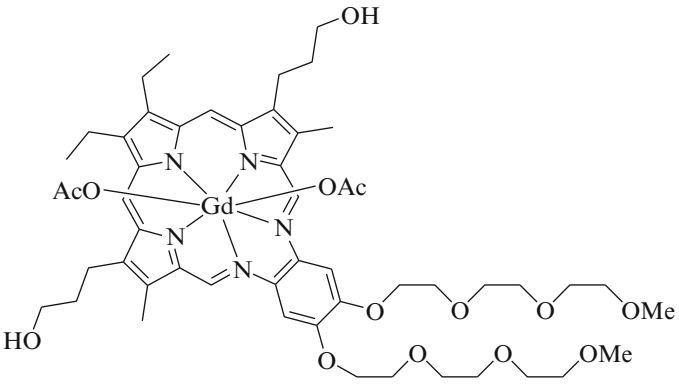


Fig. 4 Organometallic arene-Ru(II) complexes with potential against lung cancer

and further modification of the arene ligand is in progress in order to reduce the hepatotoxicity of such ruthenium complexes. Inspired by the successful launch of the EGFR-inhibitor erlotinib as a drug against advanced NSCLC, Biersack et al. have recently prepared neutral arene-Ru(II) complexes **15** and **16** of pyridine-based tyrphostine derivatives which are well known EGFR inhibitors (Fig. 4) [40, 41]. These complexes exhibited growth inhibitory activity in various cancer cell lines at sub-micromolar concentrations and led to strong DNA metallation in vitro.

Motexafin Gadolinium

Between 100,000 and 300,000 cancer patients are diagnosed with brain metastases in the US alone every year and their survival expectancy is dauntingly poor [42]. Since radiation therapy is the treatment of choice for brain metastases, radiosensitizing agents were developed in order to improve the impact of the radiation therapy and to reduce side effects. The MRI-detectable complex motexafin gadolinium (**17**, MGd), also known as gadolinium texaphyrin (Xcytrin, NSC 695238) is a metal-based anticancer agent that showed promising results as a radiosensitizer (Fig. 5). This agent features a Gd(III) ion chelated by a porphyrin-like texaphyrin ligand. Due to its high electron affinity complex **17** readily oxidises cellular components, e.g., reducing metabolites, leading to lethal DNA damage [43]. In addition, complex **17** directly targets enzymes like thioredoxin reductase and ribonucleotide reductase which are often overexpressed in cancer cells [44], and it interferes with intracellular zinc levels in cancer cells probably due to a direct oxidation of zinc metallothionein [45]. The pleiotropic anticancer effects of **17** led to various clinical trials, e.g., against NSCLC and brain metastases thereof. In these trials the performance of complex **17** is characterised by a high tumor-selectivity and tolerable side-effects and toxicities. In combination with whole-brain radiation therapy (WBRT) complex



17

Fig. 5 Motexafin gadolinium (**17**)

17 revealed reduced neurotoxicities and neurological progression as well as improved quality of life in patients with NSCLC-derived brain metastases in a phase III study (SMART) [46].

Ferrocene-Based Compounds

The discovery of ferrocene (**18**, Fig. 6) and the elucidation of its sandwich structure in the 1950s by G. Wilkinson (Imperial College London) and E. O. Fischer (Technical University Munich) was a milestone in the field of inorganic chemistry and was awarded with the Nobel Prize in 1973. The simple complex ferrocene activates lymphocytes and exerts distinct antitumor effects by redox-sensitive signaling involving oxidation of Ras proteins at cystein sites [47]. Recently, Kenny and coworkers prepared ferrocene conjugates bearing peptide fragments. Complex **19**, for instance, features a combination of a ferrocene component, a naphthoyl linker and a small peptide moiety which has shown excellent activity in the H1299 non-small cell lung cancer cell line (IC_{50} = 0.62 μM) and so exceeded the efficacy of cisplatin in these tumor cells by far (Fig. 6) [48, 49]. The naphthoyl linker of complex **19** lowers the oxidation potential of the conjugated ferrocene while the peptide fragment may form many hydrogen bonds to the biological targets. Snegur and coworkers prepared the new ferrocenylethyl benzotriazole **20** and studied it concerning its in vivo activity in lung cancer xenografts via the subrenal capsular assay (SCA) in comparison with cisplatin (Fig. 6) [50]. Complex **20** exhibited low toxicity and caused 45 % regression in non-small cell lung cancer models at doses of 18 mg/kg/day, while cisplatin led to merely 23 % regression in this tumor model. The same group found that complex **20** alkylates nucleobases like adenine forming ferrocenylalkyl adenine. This mild way of ferrocenylalkylation is assumed to be the

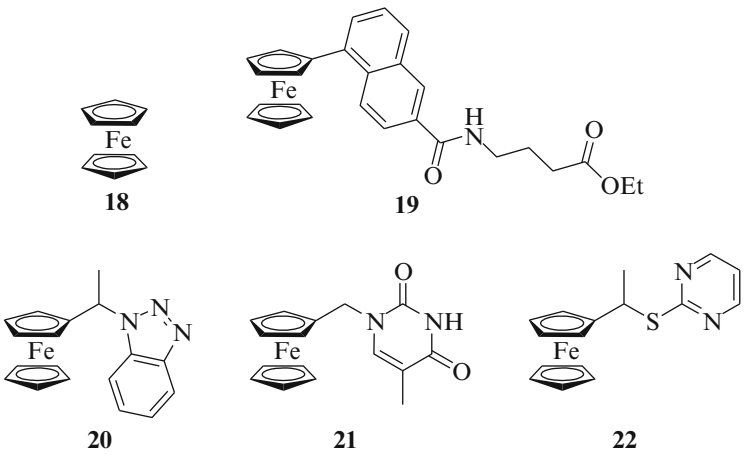


Fig. 6 Ferrocene-based compounds with activity against lung cancer

reason for the selective triggering of endonucleases at the early stage of apoptosis without causing necrotic effects. In continuation of this interesting discovery Simenel et al. have recently disclosed new ferrocene conjugates with nucleobases. Ferrocenylmethyl thymine **21** showed distinct in vivo activity in various solid tumors (Fig. 6) [51]. For instance, mice bearing Lewis lung carcinoma (LLC) when treated with **21** (5.0 mg/kg/day intraperitoneally) revealed a growth inhibition of the LLC tumor of 45 %. The combination of complex **21** (5.0 mg/kg/day) with the alkylating anticancer drug cyclophosphamide led to improved effects in the LLC xenografts (growth inhibition of 50 %). The maximum tolerated dose (MTD) for **21** was 20 mg/kg when given intraperitoneally. The same group also reported the preparation of a ferrocenylalkyl thiopyrimidine **22** (Fig. 6) with enhanced anticancer activity that can be given to mice at a higher dose than **21** [52]. LLC xenografts were treated with **22** (20 mg/kg/day) and showed a tumor growth inhibition of 65 %. The observed MTD for complex **22** was 150 mg/kg.

The compound class of retinoids comprises both natural vitamin A derivatives and synthetic analogs which are important for the differentiation of cells and the development of tissues and organs [53–55]. These effects are mediated by the binding of retinoids to nuclear receptors such as retinoic acid receptors (RARs) or retinoid X receptors (RXRs). All-*trans*-retinoic acid (ATRA) and bexarotene, for example, are currently applied for the treatment of various skin and cancer diseases. Their use is limited, though, by teratogenic and hepatotoxic side-effects [56–58]. Xiang and coworkers prepared new 13-*cis*-retinoyl ferrocenes in order to enhance the biological activity of retinoids against cancer [59]. Compound **23** (Fig. 7) exhibited improved activity in A549 lung cancer cells ($IC_{50} = 20.4$ μM) compared with 13-*cis*-retinoic acid ($IC_{50} = 35.8$ μM) alone. Jaouen and coworkers disclosed several ferrocene derivatives (so-called ferrocifens) of the selective estrogen receptor modulator (SERM) tamoxifen [60, 61]. A compound dubbed hydroxyferrocifen

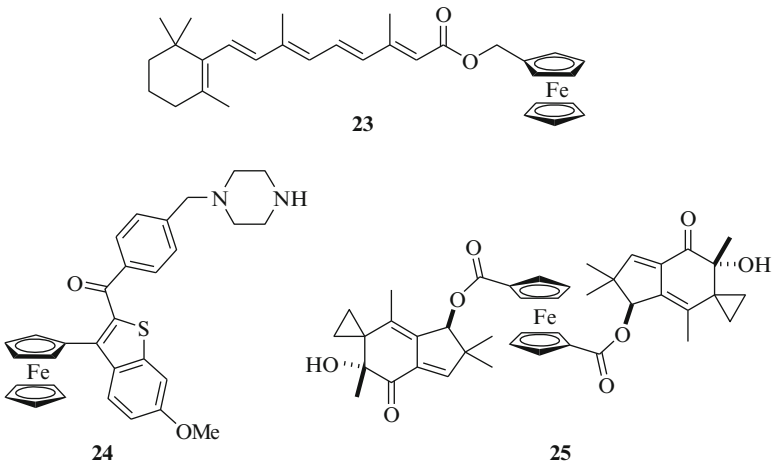


Fig. 7 Ferrocene conjugates with anticancer active compounds

exhibited distinct growth inhibitory activity in breast cancer cells, both ER-positive and ER-negative. Recently, Marques et al. disclosed a ferrocene-based raloxifen analogue **24** which also displayed some activity in lung cancer cells (Fig. 7) [62]. In A549 lung cancer cells complex **24** exhibited a distinctly better growth inhibition (IC_{50} = 3.85 μM) than cisplatin (IC_{50} = 18.13 μM). Generally, compound **24** showed no cross-resistance to cisplatin and is obviously no substrate for the ABC-transporters of multi-drug resistant cells.

Ferrocenes can also increase the selectivity of anticancer agents and shield reactive drugs sterically or electronically as observed in the case of the fungal cytotoxin illudin M. Illudins M and S and the semisynthetic compound irofulven are alkylating agents which are activated by reduction of their enone system either by NADPH-dependent oxido-reductases or by glutathione [63]. Irofulven was found to be efficacious against MV522 metastatic lung carcinoma xenografts and to increase the life expectancy of treated animals by more than 150 %, a value that exceeds the one of mitomycin C by far (increase in life span of 61 %) [64]. In addition, irofulven blocked the formation of lung metastases in an animal model resistant to classical anticancer drugs. However, irofulven remained inactive in a clinical phase II trial against advanced non-small cell lung cancer [65]. In a search for more selective illudin M derivatives, Schobert and coworkers developed ferrocene conjugates of illudin M [66, 67]. The ferrocene diester **25** (Fig. 7) was active at sub-micromolar IC_{50} values against various cancer cell lines while being forty times less toxic than illudin M in non-malignant fibroblast cells. The ferrocene-attached illudin M moieties of **25** are less prone to reductive detoxification by glutathione than free illudin M, and its antiproliferative activity depends on active JNK-signaling. First in vivo assays of **25** in lab mice revealed no toxicity at doses of 25 mg/kg and further tests in suitable lung cancer xenografts are planned.

Conclusions

The platinum complexes cisplatin and carboplatin have been a mainstay in the therapy of lung cancer diseases right from the beginning. More platinum complexes were put through their paces in clinical trials and a good deal of them was found active against drug resistant and advanced lung cancers. In addition to platinum compounds, ruthenium and gadolinium complexes have emerged that selectively target metastases in the lung or lung cancer metastases in the brain. The drug candidates NAMI-A and motexafin gadolinium have already reached advanced stages of clinical trials and are likely to obtain approval for the treatment of lung cancer metastases. Organometallic sandwich complexes such as ferrocene pose a second line of development in the field of anticancer metallodrugs. When attached to intrinsically bioactive fragments complex conjugates with pronounced activity in lung cancer models may result. Ferrocenes in particular figure prominently among such conjugates, presumably due to their interference with reactive oxygen species and with detoxification of drugs.

References

1. Cooper S, Spiro SG (2006) Small cell lung cancer: treatment review. Respirology 11:241–248
2. Haura EB (2001) Treatment of advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a review of current randomized clinical trials and an examination of emerging therapies. Cancer Control 8:326–336
3. Wong E, Giandomenico CM (1999) Current status of platinum-based antitumor drugs. Chem Rev 99:2451–2466
4. Jamieson ER, Lippard SJ (1999) Structure, recognition, and processing of cisplatin-DNA adducts. Chem Rev 99:2467–2498
5. Knauer S, Biersack B, Zoldakova M, Effenberger K, Milius W, Schobert R (2009) Melanoma-specific ferrocene esters of the fungal cytotoxin illudin M. Anticancer Drugs 20:676–681
6. Ott I, Gust R (2006) Medizinische Chemie der Platinkomplexe. Pharm Unserer Zeit 35:124–133
7. Voigt W, Dietrich A, Schmoll H-J (2006) Cisplatin und seine Analoga. Pharm Unserer Zeit 35:134–143
8. Kodaira T, Nobukazu F, Tachibana H, Hidano S (2006) Phase I study of S-1 and nedaplatin for patients with recurrence of head and neck cancer. Anticancer Res 26:2265–2268
9. Oshita F, Yamada K, Saito H, Noda K, Hamanaka N, Ikehara M (2004) Phase II study of nedaplatin and irinotecan for elderly patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. J Exp Ther Oncol 4:343–348
10. Gietema JA, Guchelaar H-J, de Vries EGE, Alenbacher P, Sleijfer DT, Mulder NH (1993) A phase I study of lobaplatin (D-19466) administered by 72 h continuous infusion. Anticancer Drugs 4:51–55
11. Gietema JA, Veldhuis G-J, Guchelaar H-J, Willemse PHB, Uges DRA, Cats A, Boonstra H, van der Graaf WTA, Sleijfer DT, de Vries EGE, Mulder NH (1995) Phase II and pharmacokinetic study of lobaplatin in patients with relapsed ovarian cancer. Br J Cancer 71:1302–1307
12. Kavanagh JJ, Edwards CL, Freedman RS, Finnegan MB, Balat O, Tresukosol D, Bunk K, Loechner S, Hord M, Franklin JL, Kudelka AP (1995) A trial of lobaplatin (D-19466) in platinum-resistant ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol 58:106–109
13. Degardin M, Armand JP, Chevallier B, Cappeleare P, Lentz M-A, David M, Roche H (1995) A clinical screening cooperative group phase II evaluation of lobaplatin (ASTA D-19466) in advanced head and neck cancer. Invest New Drugs 13:253–255
14. Welink J, Boven E, Vermorken JB, Gall HE, van der Vijgh WJF (1999) Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of Lobaplatin (D-19466) in patients with advanced solid tumors, including patients with impaired renal or liver function. Clin Cancer Res 5:2349–2358
15. Jones AL, Smith IE, Townsend HE, Rastogi RB (1991) Phase II study of a platinum complex CL 286558 zeniplatin in non small cell lung cancer NSCLC. Anti-Cancer Drug Des 6:363
16. Drees M, Dengler WM, Hendriks HR, Kelland LR, Fiebig HH (1995) Cycloplatam: a novel platinum compound exhibiting a different spectrum of anti-tumour activity to cisplatin. Eur J Cancer 31:356–361
17. Pendyala L, Cowens JW, Chheda G, Dutta SP, Creavne PJ (1988) Identification of cis-dichloro-bis-isopropylamine platinum(II) as a major metabolite of iproplatin in humans. Cancer Res 48:3533–3536
18. Kramer B, Birch R, Greco A, Prestridge K, DeSimone P, Omura G (1988) Randomized phase II evaluation of iproplatin (CHIP) and carboplatin (CBDCA) in lung cancer: a southeastern cancer study group trial. Am J Clin Oncol 11:643–645
19. Granfortuna J, Newman N, Ginsberg S, Louie A, Comis RL, Gullo JJ, Poiesz BJ (1989) Phase II study of iproplatin (CHIP) in previously treated small-cell lung cancer. Am J Clin Oncol 12:355–357
20. Lordick F, Luber B, Lorenzen S, Hegewisch-Becker S, Folprecht G, Woll E, Decker T, Endlicher E, Rothling N, Schuster T, Keller G, Fend F, Peschel C (2010) Cetuximab plus oxaliplatin/leucovorin/5-fluorouracil in first-line metastatic gastric cancer: a phase II study of the Arbeitsgemeinschaft Internistische Onkologie (AIO). Br J Cancer 102:500–505

21. Di Blasi P, Bernareggi A, Beggiolin G, Piazzoni L, Menta E, Formento ML (1998) Cytotoxicity, cellular uptake and DNA binding of novel trinuclear platinum complex BBR 3464 in sensitive and cisplatin resistant murine leukemia cells. Anticancer Res 18:3113–3118
22. Kloster MBG, Hannis JC, Muddiman DC, Farrell N (1999) Conformation on the binding of a trinuclear platinum drug. Biochemistry 38:14731–14737
23. Scagliotti G, Novello S, Crino L, de Marinia F, Tonato M, Noberasco C, Selvaggi G, Massoni F, Gatti B, Camboni G (2003) Phase II trial of BBR3464, a novel bifunctional platinum analog, as second line treatment of non-small cell lung cancer patients. Lung Cancer 41:S223
24. Cmelak AJ, Choy H, Murphy BA, DeVore RF, Burkey B, Day TA, LaPorte KL, Johnson D (1999) Phase I study of JM-216 with concurrent radiation in non-small cell lung cancer and squamous cell head and neck cancer. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 18:392a
25. Choy H, Park C, Yao M (2008) Current status and future prospects for satraplatin, an oral platinum analogue. Clin Cancer Res 14:1633–1638
26. Chen Y, Guo Z, Parsons S, Sadler PJ (1998) Stereospecific and kinetic control over the hydrolysis of a sterically hindered platinum picoline anticancer complex. Chem Eur J 4:672–676
27. Holford J, Sharp S, Murrer B, Abrams M, Kelland L (1998) In vitro circumvention of cisplatin resistance by the novel sterically hindered platinum complex AMD473. Br J Cancer 77:366–373
28. Sava G, Capozzi I, Clerici K, Gagliardi G, Alessio E, Mestroni G (1998) Pharmacological control of lung metastases of solid tumours by a novel ruthenium complex. Clin Exp Metastasis 16:371–379
29. Sava G, Bergamo A, Zorzet S, Gava B, Casarsa C, Cocchietto M, Furlani A, Scarcia V, Serli B, Iengo E, Alessio E, Mestroni G (2002) Influence of chemical stability on the activity of the antimetastasis ruthenium complex NAMI-A. Eur J Cancer 38:427–435
30. Bergamo A, Gagliardi R, Scarcia V, Furlani A, Alessio E, Mestroni G, Sava G (1999) In vitro cell cycle arrest, in vivo action of solid metastasizing tumors, and host toxicity of the antimetastatic drug NAMI-A and cisplatin. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 289:559–564
31. Vacca A, Bruno M, Boccarelli A, Coluccia M, Ribatti D, Bergamo A, Garbisa S, Sartor L, Sava GL (2002) Inhibition of endothelial cell functions and of angiogenesis by the metastasis inhibitor NAMI-A. Br J Cancer 86:993–998
32. Pintus G, Tadolini B, Posadino AM, Sanna B, Debidda M, Bennardini F, Sava G, Ventura C (2002) Inhibition of the MEK/ERK signalling pathway by the novel antimetastatic agent NAMI-A down regulates c-myc gene expression and endothelial cell proliferation. Eur J Biochem 269:5861–5870
33. Sava G, Frausin F, Cocchietto M, Vita F, Podda E, Spessotto P, Furlani A, Scarcia V, Zabucchi G (2004) Actin-dependent tumour cell adhesion after short-term exposure to the antimetastasis ruthenium complex NAMI-A. Eur J Cancer 40:1383–1396
34. Zorzet S, Bergamo A, Cocchietto M, Sorc A, Gava B, Alessio E, Iengo E, Sava G (2000) Lack of in vitro cytotoxicity, associated to increased G2-M cell fraction and inhibition of matrigel invasion, may predict in vivo-selective antimetastasis activity of ruthenium complexes. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 295:927–933
35. Bergamo A, Gava B, Alessio E, Mestroni G, Serli B, Cocchietto M, Zorzet S, Sava G (2002) Ruthenium-based NAMI-A type complexes with in vivo selective metastasis reduction and in vitro invasion inhibition unrelated to cell cytotoxicity. Int J Oncol 21:1331–1338
36. Velders AH, Bergamo A, Alessio E, Zangrando E, Haasnoot JG, Casarsa C, Cocchietto M, Zorzet S, Sava G (2004) Synthesis and chemical-pharmacological characterization of the antimetastatic NAMI-A-type Ru(III) complexes (Hdmpt)[*trans*-$RuCl_4$(dmso-S)(dmtp)], (Na)[*trans*-$RuCl_4$(dmso-S)(dmtp)], and [*mer*-$RuCl_3(H_2O)$ (dmso-S)(dmtp)] (dmpt = 5,7-Dimethyl [1,2,4]triazolo[1,5-*a*]pyrimidine). J Med Chem 47:1110–1121
37. Allardyce CS, Dyson PJ, Ellis DJ, Heath SL (2001) [Ru(η^6-p-cymene)Cl_2(pta)] (pta = 1,3,5-triaza-7-phosphatricyclo[3.3.1.1]-decane): a water soluble compound that exhibits pH dependent DNA binding providing selectivity for diseased cells. Chem Commun 15:1396–1397
38. Scolaro C, Bergamo A, Brescacin L, Delfino R, Cocchietto M, Laurenczy G, Geldbach TJ, Sava G, Dyson PJ (2005) In vitro and in vivo evaluation of ruthenium(II)-arene PTA complexes. J Med Chem 48:4161–4171

39. Guichard SM, Else R, Reid E, Zeitlin B, Aird R, Muir M, Dodds M, Fiebig H, Sadler PJ, Jodrell DI (2006) Anti-tumor activity in non-small cell lung cancer models and toxicity profiles for novel ruthenium(II) based organo-metallic compounds. Biochem Pharmacol 71:408–415
40. Biersack B, Zoldakova M, Effenberger K, Schobert R (2010) (Arene)Ru(II) complexes of epidermal growth factor receptor inhibiting tyrphostins with enhanced selectivity and cytotoxicity in cancer cells. Eur J Med Chem 45:1972–1975
41. Yoneda T, Lyall RM, Alsina MM, Persons PE, Spada AP, Levitzki A, Zilberstein A, Mundy GR (1991) The antiproliferative effects of tyrosine kinase inhibitors tyrphostins on a human squamous cell carcinoma in vitro and in nude mice. Cancer Res 51:4430–4435
42. Sawaya R (2004) Intracranial metastases: current management strategies. Blackwell Futura, Malden, xiv. 497
43. Magda D, Lepp C, Gerasimchuk N, Lee I, Sessler JL, Lin A, Biaglow JE, Miller RA (2001) Redox cycling by motexafin gadolinium enhances cellular response to ionizing radiation by forming reactive oxigen species. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 51:1025–1036
44. Hashemy SI, Ungerstedt JS, Avval FZ, Holmgren A (2006) Motexafin gadolinium, a tumor-selective drug targeting thioredoxin reductase and ribonucleotide reductase. J Biol Chem 281:10691–10697
45. Magda D, Lecane P, Miller RA, Lepp C, Miles D, Mesfin M, Biaglow JE, Ho VV, Chawannakul D, Nagpal S, Karaman MW, Hacia JG (2007) Motexafin gadolinium disrupts zinc metabolism in human cancer cell lines. Cancer Res 65:3837–3845
46. Richards GM, Mehta MP (2006) Motexafin gadolinium (MGd) in the treatment of brain metastases. Expert Opin Pharmacother 8:351–359
47. Kovjazin R, Eldar T, Patya M, Vanichkin A, Lander HM, Novogrodsky A (2003) Ferrocene-induced lymphocyte activation and anti-tumor activity is mediated by redox-sensitive signalling. FASEB J 17:467–469
48. Mooney A, Corry AJ, Ní Ruairc C, Mahgoub T, O'Sullivan D, O'Donovan N, Crown J, Varughese S, Draper SM, Rai DK, Kenny PTM (2010) Synthesis, characterisation and biological evaluation of N-(ferrocenyl)naphthoyl amino acid esters as anticancer agents. Dalton Trans 39:8228–8239
49. Ornelas C (2011) Application of ferrocene and its derivatives in cancer research. New J Chem 35:1973–1985
50. Snegur LV, Nekrasov YS, Sergeeva NS, Zhilina ZV, Gumenyuk VV, Starikova ZA, Simenel AA, Morozova NB, Sviridova IK, Babin VN (2008) Ferrocenylalkyl azoles: bioactivity, synthesis, structure. Appl Organomet Chem 22:139–147
51. Simenel AA, Morozova EA, Snegur LV, Zykova SI, Kachala VV, Ostrovskaya LA, Bluchterova NV, Fomina MM (2009) Simple route to ferrocenylalkyl nucleobases. Antitumor activity in vivo. Appl Organomet Chem 23:219–224
52. Simenel AA, Dokuchaeva GA, Snegur LV, Rodionov AN, Ilyin MM, Zykova SI, Ostrovskaya LA, Bluchterova NV, Fomina MM, Rikova VA (2011) Ferrocene-modified thiopyrimidines: synthesis, enantiomeric resolution, antitumor activity. Appl Organomet Chem 25:70–75
53. Paik J, Vogel S, Piantedosi R, Sykes A, Blaner WS, Swisshelm K (2000) 9-cis-retinoids: biosynthesis of 9-cis-retinoic acid. Biochemistry 39:8073–8084
54. Wada A, Tode C, Hiraishi S, Tanaka Y, Ohfusa T (1995) Retinoids and related compounds; 18: a convenient synthesis of retinoic acid analogs having an anthraquinone ring. Synthesis 9:1107–1110
55. Barua AB, Olson JA (1985) Preparation of retinamides by use of retinoyl fluoride. J Lipid Res 26:258–262
56. Barua AB, Huselton CA, Olson JA (1996) Synthesis of novel glucuronide conjugates of retinoic carboxylic acids. Synth Commun 26:1355–1361
57. Nudelman A, Rephaeli A (2000) Novel mutual prodrug of retinoic and butyric acids with enhanced anticancer activity. J Med Chem 43:2962–2966
58. Margaret CD, Curley J, Robert W, Kevin L, Tephly LA, Sikri V (2000) C-linked analogs of N-(4-hydroxyphenyl) retinamide. US/6117845

59. Long B, Liang S, Xin D, Yang Y, Xiang J (2009) Synthesis, characterization and in vitro antiproliferative activities of new 13-cis-retinoyl ferrocene derivatives. Eur J Med Chem 44:2572–2576
60. Jaouen G, Top S, Vessières A, Leclercq G, McGlinchey MJ (2004) The first organometallic selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs) and their relevance to breast cancer. Curr Med Chem 11:2505–2517
61. Top S, Vessières A, Leclercq G, Quivy J, Tang J, Vaissermann J, Huché M, Jaouen G (2003) Modification of the estrogenic properties of diphenols by the incorporation of ferrocene. Chem Eur J 9:5223–5236
62. Ferreira AP, Ferreira da Silva JL, Duarte MT, Minas da Piedade MF, Robalo MP, Harjivan SG, Marzano C, Gandin V, Marques MM (2009) Synthesis and characterization of new organometallic benzo[*b*]thiophene derivatives with potential antitumor properties. Organometallics 28:5412–5423
63. McMorris TC, Anchel M (1963) The structures of the basidiomycete metabolites illudin S and illudin M. J Am Chem Soc 85:831–832
64. Kelner MJ, McMorris TC, Estes L, Wang W, Samson KM, Taetle R (1996) Efficacy of HMAF (MGI-114) in the MV522 metastatic lung carcinoma xenograft model nonresponsive to traditional anticancer agents. Invest New Drugs 14:161–167
65. Dowell JE, Johnson DH, Rogers JS, Shyr Y, McCullough N, Krozely P, DeVore RF (2001) A phase II trial of 6-hydroxymethylacylfulvene (MGI-114, irofulven) in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer previously treated with chemotherapy. Invest New Drugs 19:85–88
66. Knauer S, Biersack B, Zoldakova M, Effenberger K, Milius W, Schobert R (2009) Melanoma-specific ferrocene esters of the fungal cytotoxin illudin M. Anticancer Drugs 20:676–681
67. Schobert R, Seibt S, Mahal K, Ahmad A, Biersack B, Effenberger-Neidnicht K, Padhye S, Sarkar FH, Mueller T (2011) Cancer selective metallocenedicarboxylates of the fungal cytotoxin illudin M. J Med Chem 54:6177–6182

Index

A. Ahmad, S. Gadgeel (eds.), *Lung Cancer and Personalized Medicine*,
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 893,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-24223-1